This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

DENTAL SURGERY

AND

PATHOLOGY

MANUAL

OF

DENTAL SURGERY & PATHOLOGY

BY

ALFRED COLEMAN, L.R.C.P.

F.R.C.S. EXAM., L.D.S., &c.

SENIOR DENTAL SURGEON AND LECTURER ON DENTAL SURGERY TO ST. BARTHOLOMEW'S HOSPITAL; SENIOR DENTAL SURGEON AND LECTURER ON DENTAL SURGERY TO THE DENTAL HOSPITAL OF LONDON; MEMBER OF BOARD OF EXAMINERS IN DENTAL SURGERY, ROYAL COLLEGE OF SURGEONS; FORMERLY PRESIDENT ODONTOLOGICAL SOCIETY OF GREAT BRITAIN

LONDON

SMITH, ELDER, & CO., 15 WATERLOO PLACE

1881

[All rights reserved]

160. f. 84.

PREFACE.

IF ILLUSTRATION were wanted to show that immense advances have been made in the science and practice of Dental Surgery during the last thirty or forty years, no better one could be furnished than the circumstance that most of the leading works on the subject at the commencement of that period comprehended, and within very modest limits, all its branches, viz.: Dental Anatomy, Physiology, Surgery, Pathology, Therapeutics, Materia Medica, and often even Mechanics.

The establishment, in this and several other countries, of a defined and systematic course for the student of Dental Science, including distinct courses of lectures upon Dental Anatomy and Physiology, Dental Surgery and Pathology, and Dental Mechanics, has, perhaps more than anything else, led to a demand for separate and more complete treatises on these several departments.

In some of these subjects this want has been completely supplied, and the Dental Student can have nothing more to desire than the recent admirable treatise on Dental Anatomy, Human and Comparative, which has

appeared from the hands of my talented colleague, Mr. C. S. TOMES.

Another subject, viz., Dental Mechanics, has been separately and successfully treated upon in the manual of Mr. OAKLEY COLES, and the English student desirous of fuller information can obtain the same in his own language, in 'A Practical Treatise on Mechanical Dentistry,' by Dr. JOSEPH RICHARDSON, of Ohio, U.S.

On the subject of Dental Surgery,—and to my lot has fallen the privilege of lecturing thereon at the largest Medical School in London consecutively for fifteen years,—it can hardly be said that any work perfectly suitable as a text-book has yet been produced. The excellent works of Mr. JOHN TOMES, and of that gentleman in conjunction with Mr. C. S. TOMES, which have been so much employed and valued for that purpose, include also Human Dental Anatomy and Physiology, which by many, and especially the general medical student, whose requirements I have endeavoured to bear in mind, may not be needed. On the other hand, Mr. SALTER'S much appreciated work, though chiefly confined to Dental Pathology and Surgery, is, as its author states, 'a digested collection of all my previous essays and papers, arranged in the form of chapters; and several more chapters have been added to previously published matter,' rather than a systematic treatise upon the subject.

It is therefore hoped that the present work may supply a want which I believe to exist, although I cannot venture to presume that it will satisfy the requirements of the student as fully as the work of Mr. C. S. TOMES accomplishes its object; nevertheless, I trust that the large

amount of experience which has fallen to my lot, as a consequence of holding hospital appointments for nearly a quarter of a century, may not have been lost upon me, and that the results may in these pages be rendered profitable to others.

One of my chief desires has been to make the work as systematic as possible, associating under the same head a variety of subjects which bear upon one another, rather than isolating them under distinct chapters, and to avoid as much as possible the recording of cases, even though rare and interesting, which could not be considered appropriately under any proper classification.

In attempting to make the work a practical treatise, I have laid myself under heavy obligation to those who have so kindly assisted me. To Mr. C. S. ROGERS, the demonstrator at the Dental Hospital of London, my best thanks are due for the chief contents of the pages devoted to the description of filling with cohesive gold. To Messrs. C. ASH & SONS, of London, my warmest thanks are due for the valuable loan of some 250 illustrations of instruments, appliances, &c.; as they are also to the eminent practitioners by whom many of the latter were invented, and whose names I have endeavoured always to insert in the foot-notes referring to them. To the Council of the Odontological Society I am indebted for permission to copy the illustrations which have appeared in my papers published in their 'Transactions.' To Mr. NOBLE SMITH I owe much for the pains and skill that he has bestowed upon the original woodcuts which illustrate the work. To very many authors I am largely indebted for material collected from their works, which, I fear, I have on

some occasions omitted to acknowledge. Finally, I am under heavy obligations to Mr. E. HARRISON, barrister-at-law, for his kindness in undertaking the tedious and uninteresting work of revising my pages.

A. C.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE

THE FIRST DENTITION. ORDER AND PERIODS OF ERUPTION. NORMAL AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS OCCURRING DURING TEETHING 1

CHAPTER II.

IRREGULARITIES IN THE TEMPORARY TEETH. DISEASES OF THE TEMPORARY TEETH. THE SECOND DENTITION . . 17

CHAPTER III.

IRREGULARITIES IN THE PERMANENT TEETH, IN SIZE, IN FORM (ODONTOMES), IN NUMBER, IN POSITION,—CLASS I. ACCIDENTAL AND AVOIDABLE (FRACTURES OF THE JAWS) 32

CHAPTER IV.

IRREGULARITIES IN THE PERMANENT TEETH IN POSITION, CONTINUED,—CLASS II. CONGENITAL AND UNAVOIDABLE . 57

CHAPTER V.

INJURIES TO THE TEETH. CONCUSSION, DISLOCATION, FRACTURE 79

CHAPTER VI.

PAGE

DENTAL CARIES. DESCRIPTION OF THE DISEASE, MICROSCOPICAL APPEARANCES. THEORIES OF DENTAL CARIES . . 85

CHAPTER VII.

TREATMENT OF DENTAL CARIES (ANTICIPATION AND PREVENTION), BY EXCISION, BY STOPPING, FILLING, OR PLUGGING. PREPARATION OF THE TOOTH FOR FILLING, MATERIALS EMPLOYED, AND THE PROCESSES OF THEIR MANIPULATION 106

CHAPTER VIII.

TREATMENT OF DENTAL CARIES, CONTINUED. DIFFICULTIES AND COMPLICATIONS MET WITH IN THE OPERATION OF FILLING TEETH 161

CHAPTER IX.

PERIODONTITIS. SYMPTOMS, PATHOLOGY, AND TREATMENT . 178

CHAPTER X.

NECROSIS. ABSORPTION OF PERMANENT TEETH. EXOSTOSIS . 192

CHAPTER XI.

EXTRACTION OF TEETH, GENERAL DIRECTIONS, EXTRACTION OF INDIVIDUAL TEETH 197

CHAPTER XII.

EXTRACTION OF ROOTS OF TEETH, WITH THE FORCEPS, WITH THE ELEVATOR, ETC. EXTRACTION OF TEMPORARY TEETH . 219

CHAPTER XIII.

DIFFICULTIES AND COMPLICATIONS OCCURRING IN EXTRACTION, DUE TO MALFORMED TEETH, CONTRACTION OF THE JAWS, IMPACTED TEETH, ALVEOLAR HÆMORRHAGE, ETC. . . 236

CHAPTER XIV.

PAGE

ANÆSTHESIA, HISTORY OF, BY NITROUS OXIDE GAS, BY ETHER, BY CHLOROFORM 252

CHAPTER XV.

THE REPLANTATION AND TRANSPLANTATION OF TEETH . . 279

CHAPTER XVI.

CONGESTION OF THE GUMS. SALIVARY CALCULUS. ULCERATIONS OF THE GUM. NECROSIS OF THE JAWS . . . 288

CHAPTER XVII.

CICATRICES CLOSING THE JAWS 305

CHAPTER XVIII.

TUMOURS OF THE GUMS AND UPON THE JAWS 308

CHAPTER XIX.

DENTIGEROUS CYSTS 316

CHAPTER XX.

DISEASES OF THE ANTRUM 324

CHAPTER XXI.

NERVOUS AND MUSCULAR AFFECTIONS DEPENDENT UPON DENTAL IRRITATION 329

INDEX 337

MANUAL

OF

DENTAL SURGERY AND PATHOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

THE FIRST DENTITION.

THAT the Teeth are important agents in the animal economy, evidence is afforded in their early development; for, at the seventh week of intra-uterine existence may be seen the commencement of these organs, which enable the possessor to become independent of the maternal parent. In order that this independence should be possible at an early period of existence, most animals are provided with two sets of teeth, one temporary and comparatively rapidly developed, which appears generally at or soon after birth, and supplies the individual with the means of securing and comminuting its food during the period while the second and more permanent organs are undergoing their slower and more perfect development.

Man, of all animals the most dependent upon his own species, is not, as a rule, furnished with any teeth until nearer the end than the commencement of the first year of his existence, and the process has seldom terminated much before manhood is attained. During the period between birth and the possession of a sufficient number of teeth to render the individual independent of the mother, it is supplied with a food in form and composition the most suitable to its requirements,

viz. a bland, palatable fluid, holding in solution all the constituents out of which its various tissues can be nourished and developed. The young animal merely drinks its food, which it can readily digest in its more simply developed alimentary canal. Contemporaneously with the development of the teeth, other organs are also becoming developed, whose function will be necessary when the former are so far advanced as to enable the individual to obtain its food from other sources, and which, being of a less simple form and character, will require more complicated processes to bring it into a condition in which it can be assimilated and turned to the same account.

If we examine the mouth of an infant shortly after birth, we shall see, more or less distinctly, the outlines of the forms of the temporary teeth—especially the front ones—situated apparently a very little distance beneath the surface of the gums on the external aspect of the jaws. As the infant grows older, they become, owing to the increased development of the alveolar processes and mucous membrane, less and less apparent, until the outline is almost lost. A little ridge, on the summit of each jaw, and closely resembling a cicatrix, scarcely if ever perceptible at birth, becomes more apparent as the period of dentition approaches: it is probably the developed remains of the 'primitive Dental Groove' of Goodsir, the dipping down of the fold of 'epithelium,' from which the enamel is developed. During the period prior to dentition, it will be remarked that the mouth of the infant is less moist than is that of the adult; whilst, as dentition approaches, the reverse is apparent, the saliva generally flowing in considerable quantity from the infant's mouth. Whilst supplied with fluid food, the office of the saliva, in liquefying and lubricating it at the commencement of the alimentary canal, is not called for; but, as the time approaches for a harder, drier, and more complicated food being sought for, the salivary glands become more perfectly developed. Unduly stimulated, no doubt, by the irritation of dentition, their secretion becomes abnormal in quantity, and thus, draining the blood at this region of certain of its constitu-

ents, reduces, as some have supposed, the tendency to inflammatory action; a view supported by the fact, that, in certain inflammatory conditions of the gums, relief is often secured by producing this condition artificially, by the agency of what are termed sialogogues.

As the period of dentition approaches, it will be noticed that the now greatly increased alveolar processes present on their summits uneven elevations, like mounds or hillocks. They vary much in different individuals: if they be watched from day to day, we notice, as they become more distinct, that they become lighter in colour, until they so nearly resemble that of the teeth themselves, that it is only by the assistance of touch that we can positively determine that the teeth have been erupted; where the mucous membrane has been much elevated, its subsidence, after the eruption of a tooth, leaves the latter projecting some distance above the level of the surface, as if the tooth were erupted more rapidly at this than at other periods in the process.

The temporary teeth in man are twenty in number: ten in the upper and ten in the lower jaw, placed symmetrically on

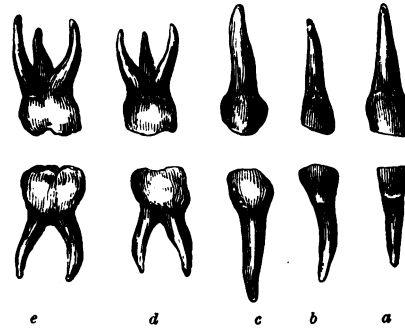


Fig. 1 shows the temporary teeth of the right side in the upper and lower jaws. *a* central incisors, *b* lateral incisors, *c* cuspidati, *d* first molars, *e* second molars.

each side of the mesial line, their formula (representing each side of the mouth) is :—incisors $\frac{2}{2}$, cuspidati $\frac{1}{1}$, molars $\frac{2}{2}$.

They receive their names from either their form or their office, thus: incisors—cutters; cuspidati—pointed; molars—grinders.

The order and periods in which the temporary teeth are erupted—the first dentition, as the process is called, or more popularly, 'teething'—are subject to great variation. Teeth may be erupted at or even prior to birth, or they may not appear until the second year has been almost completed: extremes which that master-observer of human nature, Shakspeare,[1] has not overlooked. The writer has met with several instances of well-formed teeth occurring in the mouths of children at birth, and a few cases where 'teething' did not commence till after the twentieth month. Formerly, it was the practice to remove the teeth erupted at or soon after birth, it being almost impossible for such children to be nursed at the breast; but, since the introduction of india-rubber nipple-shields, this harsh treatment has been abandoned. These cases are, however, different from those in which, at or near birth, small sharp teeth, loosely attached to the mucous membrane, and having no fangs, are discovered in the mouths of infants. These should be at once removed, as they will prove only a source of distress to the possessor. They are the exfoliated calcified caps of dentine of necrosed temporary teeth, and their existence would lead us to a strong suspicion that the child is the subject of inherited syphilis.[2]

In the healthy individual we may look for a lower central

[1] *York.* Marry, they say, my uncle grew so fast,
That he could gnaw a crust at two hours old;
'Twas full two years ere I could get a tooth.
Grandam, this would have been a biting jest.
Richard III. act ii. sc. iv.

[2] The writer had the opportunity of seeing the following curious case in the practice of his friend, G. R. Ord, of Streatham. A child had at birth a sac-like projection of the mucous membrane about the symphysis of the lower jaw, in which could be felt the two central incisors quite loose; as it impeded the child in sucking, Mr. Ord opened it, and removed two imperfectly developed but living teeth. In this case there was no suspicion of syphilis.

incisor making its appearance about the commencement of the eighth month, and being joined by its fellow within a week or so afterwards. After an interval of two to three months, appears a central incisor of the upper jaw, followed soon afterwards by its comrade, and, within a month to six weeks, by the lateral incisors of the same jaw. Some authorities, erroneously we consider, name the lateral incisors of the lower jaw as next in succession to the central incisors of the upper jaw; but these do not generally appear until after the corresponding teeth of the upper jaw have been erupted some two months,[1] bringing the period to twelve months or thereabouts; and within another period of two months, and at some little distance from the lateral incisors, and posterior in the dental arch, will appear the four first molars. A pause of four to five months ensues before the 'cuspidati,' the next in order, appear, which will be when the individual is about eighteen months old; and they take their position in the spaces left between the lateral incisors and first molars, and many authorities consider that in their eruption more trouble is experienced than with any of the other teeth; if so, it is not attributable to their size and form, as of all the teeth we should, judging from these, expect the cuspidati to be the easiest to erupt.[2]

The cuspidati occupy about two to three months in their eruption, and, after an interval in the process of three to five months, appear the second molars—the fifth and last group—

[1] Trousseau and C. S. Tomes adopt this arrangement, and West probably, but there is evidently some error in the text of his work, 'Diseases of Infancy and Childhood' 5th edit. p. 553, line 9 *et seq.* Ashburner adopts the other, viz., that the lateral incisors of the lower jaw are erupted before those of the upper.

[2] West regards the first molars as being the teeth to cause generally the most trouble; Trousseau and some others the cuspidati, and account for it 'from their having long roots,' 'their sockets being very narrow, and their being erupted between teeth already cut,' 'the distance they are developed from the surface;' reasons which we consider in themselves insufficient as explanations, the condition of the nervous system at the period having probably more influence in the matter than any local conditions.

about the beginning of the second year. They take a position in the dental arch posterior to the first molars, and are all usually erupted within a period of three to five months, when the process of the first dentition will be completed,[1] which is said, and we believe correctly, to commence earlier, and terminate sooner, in girls than in boys. Certain diseases, especially rickets, are stated to delay the period of eruption.

To assist the memory, the following table, which is a fair approximation to the truth, may be found useful:—

GROUP		MONTHS
1.	Lower central incisors	7
	duration of eruption 1 to 10 days	
	pause 2 to 3 months	
2.	Upper central and lateral incisors .	9
	duration of eruption 4 to 6 weeks	
	pause 2 months.	
3.	Lower lateral incisors	12
	First molars	14
	duration of eruption 1 to 2 months	
	pause 4 to 5 months	
4.	Cuspidati	18
	duration of eruption 2 to 3 months	
	pause 3 to 5 months.	
5.	Second molars	26
	duration of eruption 3 to 5 months.	

The period of the first dentition is one watched with more or less anxiety, as it is well known to be a critical one, for good or evil, in the history of the individual. An infant, healthy up to the time of teething, may then show symptoms of future delicacy or disease; it is evidently a time of trial, as is, we well know, the period when the young of the feathered tribe are changing their down for feathers. Infants weak and delicate from the birth often go through the process of dentition under

[1] The arrangement and dates which we have given are mainly those of Trousseau, whose calculations are based upon the observations of his pupil Duclos; he, however, gives the period of eruption of the first tooth at six months and a half, which we consider earlier than the average, and we therefore prefer adopting the commencement of the eighth month as such period.

most comfortable conditions, whilst fine and apparently strong ones may suffer severely, and are left with lesions which impair their future well-being.

Under the most favourable circumstances, the teeth may appear one after another at the usual time, and in the groups named, with so little apparent disturbance to the individual, that their presence may be only accidentally discovered; more commonly, however, the child, for some little time previous to the eruption of each group, becomes restless, has an increased flow of saliva, and more or less often presses its knuckles against the gums.[1] The mouth, if examined at such period, will exhibit the gums somewhat swollen, and of a rather higher temperature than usual, and more than normally injected with blood. As the process advances, the more elevated portions of the gum become of a paler colour, until, as before stated, they so resemble that of the coming teeth that it is almost impossible to say when they have actually penetrated it. When the group of which they are members are all erupted, the symptoms for the time usually disappear. In many cases, however, the condition of matters is not so favourable; for some time previous to the eruption of each tooth or group, the child

[1] To the natural irritation experienced in dentition, which in the lower animals probably never exceeds more than a slight amount of discomfort, a useful purpose may be assigned. The sensation of thirst, arising from deficiency of fluid in the blood, is referred to the region of the mouth and fauces, and we can readily comprehend the young animal grasping in consequence the teat of the mother by the mouth. The sense of hunger, arising from deficiency of solid nutritive material in the blood, is less definite in its location, and is felt in regions which are not accessible to applications.

At the period of teething, the young animal is continually applying to its mouth various solid substances, as our mats and carpets often testify, and, no doubt finding some of the substances palatable and agreeable, swallows them. Soon the sense of smell recalls to the creature the recollection of that with which previously an agreeable taste was connected. Sight also assists, and these two senses soon enable the individual to select its own food, and become wholly independent of the maternal supply.

becomes fretful and irritable, and the gums appear hot, swollen, and tender; the rubbing, evidently grateful in the former cases, now causes pain and resistance, and infants, from this cause, are seen to relinquish the breast, suddenly crying and struggling. If the symptoms are more severe, they are not confined to the local ones; the little sufferer is feverish and thirsty, evidenced, as West points out, by its sucking greedily at the breast and then vomiting a portion from the more than satisfied stomach. Diarrhœa, the result of extended or reflex irritation to the intestinal mucous membrane, is not uncommon, the motions being often offensive, and having the so-called chopped-spinach appearance, as when mercury has been administered. A troublesome cough, likewise the result of irritation conveyed to the respiratory mucous tract, often sets in with the eruption of each tooth, and, like the diarrhœa, ceases when the tooth or group has become erupted. But the symptoms most to be dreaded are those which show the nervous system to be influenced; for, although West has taught us, and no doubt correctly, to regard convulsions in the infant as comparable to delirium in the adult, they yet appear, even when arising only from the cause in question, to be capable of leaving lesions more serious than are generally seen to follow the delirium of prostrating illnesses.

Thus, in cases where the convulsions have been very severe, the brain occasionally appears to have been permanently affected thereby, and this where there may be no reason to suspect tubercular or other constitutional taint; nor are such results confined to the brain alone: the most distant parts may suffer, as seen in the cases of talipes equinus resulting from this cause.

During the eruption of the temporary teeth, cutaneous affections are by no means uncommon, the most frequent and troublesome, after the fugitive and unimportant erythematous and papulous rashes, being eczema, impetigo, and herpes.

Teething is a natural process, and not a disease, yet it does occasionally happen that a child may be said to die directly from it, and independently of any of its complications. A weak

child may be so exhausted by the process as to sink under it. A marked case came under the notice of the writer:— a male infant, which had the misfortune to lose its mother at the birth, and, with her, that means of nourishment most adapted for a weakly child, did fairly well up to the usual period of teething, when tooth after tooth, irrespective of group, rapidly made its appearance; the appetite fell off, yet the food taken, though small in quantity, was fairly digested; the little sufferer's rest was broken, and it gradually lost strength from day to day, and week to week, until it finally sank, exhausted. Now, had this weekly child erupted its teeth in groups, with the proper periods of repose between each, instead of *en masse*, so to speak, there is fair reason to believe that it might have gained sufficient strength in the intervals to enable it to pass through the trials as they arrived. In this case there was no disease, and therefore there could be no actual treatment, and this may be said of teething in general.

But, whilst there is no specific for teething, much may often be done to allay symptoms, care being taken, however, that they are not mistaken as arising from this cause, when they have in fact another and a more serious origin. When the process is naturally conducted, the less nature is interfered with the better; but we may inculcate on those having charge of infants the importance of their being especially guarded, particularly during the eruption of a group, from things in respect of which there is less necessity for care when the process is completed. Thus, at such periods, the following matters should be especially avoided; weaning, or other important changes in diet, exposure to changes of temperature by alteration in clothing or situation, the chance of infection of zymotic diseases &c., and vaccination.

If called to children whose symptoms are confined to local ones, we may, if we find the gums somewhat swollen and congested, though not tender, afford some relief by lightly scarifying them with a sharp lancet;—we lay much stress on sharp, as it then causes very little pain, and, by cleanly dividing the

superficial vessels, affords greater relief through freer bleeding ;— but, should the gums be very tender, as evidenced by the cry or altered cry of the infant when it is commenced, it should at once be discontinued, for an inflamed surface is mostly acutely sensitive, and the less cruel method of applying a leech at the angle of the jaw should be adopted. We doubt whether much relief, or relief of any duration, is attained by the operation of scarifying the gums; yet that it does afford relief, and cause but little pain, is evidenced by the fact that we have occasionally been asked by children, old enough to do so, to perform it, from their recollection of the relief which they had experienced on former occasions. In case, however, of other conditions than the merely local ones prevailing, should we find the gums elevated at certain points, and, on inquiry, ascertain that

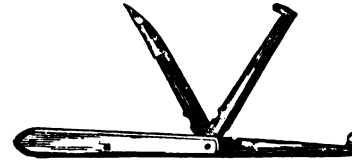


Fig. 2 shows three forms of lancet useful in dental surgery : the blade in a line with the handle is that best suited for lancing the gums.

certain teeth of a group have been erupted, and should the gum, moreover, appear stretched over such spots as correspond to other members of such group, we may then with advantage freely divide the gum until the tooth is reached, which should be but a short distance from the surface. In performing this simple operation, especially in the front of the mouth, care should be taken to incise upon the anterior rather than upon the posterior aspect of the gum; as it might be possible, in the latter case, for the lancet to slide down the posterior surface of the tooth and injure the germ of its permanent successor. The operation, however, should be quite exceptional : its general employment, as was the case some half-century ago, was undoubtedly cruel and uncalled for; yet there is a danger, in the

present day, of a really valuable and simple means of allaying serious symptoms being for fashion's sake discarded.

In respect of the diarrhœa accompanying teething, and regarded by some as an effort of nature to relieve or prevent local inflammations, and therefore not to be actively dealt with, the greatest circumspection on the part of the practitioner is requisite: processes natural in themselves at the outset may yet become habitual, and continue after the cause of their existence has disappeared; and diarrhœa, simply the result of the reflex action of a cutting tooth, may soon result in symptoms alarming, and conditions difficult of control. It is not always easy, in cases of diarrhœa occurring at the period of teething, to diagnose its true cause, and therefore it will be the more prudent, at all events, to try and restrain it within moderate bounds, even though our suspicions strongly point to a dental origin. Our conclusions upon the subject may, however, be much assisted by our learning whether, in case of teeth having been previously erupted, such conditions then prevailed, and passed off when the process was accomplished. Our attention should also be directed to ascertaining, whether other portions of the mucous membrane are likewise affected, as shown by catarrhal symptoms generally; and the condition of the alvine ejections, and the circumstance of a group of teeth being, or about to be, erupted, should also be ascertained. Above all, we must inquire into the conditions under which the child is receiving its nutriment: if from the breast, then whether circumstances have occurred which could alter the character of the milk, or whether the child be allowed the breast too frequently or at irregular intervals: if by hand, then whether any changes have been made in the character of the food, or in its consistency. The milk, if that has been employed, may have been obtained from another source or supplied in too large quantity, or not sufficiently diluted—both very common errors in the nurture of infants. A child may often do well by hand, on milk and water (the best food for ninety-nine out of a hundred children for the first year) until the period of teething, when the

digestive organs appear less capable of digesting the casein of cow's milk, especially when too little diluted with water. As in the milk of cows casein exists in larger quantity than in that of the human species, a certain dilution, especially in the case of delicate children at this period, is essential; but there is no doubt also that it exists in the former in a less digestible form; 'the casein of cow's milk coagulates in large clots, whilst woman's milk produces only small flocculent coagula.' Should the casein be not digested, we usually at first find symptoms of constipation; the motions are voided with difficulty and pain, and are much of the consistency and appearance of dry putty; the action of the liver appears almost suspended, and the napkins are scarcely soiled. If this condition of things be allowed to continue, diarrhœa, often culminating in so-called infantile cholera, especially in hot seasons, may soon occur; but this is not the diarrhœa of teething, though it may be greatly incited and aggravated thereby.

Here our attention must be directed to diet almost exclusively; goat's milk may be substituted for cow's, and should this not prove effective, ass's milk, which more nearly approaches the human than any other available, will often be digested;[1] or, where these are not accessible, the valuable suggestion of forming a compound analogous to human milk may be adopted.[2]

In our treatment of these cases, it will make little difference

[1] Butter-milk has been much commended in some parts of the Continent.

[2] To a friend and former teacher—Dr. Frankland, of the Department of Science and Art,—we are indebted for the following plan, slightly altered at our suggestion with his concurrence, for preparing a food for infants, closely resembling in its composition human milk:

Take the cream furnished by a pint of milk and add it to $\frac{2}{3}$ pint of new milk. Into the skimmed milk from which the cream is taken, put a piece of rennet about one inch square, and set the vessel containing it in warm water, until the milk is fully curdled, which should occupy about 5 to 15 minutes. The rennet, being removed, washed, and then kept in salt and water, will be serviceable for a month. Next break up the curd, and carefully strain it from the whey, which latter should be

whether the cause be teething or otherwise; though, as before stated, we shall of course treat it, the diarrhœa, in the former less actively; next to a correction of any errors which we may have discovered, as regards diet or exposure to cold, a common factor in the diarrhœa of infants, we may with much advantage administer, for three or four successive days, a small teaspoonful of an emulsion, composed of equal parts of castor-oil and gum-syrup, which may in some cases be repeated more than once in the day, but should be discontinued on the cessation or moderation of the diarrhœa; in severe cases, a small quantity, one to three drops at most, of vinum opii may be added, and this opiated form should be especially employed in cases of relapse. When the child is found to be much exhausted and emaciated, great benefit often ensues from adding to its food a little brandy ijm. or iijm. at each of its meals, but not in the whole exceeding 8 to 10 drops in the day. If there be much vomiting, the same quantity of salvolatile may be substituted.

heated to the boiling point, and then again strained from the casein formed during the boiling 'feetings.' Add to the hot whey 110 grains of milk-sugar, and when dissolved mix the whole with the $\frac{2}{3}$ pint of new milk and added cream. The artificial milk thus prepared should be used within twelve hours of its preparation, and all vessels employed should be scrupulously clean.

Analyses of milk, from 'Frankland's Experimental Researches':

	Woman	Ass	Cow	Artificial
Casein . . .	2·7	1·7	4·2	2·8
Butter . . .	3·5	1·3	3·8	3·8
Milk-sugar. . .	5·0	4·5	3·8	5·0
Salts	·2	·5	·7	·7

It is not impossible also, that a portion of the milk having been acted on with pepsine, the casein of the fresh milk added may undergo some beneficial change: at all events, the food has in most cases appeared to answer quite as well as human milk. The trouble, however, of preparing it is by no means inconsiderable, and would lead most to seek the more simple yet morally doubtful expedient of a wet nurse.

In large institutions, such as foundling hospitals, &c., this process might no doubt be adopted, and with great advantage.

The food must be greatly diminished in such cases, and perhaps only a teaspoonful should be given at a time, but at more frequent intervals. Great benefit is also often experienced from the application of a large but light linseed-meal poultice, applied warm over the abdomen, and covered over with oil silk, a very small proportion of mustard only being added, the surface being previously slightly oiled. Enemata of starch and laudanum, about ɪɱ. to vɱ. of the latter according as they are retained, may at times be usefully employed.

When called to an infant in whom the symptoms, however slight, indicate that the nervous system is affected, we must never omit a careful inspection of the mouth; and, should there be the smallest evidence for believing that the symptoms may depend upon the cause now before us, the gum-lancet should be freely used; for little harm can be done by incising, though unnecessarily, a healthy gum, compared with the mischief which may result from overlooking this cause of infantile convulsions.

The symptoms may be slight, such as mere restlessness, light and uneasy sleep, with the thumbs slightly contracted on the palms; or there may be more restlessness accompanied by muscular twitchings, the child sleeping with the eyelids but partially closed, moaning in its sleep, and waking with a start, and crying violently; or the symptoms may be the still more severe ones of active convulsive movements, succeeded after a time by complete unconsciousness. Should the movements be unilateral, they would of course most probably point to another cause than dental irritation. Even in the severest cases, the simple operation of lancing the gums has, under our hands, often allayed in a marvellously short time the symptoms which have continued more or less for twenty-four and even thirty-six hours. But it would never be right to depend upon this alone: the warm bath, to which a handful of mustard is a valuable adjunct, should be likewise employed. To the head if hot, cold should be applied, whilst the feet on removal from the bath should be wrapped in hot flannel. Should the face be flushed, the pulse full and incompressible, and the fontanelles prominent,

a few leeches applied at the occiput and removed directly an effect is produced, will often prove of great service: when these cannot be obtained, an ounce or two of blood according to age may be taken from the external or anterior jugular veins, and, when required, an aperient must never be omitted. But it is most necessary, in treating cases of infantile convulsions from teething, not to mistake for these symptoms somewhat similar ones arising from a wholly different cause, viz. the convulsions of anæmia; as the above-mentioned treatment would most probably be attended with a fatal result. They arise from the same cause as do the convulsions witnessed in those who have suffered from severe hæmorrhage in parturition, and we well know what would be the likely result of a depleting course in such condition. The following symptoms —a pale though occasionally flushing face, a dry skin with hair of head somewhat erect, conspicuous veins and sunken orbits but prominent eyeballs, fontanelles depressed, and pulse rapid and almost imperceptible, and quick respiration, with occasionally a loud, shrill, and distressing cry, the often precursor of a fatal termination,—call for stimulants, warmth and nourishment, rather than depletion or depressants, to arrest the convulsions, of which the cause is not in any such instance the teeth, but is probably an exhaustive diarrhœa, or imperfect nutrition.

With regard to the cutaneous eruptions often seen during the period of teething, which anxious parents so urgently solicit the practitioner to cure, a palliative treatment only is the best course to pursue, as active interference is often attended by severe and permanent injury to other organs, especially the respiratory. The removal of the crusts when large by poultice, and scrupulous attention to cleanliness, with perhaps the employment of some mild astringent and cooling lotion, form the best treatment.

A disease has been described under the appellation, 'odontitis infantum,' in which the gum over an erupting temporary tooth becomes swollen, congested, and finally ulcerated, when the tooth has penetrated it. The examples we

have met with, i.e. if they be the disease in question, were certainly, in our opinion, no other than cases of ulcerative stomatitis, modified to some extent by the condition of the parts during the process of dentition, which readily yielded to the specific for that disease, viz. chlorate of potash.

In very delicate children, especially those who may have suffered from hooping-cough, measles, &c., the mucous membrane covering an erupting tooth may completely slough; for this we have found no remedy so efficient as strong carbolic acid. Another condition that may be witnessed at this period is the formation of a small sac containing serous fluid above the summit of a coming tooth, which is doubtless, as suggested by J. Tomes, an abnormal secretion of serum into the space between the enamel of the tooth and the remains of the enamel organ.

In describing some of the untoward conditions which occur during teething, and how they may best be met, the limits and objects of this work enable us only to give but a brief and consequently imperfect outline, and the student desirous of more information will do well to consult the writings of West, Trousseau, and Dickinson, also an excellent article in the 'Journal de Thérapeutique' for July 25, 1877, on the Diarrhœa of Infants, by M. Blache, translated in the 'Lancet' of September 15, 1877, from which works we have occasionally quoted verbatim.

CHAPTER II.

IRREGULARITIES IN THE TEMPORARY TEETH. DISEASES OF THE TEMPORARY TEETH. THE SECOND DENTITION.

THE temporary teeth have but few abnormal conditions, and probably no diseases peculiar to themselves, which are not also common to them and the permanent teeth; so that, whilst we now point out some of the former, we shall reserve a description of the latter till we treat of the diseases of the permanent teeth.

In the temporary, as in the permanent series, we may meet with irregularities in size, form, number, and position. In regard to abnormality in size, the temporary teeth differ less than the permanent, but occasionally cuspidati, and second molars, are met with so developed that they might readily be mistaken for those of the second series. As it is important, especially in the treatment of irregularities in position, that such an error should be avoided, we may point out that, independently of size, the teeth of the first series may be generally recognised by their more delicate and translucent colour, by the enamel at their necks terminating in an extended and abrupt manner (see Fig. 1, p. 3), and, at a time when they could be so mistaken, by their masticating surfaces exhibiting more or less evidences of wear: in the case of the cuspidati, they would probably be slightly loose to the touch at a time when they could be mistaken for their successors, and in that of the second temporary molars their position in the dental series ought generally to determine their true class.

In form, likewise, the temporary teeth are more constant

than are the permanent ones. With regard to the number of their roots they do not often vary, but observation on this point cannot be so certainly determined, as in the natural course of events they are lost by absorption, at the period of eruption of the permanent teeth. We have in our possession four upper cuspidati, each bifurcated at the radical extremity (see Fig. 26, p. 42), and a lower molar with three and an upper molar with four fangs. A more common departure is where two teeth are united (geminated) together; the union may occur in the cementum only, or in the dentine and enamel. In the latter

Fig. 3 shows an upper second temporary molar with four fangs.

Fig. 4 shows a lower second temporary molar with three fangs.

case a pulp cavity may be common to both: union of teeth by cementum only may take place after the teeth are developed, as a pathological process.

In number also, the temporary series are more constant than the permanent. Absence from the series is rare, although the writer has under observation a family in which one member is deficient in the four laterals, another in all the incisors excepting the upper centrals, and a third in whom again the lateral incisors are absent. In these three cases, all females, it could be almost certainly prognosticated, from the want of development of the jaw at birth, that such teeth would be absent. In this family there is the history of the maternal grandmother and a great uncle having had a deficiency in the second series.[1]

Fig. 5 shows gemination of a temporary lateral incisor and cuspidatus of the lower jaw, left side.

[1] The writer has recently met with a case of a little girl, in whom was wanting one of the temporary incisors of the lower jaw, but who now has not only the full number of permanent teeth, but also a well-formed supernumerary lower lateral incisor.

Excess in number is, though rare, probably more common; the writer has met with eight or nine cases of an additional lateral incisor of the upper jaw, and almost always well-formed, like teeth of the same class.

As the temporary teeth are erupted in the line of the position of their development, which is not so in the case of the

Fig. 6 shows upper jaw of a child in which the lateral incisors are absent.

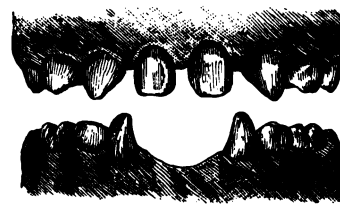


Fig. 7 shows lower jaw of a child in which all the incisors are absent.

permanent teeth, they are, as we should naturally expect, much less liable to deviation from the normal arrangement. Irregularities in position of the temporary teeth are comparatively rare, the most common being a slight overlapping of the

Fig. 8 shows upper jaw containing a supernumerary lateral on the right side.

upper central incisors at their mesial extremities; occasionally an edge to edge bite, that is, when the cutting extremities of the front teeth of each jaw meet each other, instead of the upper slightly overlapping the lower teeth, as is natural; and more rarely this is extended to what is termed underhung, *i.e.* when the lower teeth overlap the upper when the mouth is closed.

We have noticed this latter taking place some years after the teeth have been erupted, their original position having been normal. Tumours, by their pressure, will of course also produce this class of irregularity. Thumb-sucking, likewise, may occasion a deformity. We have a case now under observation

where the teeth and alveolar process of the right side of the upper jaw are considerably pressed outwards by this habit always practised on that side.

With regard to treatment, we have never seen occasion to interfere in the case of supernumerary temporary teeth, which are sometimes followed, and sometimes not, by permanent

Fig. 9 shows the chin retractor as applied.

successors. In the cases, however, where there is an increasing tendency to become underhung, due doubtless to some excess of development in the lower jaw, or imperfect development in its ascending ramus, an appliance for drawing back the chin, by means of an elastic band attached to a cap for the head, may quite prevent, at an early age, the occurrence of this unsightly irregularity.

The temporary teeth cannot be said to be liable to any diseases special to themselves which are not common to both series. Caries, the most common of all, appears to arise from

the same causes, and run much the same course; still, there are slight differences which may be briefly noticed. It often appears in a very superficial form, attacking all the front teeth at once, and giving them an appearance of having been eaten away by an acid solvent. In its more ordinary form, its progress appears somewhat more rapid, and attended by necrosis at an earlier period, which may perhaps arise from the temporary teeth containing a larger proportion of organic constituents than do the permanent ones.[1] The result of this loss of vitality is usually alveolar abscess, or gum-boil, appearing generally on the labial aspect of the gum: the bone lost by the process at this portion of the jaw leads to the necrosed fangs of these teeth becoming exposed at such points during the eruption of the permanent teeth, where they are not unfrequently mistaken for small exfoliations of bone; or, if overlooked, they may penetrate into the adjacent cheek, setting up considerable ulceration and swelling, followed often by cicatrices which bind the cheek at those points to the jaw. When this occurs, they should of course be removed, and the operation may be effected in a very easy manner. Where the fang is not exposed in its whole length, *i.e.* where only a portion of its apex penetrates the gum, the latter—the isthmus-like portion—should be divided by the lancet, and then, a pointed elevator being placed a little

[1] The temporary teeth also being more rapidly developed should, we might naturally expect, show less power of resistance than their more

Fig. 10 shows upper jaw with portions of the roots of temporary central incisors exposed.

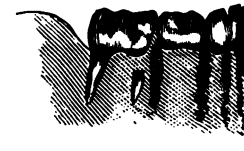


Fig. 11 shows lower jaw with lower second temporary molar having one root fully and one root partially exposed.

slowly developed successors, whilst a proportionately larger pulp cavity would result in an earlier exposure of its contents, and an earlier death of the tooth.

above or below (as the case may be) and behind the apex of the fang, a downward or upward and slightly inward movement will speedily detach the tooth; with the removal of the tooth the ulceration and swelling soon disappear, although the small cicatrix above mentioned may result.

The treatment of caries of the first teeth will be conducted upon much the same principles as will be detailed when we treat of that disease in the permanent set: we cannot, however, too strongly inculcate an early employment of the tooth-brush, especially at night: parents are commonly disposed to imagine that practice unnecessary with children, and the latter suffer accordingly. In the case of superficial caries, where the operation of filling cannot be resorted to, the cleansing process becomes imperative: it should be performed after each meal, and a few drops of a mixture of salvolatile and alcohol [1] applied at the conclusion. When this is persevered in, the progress of the caries seems to be generally arrested, and the teeth affected are often preserved until the ordinary time for shedding them arrives. Moreover, the teeth, which, when affected with the superficial decay, are usually very sensitive to bite upon, become with this treatment free from tenderness and useful in mastication.

The temporary teeth, having fulfilled their office, retire from active service in favour of their more durable successors. Whether the act of their departure pertains more to themselves or to their successors, has been for some years a moot point. An ancient view was, that the permanent teeth in their advance absorbed and assimilated for their own benefit their temporary predecessors, and in this cannibal view perhaps a modicum of truth existed. A more recent view regards the temporary teeth as subject to that condition which appertains to all tissues of the

[1] ℞ Spiritus Ammoniæ aromat. ℥j
Spiritus Vinæ ℥iij
M. ft. applicatio.

About 10 drops of the above to a teaspoonful of water to be applied on the tooth-brush after cleansing the teeth.

body—cells, fibres, and their combinations, even to the whole body itself; viz., in having a fixed period of existence, which includes the stages of development and growth, of maintenance and maturity, and of degeneration and decay, in which last they undergo changes which involve their being cast off from the surface like hair, epithelia, &c., or breaking up and being carried away in the circulatory system, as are all subcutaneous tissues in the body; and to this rule the fangs of the temporary teeth form no exception: they also undergo, at fixed periods of their existence, ramollisement, and are removed amongst the products of metamorphosed tissues. Whilst we are fully prepared to admit the truth of this doctrine, in so far as that a change in the condition of a temporary tooth precedes its absorption, it is yet evident that the process is closely in relation with that which effects the eruption of its successor; for, should the latter be absent, the process often does not take place for many years later; indeed, it is not uncommon to see temporary teeth in the mouth and firm after maturity has been attained. The writer once filled a lower second temporary molar with gold, in the person of a gentleman above sixty.

As this process of absorption is so closely connected with the eruption of the permanent teeth, we may here give our views upon the latter process, which were first expressed in a course of lectures delivered at St. Bartholomew's Hospital in 1867, and published subsequently, but certainly not until after almost similar views had been expressed in an admirable paper in the 'Vierteljahrsschrift,' by the pen of Herr Robert Baume.[1] To account for the eruption of the teeth, two views have until recently been advanced: one, in which the process is attributed to the growth of the fangs of the teeth causing their crowns to be raised out of their alveoli; and the other, in which that process is attributed to a growth of bone at the lower portions of the alveoli, squeezing, as it were, the teeth out of their sockets. The first is still the view entertained by some,[2] but its inaccuracy is

[1] Translated in the *Monthly Review of Dental Surgery*, vol. i.

[2] 'The eruption of the teeth is a process of gradual elongation of the

readily verified upon the examination of preparations at various periods in the second dentition. In the woodcut below, taken from a normal preparation in the Museum of the Odontological Society, will be seen a bicuspid tooth, with the fang fully formed, yet not erupted, and other teeth, the fangs of which are

Fig. 12 shows an upper maxilla of the right side, with portions cut away to exhibit the developing permanent teeth. It will be observed that the fang of the first bicuspid is fully developed, and the fangs of the cuspidatus and second bicuspid are nearly so, while no portion of the crown of these teeth has been erupted. The platform of bone spoken of in the text is seen supporting the first temporary molar.

nearly completed, also not erupted, but which undoubtedly would have been so in due course had the individual survived. For the second and later assigned cause there is actually no

teeth on the one hand, and of simultaneous absorption of the superimposed tissues on the other. The absorption commences, first in the overhanging margins and front walls of the alveoli, which gradually disappear until room is afforded for the free passage of the advancing tooth. The growth of the tooth keeps pace with this absorption, and the crown at length pressing against the membranous coverings, these undergo atrophy, and, becoming by degrees thinner and at last transparent, give way and disclose the advancing crown.'—The Student's Guide to Dental Anatomy and Surgery, by Henry Sewell, M.R.C.S., 1876, p. 27.

ground, as it cannot be shown that there is greater development of bone taking place during the eruption of the teeth at the apices of the alveoli than at other parts of that district of the maxillæ.

The only probable explanation which it appears to us can be offered, is in the general growth and advance of the bone towards the surface, carrying with it the contained teeth.

This assertion consequently implies a continual growth of bone (as is the case with epithelia, cartilage, &c. &c.) from its nutrient centres towards its circumference, and also that at the latter absorption must be frequently taking place, as we have evidence of its occasionally doing during the process of absorption of the temporary, and advance of the permanent, teeth, where portions of bone—platforms, as they might be called, supporting the former—are often seen extending much beyond the general level, as represented in the woodcut; which platforms become absorbed as soon as the sustained teeth fall out. To which tissue or structure this power of absorption pertains, we will not venture to decide; though we are inclined to the conclusion that it is effected by the osteo-blastic layer of the periosteum assuming an osteo-clastic function. But that such power exists, none we think can deny from the foregoing consideration, as also when we take into account those conditions of loss at certain parts and gain at others which take place in the inferior maxilla between childhood and manhood; moreover, it affords a more rational explanation of the exfoliation of teeth and roots, when unopposed by pressure, also of sequestra of bone, than the assertion that nature casts such off because useless. In the treatment of irregularity in position by mechanical appliance, we often see certain teeth, which have been relieved from opposing pressure by such means, become unduly elongated; whilst in cases where a tooth, from loss of its comrades, becomes subjected to undue pressure, it will be found often more deeply imbedded in the jaw than is natural. According then to the views advanced, a tooth developed in the maxilla is carried with the growth of that bone towards

the surface. Arriving at the surface, the bony covering becomes absorbed, and the more so as the tooth advances, until the crown, projecting above the surface, meets with some opposition to its further advancement, and is retained in position,[1] when the bone immediately surrounding it—its alveolus—becomes more dense in character, and less rapid in growth, than the surrounding cancellous interalveolar portions. These harder portions of bone being more stationary, we have, doubtless, so to speak, bone currents continually existing in the maxillæ, but more especially during the periods of the first and second dentitions, when these bones are in a condition of more than ordinary active development.[2] If we now apply these views to the question before us, viz., the absorption of the temporary teeth, we shall understand that the bone, carrying with it the permanent teeth, advances to the surface, where it becomes absorbed; and, as this process of absorption must at these times be very active and extensive, as indeed we know it to be, it seems probable that the periosteal covering to the temporary teeth meets the same fate, or becomes so altered in character that its osteo-blastic elements may become active and osteo-clastic agents. In either way, it so happens that the fangs of the teeth come into contact with these elements, which are found in collections about their roots, and constitute the 'absorption-organs of Tomes.' In confirmation of the position taken above, we have the fact that there is no appearance of periosteum where the process of absorption is taking place.

[1] Besides the operation of opposing teeth in effecting such retention, we may take into consideration the retaining power exercised by the mucous membrane firmly attached to the necks of the teeth, which attachment, when lost by disease, is almost invariably followed by their exfoliation.

[2] These views have been more fully expressed in a contribution to the *St. Bartholomew's Hospital Reports*, p. 91. They have met with the approval of Professor Owen, who has kindly pointed out to the writer a similarity of idea in his description of the development of teeth in the elephant, *Odontography*, p. 639; but C. S. Tomes still regards the process as obscure and unexplained.

These cells, the elements of absorption, are in nowise different from those of actively-growing bone; indeed, J. Tomes shows that the process of absorption is often alternating with that of formation, but, the balance being in favour of the former, the greater part of the dentine, and generally some portion of the enamel, eventually disappears. It is not uncommon to see a temporary tooth, especially a molar, at the period of its being shed, appearing of a pink colour, owing to its transparency, showing through it the vascular and proliferating bone-elements beneath it. The condition termed necrosis, in which a tooth or bone has undergone changes other than a mere loss of vitality,—which is not the case with simply dried teeth or bone removed from living or recently-killed animals, where chemical change or decomposition has not ensued,—is a barrier, and fortunately so, to the process of absorption, such tooth or sequestrum being got rid of by the general advance of bone to the surface; but, where, through resistance by obstacles, &c., necrosed temporary teeth or roots are retained *in situ*, they form a common cause of irregularity in their permanent successors.

But, whatever be the means, the absorption of the temporary teeth is so far effected, that they lose their hold upon the mucous membrane, and fall, or are rubbed off, from it: the order of their disappearance is usually that of the appearance of their successors. The process is happily a gradual one, otherwise animals would be left for a time in an unpleasant predicament, and it usually occupies about ten to twelve years or even longer. In most cases, the falling out of a tooth is followed by the appearance of its successor within a few days; in some, the successor appears before the predecessor has departed, and then in an abnormal position; and in some it does not appear for months or even years after.

The teeth of the permanent set are thirty-two in number: they therefore contain in their series twelve more than the temporary set. They are arranged in the same manner, viz., an equal number in each jaw, and symmetrically on each side of the mesial line of the mouth.

Their formula is incisors $\frac{2}{2}$, cuspidati $\frac{1}{1}$, bicuspids $\frac{2}{2}$, molars $\frac{3}{3}$; the cuspidati are also called canine and eye teeth, and the bicuspids premolars.

The first permanent tooth that makes its appearance is the first molar,[1] and it is generally the largest in size of all. When

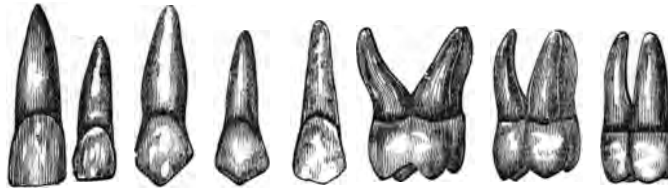


Fig. 13 shows the upper permanent teeth of the left side; *a*, central incisor; *b*, lateral incisor; *c*, cuspidatus; *d*, first bicuspid; *e*, second bicuspid; *f*, first molar; *g*, second molar; *h*, third molar.

the second temporary molar has been erupted, it almost wholly occupies the space between the first molar and the coronoid process of the lower and the tuberosity of the upper

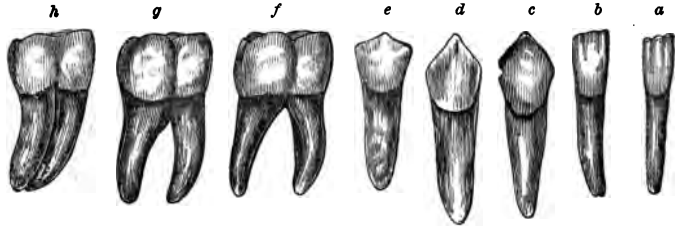


Fig. 14 shows the lower permanent teeth of the right side; *a*, central incisor; *b*, lateral incisor; *c*, cuspidatus; *d*, first bicuspid; *e*, second bicuspid; *f*, first molar; *g*, second molar; *h*, third molar.

[1] This tooth holds a somewhat singular position in the dental series. In regard to its development, it is closely allied to the temporary series, in having its formation from a special duplication of the mucous membrane, and in not being any offshoot from a temporary tooth, and also in its furnishing the offshoots for the second and third molars. From the age at which it is erupted, and from its not undergoing absorption, and its not having a successor in its place, also from its position, &c., in the series, it is classed amongst the second or permanent teeth; its claim, however, to permanency in another sense, especially in the present day, is a very doubtful one.

jaw; but, as the period of the second dentition approaches, considerable space will be found to exist posterior to those teeth, which is produced in the lower jaw by an absorption or loss of bone at the anterior and inferior portions of the coronoid processes, with corresponding increase at the posterior and inferior portions of the ascending rami; and is produced in the upper jaw by additions to the tuberosities; and this process, mainly dependent upon the presence of developing teeth, is continued until room sufficient is afforded for two more large teeth behind the first permanent molars, viz., the second and third of the same name: a want of such due development is often the cause of a form of irregularity, attended by very distressing conditions. The first permanent molars generally make their appearance between the years of six and seven, and the next in order are the central incisors of the lower jaw; but the following table will convey fairly the periods of eruption for all, and will probably be easier for recollection:—

		YEARS
1.	First molars	6
2.	Central incisors, lower jaw	7
3.	Central incisors, upper jaw	8
4.	Lateral incisors, both jaws (lower preceding upper)	9
5.	First bicuspids	10
6.	Second bicuspids	11
7.	Cuspidati	12
8.	Second molars	13
9.	Third molars	17 to 20

That the second dentition should be accomplished under much more favourable conditions than are usual with the first, has, when we consider the size of the permanent teeth and their irregular positions during development, been a matter of surprise, and has led to various explanations to account for it. That which appears to us the most satisfactory attributes it to the peculiar condition of the nervous system at the period of the first dentition, and when the nervous apparatus is undergoing a condition of development incomparably greater than occurs at any other period of life.[1]

[1] West, *op. cit.*

Although the second dentition may be regarded with different feelings from those with which we estimate the first, yet it occasionally happens that conditions present themselves which we must be careful not to overlook. Thus, independently of any special symptoms, a child during the second dentition, and especially during the eruption of the molars, may appear wanting in its usual spirits, sometimes suffering, though not severely, with headache, or slight neuralgic pains, and the appetite is not unfrequently either diminished or capricious. Such symptoms are most commonly met with when the second molars are being erupted, and they are, though no doubt much influenced by, often attributed wholly to, the period of puberty having arrived. Other conditions, more especially pertaining to the nervous system, may frequently be manifested at this period, and dental influence may be witnessed by the symptoms lessening when the teeth become erupted, and of these chorea, quite independent of rheumatic origin or influence, is not an uncommon one; also those tricks of nervous movements, which often become habitual when the cause that produced them no longer exists. With history of or tendency to epilepsy the period of the second dentition is one of importance and anxiety, especially during that of the eruption of the third molars. Several such cases have come under our notice, and in more than one of them marked benefit has followed their removal, as soon as it was possible to accomplish it.

The local conditions, though generally less marked than in the first dentition, may at times demand attention. It is not uncommon to find children complaining of pain when they eat, and, on inspecting the mouth, to find the gums so swollen over the coming first molars that the mucous membranes of each jaw meet and are pressed upon when the mouth is closed. Soothing applications will generally reduce the swelling, and with it the cause of discomfort: more rarely the gum may appear white in colour, and evidently stretched over the cusps of a molar tooth: here the gum-lancet will speedily relieve. It is in the eruption of the third molars, however, that most pain and dis-

comfort are usually experienced, and even at times when ample room for them exists, and where there is no undue distension of the gum, as is manifested by a small probe being easily passed between it and the tooth; the surrounding gum, too, becomes often acutely inflamed, swollen, and even ulcerated; the pain is not confined to the spot, but is felt in the ear, running up to the vertex, and down at times as far as the clavicle: not unfrequently the inflammation extends to the tonsil of the affected side. For this condition we have found a solution of chlorate of potash in poppy fomentation an excellent and most effectual remedy;[1] it seems more certain than any we know of, for reducing the trismus often so severe and trying in these cases.

Matter occasionally forms at or near the roots of third molars, but we shall refer to these conditions when speaking of irregularities in position of the permanent teeth.

[1] ℞ Potassæ Chloratis ℥iss
ft. pulv. xii.

To one ounce of warm poppy fomentation add one of the powders and foment the inside of the mouth.

CHAPTER III.

IRREGULARITIES IN THE PERMANENT TEETH.

IRREGULARITIES in the permanent teeth constitute a very important department in dental surgery. We shall consider them under the same heads as we arranged them in the temporary series.

1. In size: here we have great variation independent of any pathological imperfection. In the following cuts are shown the

Fig. 15 shows permanent teeth of unusually large dimensions, copied from a cast in the possession of S. Cartwright, actual size.

central incisors of the upper jaw, actual size from a cast in the possession of S. Cartwright; also, for comparison, the same teeth abnormally small but free from any pathological defects.

Fig. 16 shows permanent teeth of unusually small dimensions, copied from a male patient of the writer's.

Malformed supernumerary teeth are often met with, of very small size; probably the smallest on record are those in the

museum of the Odontological Society, attached to which is a very interesting history.[1] A not unusual condition of things is, to see one of the upper lateral incisors, or sometimes both, small and conical in the crown, resembling the commonest type of supernumerary tooth, and especially is this the case when one of these teeth may be wanting. It indicates that the tooth has appeared in its most rudimentary form, a stage just beyond not appearing at all. The teeth which vary most in size are probably the third molars; they sometimes present themselves on the lower jaw, quite one-third larger than the second molars, appearing almost as if they were a combination of themselves with a smaller tooth, whilst in the upper jaw especially they may appear quite rudimentary in form, like the small upper incisors alluded to.

In the treatment of these cases we do not interfere unless the deformity caused is very unsightly. In a case where the upper central incisors were out of all proportion in excess of size over the other teeth, and projected over the lower lip, giving to the individual a strongly rodent expression, we removed them and succeeded in bringing the laterals together, so as to quite close up the gap. We have often also in young persons removed with advantage one or both of the unsightly diminutive laterals spoken of.

2. In form: the variations to which the permanent teeth are subject may be said to be almost endless, and it would much exceed the limits of this work, as well as not fulfil its objects, were we to attempt to enumerate them. Amongst the most common departures from the normal type are the so-called honey-

[1] They occurred in the mouth of a nurse in one of the wards for syphilitic patients at St. Bartholomew's Hospital, who frequently had to perform mercurial inunction, and who had been often in consequence salivated, and had lost all her permanent teeth. Some years after she had lost her second teeth there appeared at times on the mucous membrane of the mouth very minute malformed teeth not larger than a No. 6. shot, which were regarded as teeth belonging to a third set. We can hardly doubt but that they were teeth developed in a dentigerous cyst, such as have been described by Carl Tellander of Stockholm and Mathias of India.

combed teeth, the enamel of which has been so imperfectly developed that it is wanting, or almost wanting, at many parts: it most commonly takes an arrangement of parallel horizontal lines on the teeth, which, however, are not equidistant from the cutting surface on the crown on each, and therefore probably correspond to certain periods in the development when those conditions prevailed which prevented the perfect arrangement of

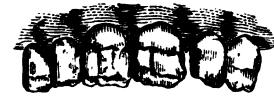


Fig. 17 shows honeycombed teeth of the upper jaw, copied from a cast in our possession.

the enamel fibres or the deposition of the lime-salts. The teeth most affected are the central incisors, cuspidati, and first molars. The lateral incisors occasionally escape, as do more frequently the bicuspids; the second and third molars enjoy the greatest immunity. Jonathan Hutchinson attributes this condition of the teeth to being largely dependent on the effects of mercury administered in infancy. The facts which he brings forward are well supported, but it cannot be denied that typical cases occur where that drug has never been taken, and we have overwhelming proof that it is inherited from parents. It is an unsightly and disfiguring condition, and our gratitude should be accorded to any who may endeavour to seek out its cause and means of prevention or mitigation.

We are indebted to Hutchinson also for having first called our attention to another very important form of this class of irregularity, viz. the teeth of the subjects of inherited syphilis, which first attracted his attention whilst working at ophthalmic diseases. In recognising a syphilitic form of keratitis which had previously been regarded as strumous, and had been confounded with the latter, Hutchinson's attention was directed to a peculiarity in the permanent teeth of the syphilitic. We had the good fortune at that time to be a colleague of his, and were able to confirm his conclusions, by which he has supplied another

and valuable means of diagnosis in this most important branch of pathology. The teeth chiefly affected are the central incisors, cuspidati, and first molars of each jaw; but the most marked are the central incisors of the upper jaw: these when erupted are deficient in enamel at the central portion, especially of their cutting edges,—that portion which corresponds to the middle of the three centres of development in these teeth. This thin portion soon becomes worn away, and then the teeth have a notched appearance. A general deficiency of substance at the cutting edge of all syphilitic teeth gives to them a peculiar conical or peg-shaped form, which contrasts strongly with that of normal shaped teeth.

Whilst giving our fullest adhesion to the correctness of Hutchinson's views in general, we may yet remark that we

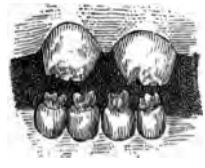


Fig. 18 shows syphilitic teeth in upper and lower jaws as they appear when recently erupted.

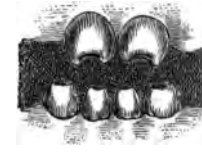


Fig. 19 shows syphilitic teeth in upper and lower jaws which have been erupted some time, and from which the slighter portions at the cutting edges have been worn away.

have in one or two instances, and among the members of a healthy family, met with a case of an individual in whom the above-mentioned type of teeth existed, and where we should have supposed it almost impossible that the cause could be syphilis; yet, the possibility existing, we are unable to deny the fact, though on the other hand it would be shocking to suspect unfaithfulness which did not exist.

The teeth termed supernumerary are more frequently of abnormal form than otherwise: the variations are too numerous to be here described in detail, their most common type being of conical form and small, more nearly approaching that of temporary cuspidati. In front of the central incisors they are

often, though less frequently, large, with four or more cusps on the crown, like a small molar, but having one root. In rare instances they have the appearance of being broad and flat and folded upon themselves, and of thus having a central hollow lined with enamel; but these, independently of being supernumerary, as we have met with them in three cases, appear rather to belong to the class odontomes. Union or gemination

Fig. 20 shows a supernumerary permanent tooth of the most common type.

Fig. 21 shows a supernumerary tooth of the form not unfrequently met with in the region of the upper central incisors.

of teeth also exists in the permanent as in the temporary series, but is probably less common, though the union of fangs through cementum is certainly more so.

Departure from the ordinary number of fangs is not infrequent, the most common being excess of number in upper

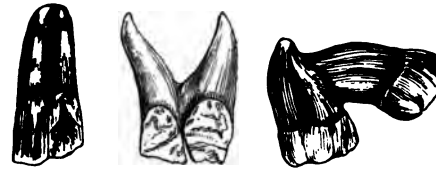


Fig. 22 shows three specimens of gemination. That on the right, from a specimen in our possession, of an upper second and third molar, and in which the union is by cementum only (probably). That in the centre, of an upper lateral incisor and cuspidatus of the left side; and that on the left hand, of an upper lateral and cuspidatus of the right side, as seen from behind, copied from preparations in the museum of the Odontological Society.

third molars, these often having from four to six slender roots; lower molars, the first especially, having three fangs, upper bicuspids the same number, and lower cuspidati two.

The greatest departures in form from the normal types

appear in those irregular masses of dentinal tissue termed odontomes. They are doubtless the result of some hypertrophic conditions affecting the tooth-germ; and M. Broca, who has somewhat deeply investigated the matter, has divided them into four classes, according to the periods at which the hypertrophy has occurred during the development of the tooth. Thus, should it occur during the earliest periods of development, and before any of the true structures, out of which enamel or dentine are formed, have made their appearance, the mass will resemble a capsulated, or almost capsulated, fibro-plastic tumour, which may be shelled out, as in the case of a similar tumour in other parts, the uterus for example. Whether it is correct to assume that all such tumours occurring in the jaws are of dental origin, is certainly open to discussion. The foregoing constitute Broca's first class, viz.—*odontomes embryoplastiques.*

The second class, *odontomes odontoplastiques*, are presumed to be due to the same condition of hypertrophy occurring after the development of the special formative elements of the dentine and enamel—the odontoblastic layer or membrana eboris, and the columnar cells, otherwise termed the internal epithelium of the enamel organ. In the course of the abnormal development these structures become more or less distended over the irregular surface of the growth, and, when calcification has taken place, a large, hard mass of tooth structures, most confusedly mixed up together, results, bearing little resemblance to a human tooth. The chief bulk of the growth will be found, as would be presumed, to consist of secondary dentine. In the classes which we have described, the tumours appear at times to be representatives of one, and at others of more than one, tooth; in the two following classes they apparently are always the representative of one tooth; but in all, we believe, they originate in the teeth of the permanent series.

The third class, *odontomes coronaires*,[1] are presumed to be due to hypertrophy arising after some calcification of the

[1] 'Warty teeth,' Salter.

enamel and dentine, and when such portions are incapable of distension, which distension consequently takes place at parts as yet not calcified. In these, certain portions of the tooth, especially its coronal ones, bear their normal appearance, or nearly so. This class is by far the most frequently met with of any, especially if we include, as some have done, those malformed teeth, usually supernumerary, which appear as if a flattened tooth-pulp had been folded upon itself, and often, previously to a section being made, appearing like a tooth developed within a tooth. We think, that if these should be classed at all as odontomes, they belong rather to Broca's second class than to the third.

In the fourth class, *odontomes radiculaires*,[1] are comprised those rare cases where hypertrophy has arisen after the calcification of the crown of the tooth. Here the components will be dentine and cementum, or the latter only: the mass may be of very considerable size, and be readily mistaken for an immense exostosis.

Teeth may also occasionally be found with small nodules of enamel on the portions of their surfaces otherwise covered with cementum, or there may be distinct cusps covered with enamel, which project above the gum and may readily be mistaken for distinct and supernumerary teeth, the error only being discovered when their removal is attempted; the main portion of the tooth from which they spring being seen to move with them. With our more accurate knowledge of the development of teeth, the occurrence of these nodules and offshoots is more readily explained.

3. Irregularity as regards number. We have spoken of supernumerary teeth in the last section: they may be found in considerable number, even to four or five in the same mouth, and upon almost all portions of the alveolar and palatal processes of the maxillæ: we recently saw one, discovered lying horizontally between the articulations of the latter processes, the crown pointing backwards. They are more common in the upper than in

[1] 'Hernia of the fang,' Salter.

the lower jaw, and, when in the latter, are generally met with in the neighbourhood of the third molars. Whilst all excess above the ordinary number must be regarded as supernumerary, we may also class as such, irrespective of the proper number present, additional teeth occurring in positions where they

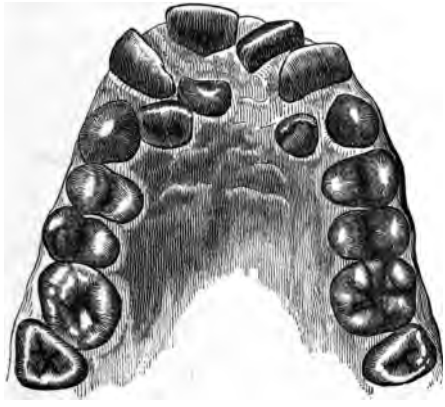


Fig. 23 shows supernumerary teeth in the upper jaw of a youth. Copied from a cast in our possession.

Fig. 24 shows a supernumerary bicuspid of the upper jaw, right side.

partake of the same type as their neighbours: thus, we should regard as supernumerary a third well-formed bicuspid, or a fourth molar, though its presence might cause no actual excess in the proper number.

Deficiency in number is by no means unusual, and we may venture to express the opinion that it is more common now than formerly. The teeth most commonly absent are the lateral incisors of the upper jaw, and, when one of these is wanting, that present often assumes, as before noticed, the small pointed form characteristic of a supernumerary tooth. Next in order of deficiency we would reckon the lateral incisors of the lower jaw, and following these the second bicuspids of the same. The second bicuspids of the lower jaw are often impacted between the first bicuspids and first molars, and therefore may be present without showing themselves at all, or until later in

life, when they present an appearance usually internal to the dental arch. We might perhaps have placed earlier in the list the third molars, but the evidence of their absence is in many cases rendered difficult by the fact that the first permanent molar is often regarded as a temporary tooth when it is removed at an early age, and the space so afforded being quite occupied by the second molar, the third is not uncommonly regarded as the

Fig. 25 shows an upper jaw in which the lateral incisors have not been erupted.

second. Still they are sometimes erupted at so late a period in life that they may be present when not suspected.[1]

Another form of excess in number is where a third set of teeth is supposed to have been erupted. Although every case we have investigated, and they have been numerous, has turned out to be the eruption of retarded or missing teeth, of true supernumerary teeth, or of portions of fractured roots of teeth which become in time carried to the surface in the manner described

[1] In a communication recently made by Professor Flower to the Odontological Society, *vide* vol. xii. p. 32, that high authority classes the third molars as the teeth that are most frequently absent in man.

at page 25, yet cases have been narrated by authorities whose accuracy and candour must compel us to accept the fact that a third set of teeth is a possibility.

4. Irregularity in position. To the dental surgeon this division of the subject is by far the most important and interesting. It is moreover one which often largely taxes both his ingenuity and his patience; sometimes to be attended by the disappointment of failure; but, when successful, bringing the reward of almost unspeakable satisfaction, for to restore to symmetry and beauty so important a feature as the mouth, when out of harmony with the rest, is certain to ensure for the practitioner the lasting gratitude of the patient and the patient's friends.

To attempt to describe the various forms of irregularity which occur under this head would be almost impossible, but we may, we trust, aid the student by pointing out their most common causes and the general principles on which they may be treated. With this object we shall somewhat arbitrarily divide them into two classes, viz., those which we shall term 1, accidental and avoidable, and those which we shall term 2, congenital and unavoidable.

1. Accidental and avoidable. This form most commonly arises from the persistence of temporary teeth which from some cause have not undergone absorption of their roots commensurate with the advance of the permanent teeth, or from the retention of necrosed roots which do not undergo absorption. The tooth in consequence assumes an abnormal position sometimes anterior or external to the proper dental arch, but more commonly internal to it. To clearly comprehend this portion of our subject, it is necessary that we should understand the relative positions of the permanent and the temporary teeth, about the age when the second dentition commences. If we take the skull of an individual who died at the age of, say, six years, and before any of the temporary teeth have been shed, and pare away the anterior surfaces of the alveolar processes, we shall find the following arrangement and condition of the teeth to prevail. Commencing with the upper jaw, we shall find the

crowns of the permanent central incisors situated on a higher plane than the temporary teeth, with an inclination directed more outwards, forming with the latter an angle of fifteen degrees or thereabouts, and, when they are erupted, placing them in a more prominent and consequently a wider dental arch commensurate with their larger dimensions: they are also situated behind the roots of the temporary central and lateral teeth, which show some slight indication of absorption at this period, and the imperfectly developed extremities of their fangs

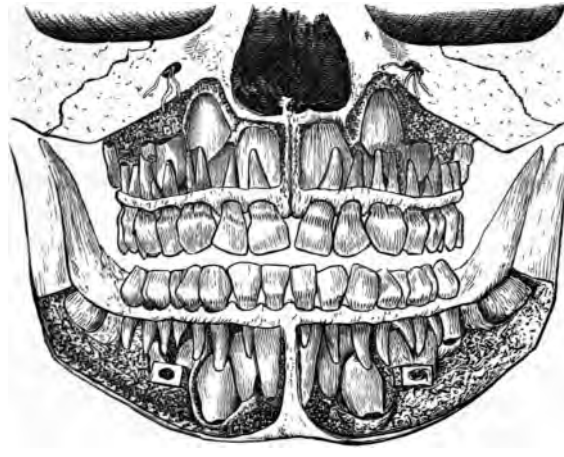


Fig. 26 shows a front view of the upper and lower jaws of a child aged about 6½ years. The external portions of the bones have been removed to show the positions of the developing permanent teeth and their relationship to the fangs of the temporary teeth. The bifurcation in the fangs of the upper cuspidati is abnormal.

abut closely upon the thin osseous floor of the nares, whilst their cutting edges reach to about the middle of the roots of the temporary incisors.

The cuspidati, the crowns of which are but barely developed, are situated on a much higher level than the last-named, viz, about ⅓ of an inch below the floors of the orbits, (hence probably their designation eye-teeth,) and at the sides of the outer walls of the nares, the floor of which is level with the centre of their

crowns. The infra-orbital canals are about $\frac{1}{4}$ in. above and external to their undeveloped extremities. Posterior to these latter in the dental arch, but situated on a lower level and more external, are the first bicuspids, and between these and the central incisors, and on nearly the same plane, are the lateral incisors, placed however internal in the dental arch to the cuspidati and central incisors. The crowns of the first and

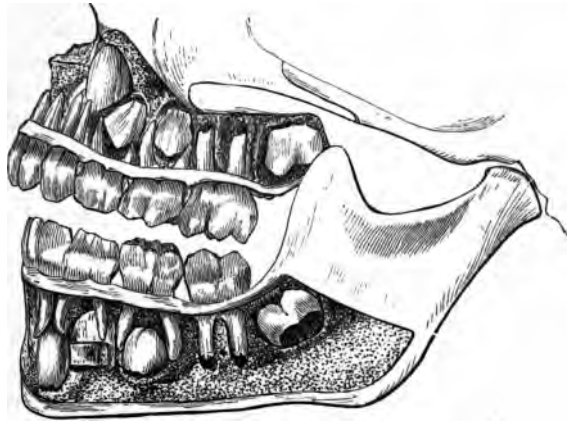


Fig. 27 shows the side view of the preparation figured in Fig. 26.

second bicuspids not fully developed are seen placed directly above and embraced by the fangs of the first and second temporary molars respectively. The first permanent molars, the crowns of which nearly meet their comrades of the lower jaw, and which must have been erupted some weeks, have their fangs about one-half developed, whilst the second molars, or rather the small developed portions of their crowns, hold a position above, and posterior to, the first molars, with their masticating surfaces looking downwards and backwards towards the lower portions of the external pterygoid processes: little crypts on a still higher level in the tuberosities of the bones show the position of the future dentes sapientiæ of the upper jaw.

In the lower jaw, the central permanent incisors, the fangs

of which are about one-fourth developed, occupy a more vertical position, in a narrower circle, than do the corresponding teeth of the upper jaw; and this holds good generally with all the teeth of the lower jaw, but especially the six front ones. They are situated directly behind the partially absorbed roots of the temporary centrals, and partially behind the temporary laterals, their cutting edges having but a very thin layer of bone interposed between them and the surface. The cuspidati occupy a lower plane in the same arch, their developing roots resting upon the thin dense portion of bone which forms the inferior surface of the body of the lower maxilla, the roots of their temporary predecessors being directly in front of them. Between and partially behind the cuspidati and the centrals are the lateral permanent incisors, having directly in front of them the roots of their temporary predecessors.[1] The bicuspids [2] occupy relatively the same position in the lower as they do in the upper jaws; as do likewise the first molars. The second molars have their developing crowns on a higher level than that of the bicuspids, with their masticating surfaces looking upwards and forwards. Small crypts in the coronoid processes denote the position of the future dentes sapientiæ, or third molars of the lower jaw.

From this description of the relative positions occupied by the permanent and temporary teeth prior to the eruption of the former, we readily learn how a persistency in the latter through an unabsorbed root will effect deviation, and the direction which it will cause a permanent tooth to take, when in the process of eruption; thus, persistence in the lower temporary incisors will of necessity, under the above-mentioned conditions, cause these

[1] In a preparation before us, small round holes in the jaws, immediately above the summits of the lateral incisors, show absorption of the roofs of their bony crypts to have taken place in advance of any other of the six front teeth.

[2] The first bicuspids lie immediately internal to the mental foramina, which, remaining but little changed in position during life, constitute, as shown by J. Tomes, valuable fixed points for estimating the various alterations which the inferior maxilla undergoes.

teeth in the permanent series to occupy a position within the dental arch. If it be a temporary lateral tooth or root, the permanent successor must appear behind the permanent central and the temporary cuspidatus, the temporary cuspidati will have the same effect upon the permanent ones, whilst persistence of the roots of the temporary molars will cause the bicuspids to deviate to positions either internal or external to the dental arch.

The treatment of these cases will be evident, viz., removal of the obstructing teeth or roots. In the lower jaw we frequently meet with cases where the permanent incisors are erupted behind the temporary ones; and, by the removal of the

Fig. 28 shows a lower jaw in which the permanent central incisors have been erupted behind the temporary central incisors.

latter, the former are soon brought by the pressure of the tongue into proper position; and, in considering the treatment of irregularities in position, we must ever bear in mind the continual beneficial action of this member, as well as that of the lips, in causing the teeth to assume their normal positions. The former is constantly pressing the lower teeth outwards, until they become arrested by the upper teeth which bite in front of them; whilst the latter, by their elasticity, are continually acting upon the upper teeth in the opposite direction: it therefore happens that by these means great irregularity is reduced to symmetry when simply opposing obstacles are removed.

But it may chance to happen, in the case of the upper jaw, that we are not consulted until the misplaced tooth or teeth have been so far erupted that they are bitten over by the lower

teeth whenever the mouth is shut, resulting, in the case of one or two teeth, in the subjects being partially, and in the case of the six front ones, in their being wholly underhung. It will here be apparent that removal alone of the temporary obstructives will be unavailing: a new and more serious impediment exists, and the case, if left to itself, can only become worse and more disfiguring as time advances. The lower jaw becomes gradually

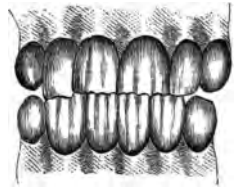


Fig. 29.—Shows the condition termed partially underhung: it will be observed that the four incisors of the lower jaw bite in front of the central incisors of the upper jaw.

drawn forwards, the angles at the union of the body and rami forming more obtuse angles than the natural ones, and the features characteristic of that species of dog in the company of which it was at one time considered disgraceful to be seen. Besides removing the temporary teeth, we must employ means which will obviate the closing of the lower in front of the upper every time that the mouth is shut, and at the same time we may greatly accelerate the process by applying pressure behind the misplaced teeth.

The following, we believe, will be found the simplest and most effective manner of accomplishing our object. We first obtain an accurate model of the mouth, by means of an impression or mould taken in wax, plaster of Paris, gutta-percha, or the compounds known as Stent's and Hind's compositions—we recommend the two latter—and from this a casting is made in plaster of Paris. To describe this more fully, we obtain a metal tray of the size that will roughly adapt itself to that of the upper dental arch of the patient, and be inserted without much stretching of the mouth. Into this tray we put a sufficiency of the Stent's or Hind's composition, which has been

thoroughly softened in almost boiling water, then dried and kneaded in the hands to render it quite consistent; a spirit lamp aiding the latter process, and causing it to attach itself to the tray, which should be filled evenly to the level of its sides. The surface being just rubbed over with a little olive oil, we insert the tray, which we are careful to see is not hot enough to hurt the lips, into the mouth, one side before the other being attended with the least stretching, and then press it with its contents steadily upwards in an almost vertical direction, and high enough to obtain an impression of the surfaces of the teeth above the gum and also of the whole of the hard palate. We allow it to remain in its position for from two to four

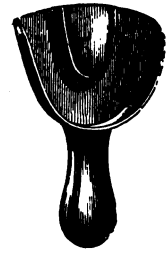


Fig. 30 shows a tray for taking impressions of the upper jaw.

Fig. 31 shows a tray for taking impressions of the lower jaw.

minutes, as the patient can submit, then bring it vertically downwards, feeling for and following the direction in which it comes the most readily; and, when it is below the level of the teeth, remove it from the mouth, and thus we obtain an accurate impression of the portion of the mouth required. Into this impression, when hard, is poured plaster of Paris of fine quality, mixed by carefully adding the plaster to the water, until, when well stirred, it is of the consistence of thick cream. We tap the tray at every addition, in order to allow the plaster to go into all the smallest depressions in the impression, and to get rid of the air-bubbles, and, as the plaster becomes thick enough, we

build up the model to the height of one or two inches in order to give it strength and solidity. After a few hours, and when the plaster has firmly set, it may be held tray-side downwards in a vessel of nearly boiling water until the composition is so softened that it is readily removed from the plaster. The model is, after being trimmed, now transferred to an oven and dried until it almost ceases to steam, when, to render it hard, it is immersed in a vessel of melted stearine, and boiled in it about half a minute, and then removed to dry. We have dwelt upon this process of taking impressions of the mouth, because it is not merely applicable in dental cases, but may also be of use in many ordinary surgical ones. We have found it very useful, when watching the progress of certain tumours, or obtaining

Fig. 32 shows a plate adapted to the upper jaw suitable for raising the bite and pressing out the central incisors when bitten over by the teeth of the lower jaw. Behind each central incisor is shown the dovetail cut into the plate in which the pieces of compressed deal are inserted, and which by swelling, when they become moist, press forward the teeth they are in contact with.

representations of them before removal, or estimating the extent of cleft-palate, *i.e.* whether the case be more suitable for surgical or for mechanical treatment, and in cases where a second opinion at a distance may be sought for without a journey.

The model is now placed in the hands of the mechanical dentist, who constructs a plate of metal,—gold, platina, silver, or dental alloy,— or vulcanite, which last we prefer in ordinary cases. The plate should cap over the bicuspids and such molars as are erupted, and may be made to keep up securely, by our having scraped away the model slightly round, a very little below the necks of the teeth capped, and on their outer surfaces, where consequently the plate grasps them; the thickness of

the plate over these teeth should just prevent the front ones from meeting. Behind each tooth to be pressed out should be sawn a space, of dove-tail form, to be filled up by a piece of soft deal firewood which has been greatly reduced in size by pressure for some hours in a strong vice, the compressed surface of the wood being opposed to the tooth. The plate is introduced into the mouth, to which it should attach itself firmly, and then the compressed wood by absorbing moisture swells, and the upper teeth, having now no obstruction from the lower biting in front of them, are pushed rapidly outwards, often in the space of a week though generally longer, and are carried beyond the lower, so that on removal of the plate they bite in front of them and cannot return to their abnormal position. In the place of the wood a loop of india-rubber, drawn through a small hole in the plate behind the tooth to be pressed out, may be employed; and is perhaps better where patients are unable to pay frequent visits, but under ordinary conditions we prefer the wood. The patient should be instructed to eat with the plate in the mouth, and to remove it only for cleansing, which should be done thoroughly after every meal. In no case do we recommend plates being tied or fastened in, as injury may be done to the teeth in even a few days when they cannot be removed for cleansing. In cases amongst the poor, and where the above-mentioned treatment cannot be resorted to, success is occasionally attained by continually holding a paper knife or thin piece of wood so that it rests in front of a lower tooth, and behind an upper that is bitten over; this method requires great perseverance, and probably succeeds only where the patient sleeps with the mouth open. In a few hospital cases we have, by the aid of a thin elastic rubber band, extended round the head and across the face, where it is padded with wool to prevent uneven pressure, and then carried behind the misplaced tooth, succeeded in drawing it forwards as desired; in this and the last-mentioned treatment thin india-rubber, drawn between some of the posterior teeth on each side, will, by keeping the mouth from closing, much aid the process; but

the irritation thus occasioned cannot be long tolerated. The same retention of the teeth or roots may, when the permanent upper incisors, for instance, are erupted anterior to them, which occasionally occurs, cause the latter to project. When the projection is slight, the pressure of the upper lip will generally, after the removal of the obstruction, bring matters right; but, when it is more prominent, they come to rest upon the lower lip, and thus meet with a continual agency, in the form of an elastic cushion, to further projection. For such cases we may employ a somewhat similar plate to the last, and, by attaching to its palatal surface a small india-rubber ring, draw the prominent teeth backwards into position: the plate must of course be cut away at the backs of such teeth to enable it to do so. It must be borne in mind that teeth so moved have not, as in the underhung cases, a barrier to prevent their return to the abnormal positions—there will be nothing but the elasticity of the lip; the plate must therefore be worn much longer, namely, until the vacancy in the anterior portions of the alveoli caused by the movements of the teeth have become filled up with bony material. In the movement of teeth by mechanical means it is important to bear in mind the fact that the earlier it is attempted after their eruption the more easily it will be effected, as at that time the teeth are not closely surrounded by bone as they become afterwards.

A detained root or tooth may also have the effect of causing an erupting permanent tooth to become twisted on its long axis, so that its inner and outer edges become placed in the antero-posterior direction, and its cutting or masticating edge at right angles to the opposing tooth of the opposite jaw. When this condition has occurred in an upper central or lateral incisor or cuspidatus, it has been recommended that where there is a sufficiency of room the case should be treated by what may be termed immediate torsion, *i.e.* by grasping the tooth near its neck with a pair of forceps, guarded with thin leather or other substance to prevent injury and give firmness, and then steadily but forcibly rotating it into position. Against such practice when first advocated we urged a protest, on the ground

of injury likely to occur to vessels and nerves upon which the vitality of a tooth depends, and the results of that operation which have come under our notice have verified our predictions. We recently had to remove a necrosed upper right lateral tooth

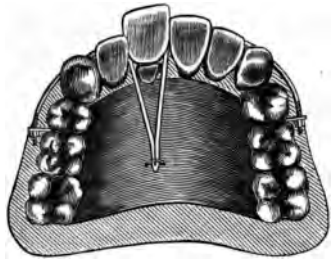


Fig. 33 shows a plate adapted for drawing inwards front teeth of the upper jaw. The right central incisor has been erupted anterior to its temporary predecessor, the root of which is figured, and which should of course be extracted prior to treatment, which will consist either in drawing the central incisor back by an elastic india-rubber band or by a band of platinum, which passes in front of the tooth and which by means of nuts and screws at the side of the plate can be gradually tightened by turning the nuts. The latter arrangement is best suited in the case of having to act on several teeth at once.

which had been thus rotated; yet the eminence of the operator was a guarantee that the operation had been most carefully performed. The tooth had never come down to the proper length, and was very dark in colour; when it was removed, it was

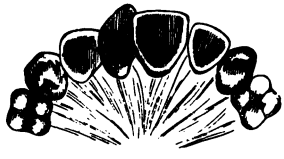


Fig. 34 shows a right central incisor of the upper jaw erupted at an angle to the dental arch from want of space.

found that the fang was, more than half of it, absorbed. Such cases, then, we should recommend to be treated by means of a plate, so constructed that pressure may be applied at each edge of the offender, and in this way it will be mediately rotated in its socket with perfect safety. We have thus rotated a central incisor tooth nearly two thirds of a complete circle.

Another cause of irregularity of the permanent teeth in position, is stated to be the habit of thumb and tongue sucking. It is probably, in such cases, due to some peculiarity in the manner in which the habit is practised; for we may have, as in the family of the writer, a member who was subject to a considerable projection of both temporary and permanent upper incisors, yet who never had the habit; whilst the next in age, a most inveterate thumb-sucker, has the most perfectly formed arch of a large family. On the other hand, we have under observation a child about five years of age, who invariably sucks the right thumb, and in whom not only the front teeth, but the alveolus of that side, are abnormally prominent. The treatment, of course, will be the prevention of the habit, and the wearing of a coarse worsted glove will generally effect the object; if not, the continual application of aloes to the favourite thumb will probably do so. The treatment of irregularities which are the result of tumours will of course consist in attention to the latter.

Irregularity in position of the teeth the result of fracture of the jaw, although coming more under the province of the general than that of the dental surgeon, may however in the majority

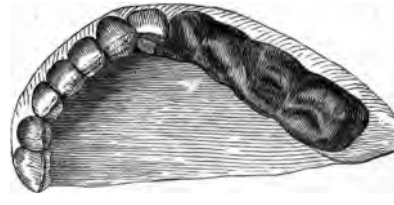


Fig. 35 shows a case of fracture of the lower jaw, transversely through the body, treated by means of a metallic cap which fits tightly over teeth on each side of the fracture and thus holds the fragments in firm apposition.

of cases be treated most successfully by the means and appliances which are best known to the latter, and especially in cases where many of the teeth are not wanting. To put up a fracture of the lower jaw, where much distortion exists, with a well-adapted gutta-percha splint, moulded to the chin, and

retained by a four-tailed bandage, appears to us about as good a means for perpetuating a deformity as would be the application of a plaster of Paris bandage to an unreduced fracture in a limb. A simple form of treament of a fracture in either jaw

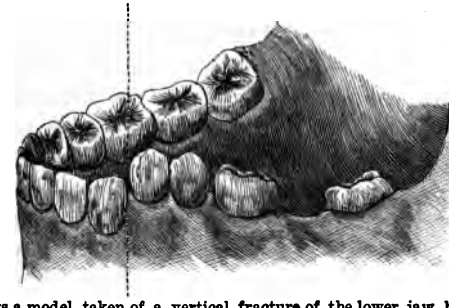


Fig. 36 shows a model taken of a vertical fracture of the lower jaw between the left cuspidatus and first bicuspid teeth. The dotted line, which indicates the fracture, is the line to be sawn through in order to bring the model into the normal position of the jaw.

will consist in constructing a plate of metal that will cap and securely hold several of the teeth on both sides of the injury. To effect this, wax or plaster impressions are taken of both jaws, the fractured one in its abnormal position; from these plaster

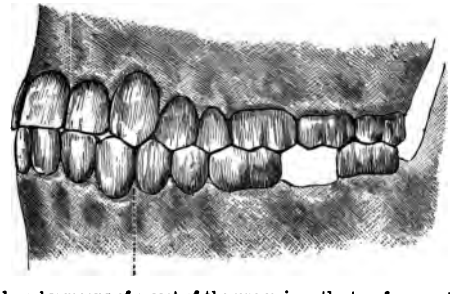


Fig. 37 shows how by means of a cast of the upper jaw, the two fragments of Fig. 36 can be placed in precisely the normal position of the lower jaw before the fracture occurred.

models are obtained, and that representing the injured jaw sawn through in the line of the fracture. The two divided portions are now fitted by the crowns of the teeth to their corresponding places with the crowns of the teeth in the model

of the uninjured jaw, and the relative positions of both—the bite or articulation—as they existed before the injury are thus obtained, and the divided portions are again united by plaster. To the model representing the fractured jaw a metal or vulcanite plate is constructed, capping three, four, or more teeth on both sides of the injury as the case may admit. To obtain a good hold, the plate may be lined with gutta-percha, which, at the time of its application, is made warm and retained until cold; or small screws may, as adopted by Barrett, pass through the sides of the plate and between the teeth at their necks. If however a little care be taken in the construction of a metal plate, so that it fits accurately and firmly at the necks of the teeth, the gutta-percha or screws may be dispensed with. Small holes are sometimes drilled in the plates, to admit of syringing and the egress of discharge, but in a plate that merely caps the teeth these will not be required. A double interdental

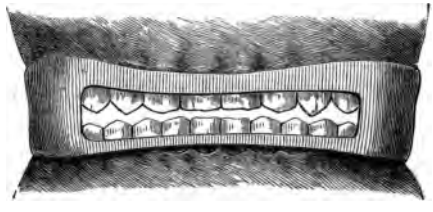


Fig. 38 shows the interdental splint of Gunning for fractures of either jaw, and in which the sound jaw assists in retaining in position the fragments of the fractured one.

splint has been devised by Gunning, and is especially adapted to cases in which more than one vertical fracture through the body of the bone exists. It is best constructed of vulcanite, and consists of an interdental splint for each jaw, constructed in one piece. By it, the two jaws act upon each other, the sound one assisting in holding the injured one in position. The jaws are kept a short distance apart, and an opening between the two splints in the front of the mouth admits of the introduction of fluid food without movement of the jaws. The plates may be retained by the screws, but with adults this is not as a rule

necessary, as a bandage round the head will keep the two jaws together.

But of all appliances devised to this end, and especially for fractures of the lower jaw, the splint of Hammond certainly, in our opinion, appears the most efficacious. It consists of a stout piece of iron wire, bent so as to include the whole dental arch on both sides of it, and soldered at its terminations. When applied to the dental arch, it should just rest upon the gum on

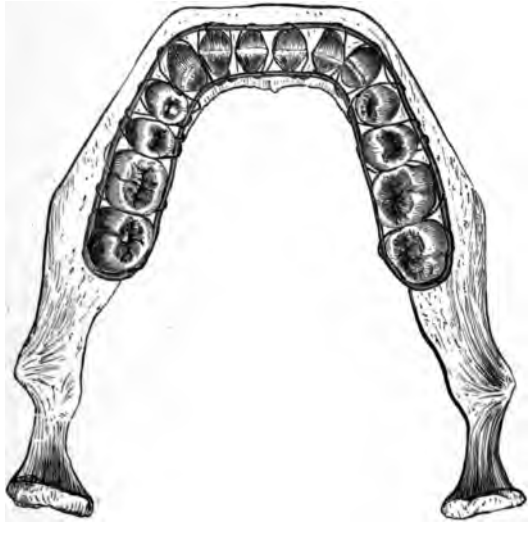


Fig. 39 shows the Hammond splint *in situ*. The illustration speaks for itself.

either side at the level of the necks of the teeth. When so placed, it is firmly secured to the jaw by passing fine silver or iron binding wire between the teeth at their necks, and attaching it to, and twisting it tightly upon, its inner and outer portions. It is a somewhat tedious and unpleasant process, but such labour is well repaid when, as in a case recently treated at St. Bartholomew's Hospital by our esteemed colleague I. Lyons, the patient within half an hour of its application had

eaten a mutton chop and smoked a pipe with much satisfaction. In the case of edentulous jaws, vulcanite splints may be adapted, but even if lined with soft rubber, a material about as hard as leather, their pressure on the soft mucous membrane can be but ill tolerated, and especially when in the lower jaw they are secured to the chin, by connecting the splint with a gutta-percha cap fitted over the latter.

CHAPTER IV.

IRREGULARITIES IN THE PERMANENT TEETH (*continued*).

II. CONGENITAL AND UNAVOIDABLE.—The irregularities which we have classed under this head are the result of an undue relationship between the teeth and the maxillæ, *i.e.* where the latter are developed in excess as regards the former, and *vice versâ*. The former alternative, by far the less common in the present day, may result in the teeth having abnormal interspaces, and most commonly between the two central incisors of the upper jaw; or, as is not unfrequently the case, a bicuspid may have been erupted so that its lateral surfaces become placed in the reverse position, viz., externally and internally. That, however, which is certainly more common in the present day is where the reverse of the above prevails, and the maxillæ, especially their alveolar portions, are not developed commensurately with the teeth. That such condition prevails to a greater extent now than some generations since, and is apparently on the increase, is, we believe, the unvarying opinion of practitioners who have had the opportunity of having under observation the mouths of three and often four generations of the same families; and such opinions are confirmed by the comparison of old skulls with those of persons of the present age. The examination of some 200 skulls in the crypt of the church at Hythe, when measured from the anterior fang of one first upper molar near its neck to the same portion of the corresponding tooth upon the opposite side of the jaw, gave—greatest width, $2\frac{5}{8}$ inches; least width, $2\frac{1}{8}$ inches; average width, $2\frac{1}{2}$

inches: which, compared with the average in recent skulls, gives an excess in favour of the former, whilst the teeth appeared to be about the same average size formerly as now: 'In no single instance was there anything seen approaching to that which under the term "contracted arch" so commonly exists in the present day; they all presented an architecture characteristic of the church that contained them; the Gothic architecture of a more refined period in them also had not as yet

Fig. 40 shows a well-developed upper jaw in a youth aged about twelve years.

made its appearance.'[1] But what was still more conspicuous in these old skulls was the inclination outwards of the teeth and alveolar processes, of especially the upper jaw, which gave a more prominent and consequently more capacious dental arch; so much so that in many the third molars occupied the position which we now see occupied by the first molars.

There can be no doubt but that the chief cause for this departure is that assigned by Darwin[2] and Wallace, viz. those altered conditions in the food of man, with the less necessity for exercising his teeth and jaws, in an age of advanced

[1] 'Remarks upon the Collection of Skulls in the Crypt of Hythe Church, Kent,' by Samuel Cartwright and A. Coleman, *Trans. Odont. Soc.* vol. iv. p. 221, old series.

[2] *The Descent of Man*, by C. Darwin.

civilisation. Together with this explanation must also be considered the effect of a sexual selection or breeding-in,[1] which tends perpetually to continue, and further develop, an approved type.

One of the characteristics of this type will be a more vertical development of the teeth and alveolar processes, as well as a greater prominence of forehead and chin, so that a straight line would fall nearly parallel with forehead, base of nose, lips, and chin; whereas in an opposite type, such for instance as is seen in the native of Australia, a line drawn parallel with forehead, base of nose, and upper lip would form an angle with one parallel with lower lip and chin: in the former arrangement a much smaller dental arch exists than in the latter. As mankind become more refined in their perceptions, the forms most indicative of refinement attract chiefly their admiration; and thus those the most abounding in such characteristics are the most likely to marry, and those the most deficient in them the least likely to do so. In other states of society we see the reverse of this picture: the savage who possesses the greatest physical strength (which is usually met with in a form most wanting in those characteristics of which we have just spoken), becomes usually a chief among his people, and receives the greatest marks of favour from the females of his tribe; and, where polygamy exists, numbers more wives than does he whose tendencies to refinement render him an object of contempt, and doubtless exclude him from female association. Thus the savage races preserve for ages the characteristics of their class with far less deviation from them than do those in civilised communities; there being some limits to physical strength and barbarism, there being none to intellectual and moral progress, save in perfection.

Whatever may be the causes of a less perfect development of the maxillæ, and especially of a more vertical position in the teeth and alveoli, the result must be obvious, supposing the

[1] 'Reflections on the Cause and Treatment of some Forms of Irregularity,' by S. Cartwright, *Trans. Odont. Soc.* vol. iv. p. 114, old series.

teeth to be normal in regard to size; viz., the dental arch must be irregular, and the most common form which such irregularity

Fig. 41 shows an imperfectly developed upper jaw with irregular dental arch. The lateral incisors are bitten over by the lower cuspidati.

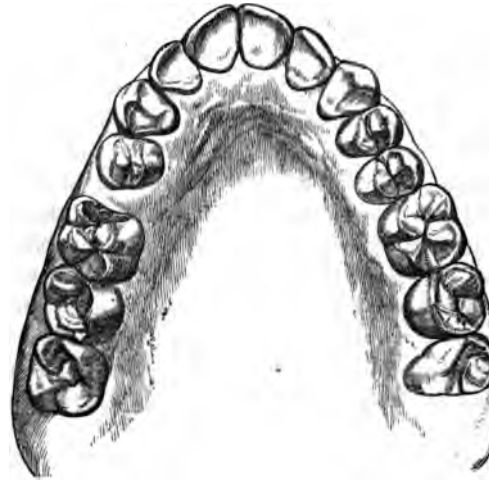


Fig. 42 shows an imperfectly developed upper jaw, and where the dental arch assumes the V-shaped form.

will assume will be what our acquaintance with the positions of the permanent teeth just prior to eruption would indicate;

thus, the central incisors and cuspidati will be unduly prominent in the dental arch, whilst the lateral incisors will be within the dental arch, and, in the upper jaw, most probably bitten over by the inferior cuspidati. In another variety of this form of irregularity we have the teeth fairly in line, but the incisors, especially of the upper jaw, are forced out, often overlapping at the mesial line, and giving to the arch a V-like form.[1] We have regarded this type as caused by the eruption of the cuspidati before the bicuspids, so that they assume earlier a position in the arch at the expense of the incisors, which are driven forwards, although it may of course result as a consequence of the position in which the front teeth are originally developed.

To such form of irregularity two methods of treatment present themselves by which the teeth and maxillæ may be brought into harmonious relationship, viz. an expansion of the alveolar and dental arches, or a diminution in the number of teeth. The first naturally commends itself as rational and conservative, especially where the teeth appear sound, and should be attempted where there is not excessive crowding, and particularly where one dental arch may be perfectly developed whilst the other is narrow and contracted, and the more so should the ill-developed arch be the upper. The process of treatment will consist, in the upper jaw, of constructing a plate adapted to the palate and internal surfaces of the teeth; a removal of a small quantity of the plaster from the model at the necks of the teeth and between each will generally insure the firm attachment of the plate, and then, by means of the wedges previously described, the dental arch may be in a few weeks expanded. As the tendency to return to the abnormal condition will be considerable, a plate should be made, adapted

[1] A praiseworthy attempt has recently been made to classify the various forms of normal and abnormal maxillæ that are met with in the present day, by J. Okley Coles, *Trans. Odont. Soc.* vol. xii. p. 103. The subject, however, requires much careful consideration before any classification of so intricate a subject can be adopted.

to the perfected arch, in order to retain the teeth for several months in their altered position. The same process in the lower jaw is much more difficult to carry out, and generally not nearly so successful in its results; fortunately the teeth in the lower jaw are less seen than in the upper, and therefore its treatment by expansion is seldom attempted, unless to improve mastication by a more perfect antagonism of the two dental

Fig. 43 shows an imperfectly and ill-developed upper jaw, and is a case suitable for treatment by expansion of the dental arch. C. S. Tomes has pointed out how this form of irregularity may be explained. Thus if the cornua of the fœtal upper jaw are not in the first instance divergent, the subsequently added portions which support the three permanent molar teeth will form an angle in the bicuspid region with that previously existing. The matter is interesting from another point of view, viz. in regard to idiocy. Langden Down has pointed out that in regard to congenital idiots there is almost always a diminution of space between the bicuspids, with abnormally high vaulting of the palate.

arches. If attempted, the process will be best effected by a metallic plate, made to cap the teeth and capable of being expanded by a spring.

A more elegant but less rapid process for expanding the upper dental arch than that suggested above consists in constructing a plate as described,—although it will generally be found necessary to cap the teeth in this case,—dividing it into two halves in the line of articulation of the palate, and then

vulcanising into each a portion of a spring constructed of pianoforte wire, of the form shown in Fig. 44B.[1] The objection to

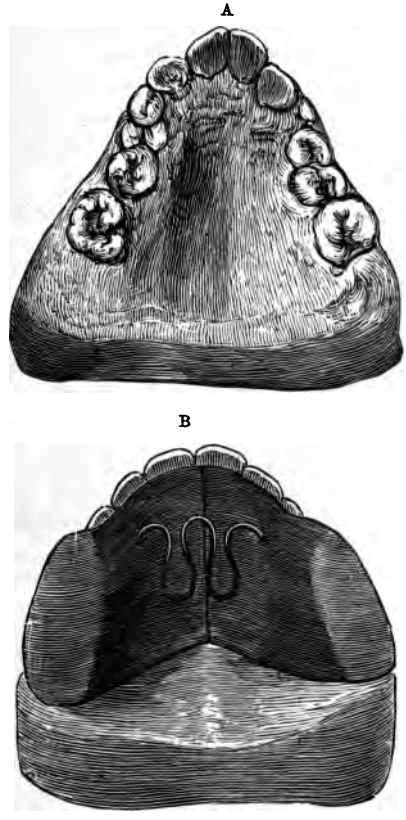


Fig. 44, A and B, shows a contracted dental arch and Coffin's method for expanding the same by means of a divided plate and spring formed of pianoforte wire, the back teeth being capped.

the constant breakage of the spring from rusting may be greatly overcome by inserting in the vulcanite a very small piece of

[1] For this ingenious device, we believe, we are indebted to Coffin of London, and the latter suggestion is due, we are informed, to Kingsley of New York. J. S. Turner tins his steel springs.

zinc in contact with the wire. The dilatation of the dental arch by this apparatus, though less rapid than by wedging, is one requiring far less constant attention on the part of the practitioner, and the most suitable for patients who reside at a distance from him. In the place of the wire spring the jack-screw may be employed. It is vulcanised into a plate of similar construction to that just described, or it may be used without any plate at all, viz. by attaching its extremities against the palatal surfaces of two opposite teeth. By inserting a small pin into the central portion and turning it in one direction the jack becomes elongated, and thus the teeth are pressed

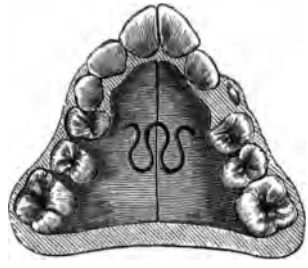


Fig. 45 shows the expansion of a V-shaped arch by means of Coffin's plate. The back teeth not capped.

Fig. 46 shows the jack-screw, three sizes.

outwards in the dental arch. There is probably no appliance to equal it in the rapidity with which it effects its object, and it is readily under control of the patient or the patient's guardians. But in the treatment of these cases our attention must not be exclusively restricted to the condition of the dental arches; these may be brought into the most perfect symmetry, and yet the result may be anything but gratifying; and this is a matter which, we think, has not received its due share of attention at the hands of the dental practitioner. Our views on the subject can perhaps be best explained by narrating the history of a very instructive case. About the period when the writer entered upon practice, a great deal was written and said on the unjustifiable procedure of removing sound teeth for the purpose

of regulating the dental arch, and expansion of the arch to effect that purpose was stated to be, under almost every condition, the correct and legitimate treatment. Adopting the views of his seniors, the writer had the opportunity of putting them into practice in the case of a young lady of prepossessing appearance, much marred, however, by the irregularity of her teeth, which presented the type first described; thus, as shown in Fig. 41, the upper centrals and cuspidati were unduly prominent, whilst the lateral incisors were bitten over by the cuspidati of the lower jaw. In consequence of this arrangement,

Fig. 47 represents Fig. 41 after treatment by expansion.

the chin appeared elongated and unduly prominent, partially underhung. The result of the treatment was an undoubted improvement, the upper front teeth were brought into perfect regularity, the face shortened, and the chin no longer prominent. In a dental point of view the result might have been considered perfect, but not so in a facial point of view, as the mouth had been rendered unduly large in proportion to the other features, giving somewhat of a plebeian aspect. After a year or two, the lower first molars became carious and were removed, as were also the two upper first bicuspids: the effect was, that the dental arches became reduced in size, and the mouth assumed harmony with respect to the other features. Such, then, will

be found, in a large number of cases of irregularity by crowding, to be the proper treatment, viz., lessening the number of teeth, which, it has already been stated, are in the present day so often found in excess of development in relation to the maxillæ, even when the latter are not out of proportion to the other bones of the cranium. In other points of view, this latter has great advantage over the former plan, inasmuch as the teeth are less pressed upon by their neighbours, whereby a very fruitful cause of decay is removed; and also from the consideration that plates are less frequently needed, or, if required, are seldom necessary for so long a period.

But, if we decide to treat a case of irregularity in position by the removal of teeth, the important questions arise, at what age is it best attempted, and what teeth shall be selected?

With regard to the age, much must be left to the discretion of the practitioner, and no hard and fast rule can be laid down; at the same time, we express our conviction that in many cases the practice of removing teeth is adopted much too soon, probably from a disposition to lean to the wishes and persuasions of anxious parents; and the result is, that the spaces thus created fill up too soon from the *vis a tergo* of the developing molars, which latter, in finding abnormal room in their eruption, fail to effect that full development in the posterior portions of the maxillæ which is so dependent upon their presence in the normal situations. We well remember the case of a youth whose age did not exceed fourteen, but who had had the four bicuspids removed from the upper jaw, as well as several teeth from the lower, to afford space. In the upper jaw the first molars were pressing against the cuspidati which were still unduly prominent, and the general expression of the individual was quite ruined by the absence of proper development in the region of the mouth. In another case, of which we give an illustration (Fig. 49), in the lower jaw on the left side one, and on the right side both, of the bicuspids had been removed at an early age, and the spaces had quite closed up, but a defective development of the angle between the ramus and the ascending portion of the jaw had

resulted, so that the front teeth did not meet when the mouth was closed.

Other things concurring, we believe the best period for lessening the occupants of the dental arch will be when the

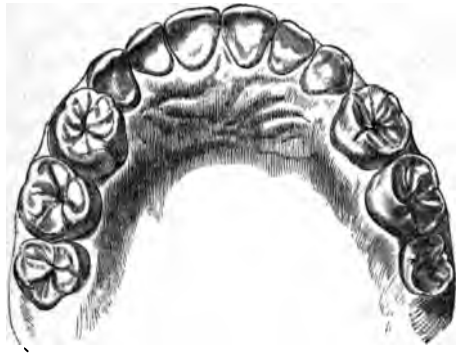


Fig. 48 shows the result of an early removal of all the bicuspids in the upper jaw.

individual has just erupted the second molars; and later still if it be decided to remove the first molars, and apply mechanical

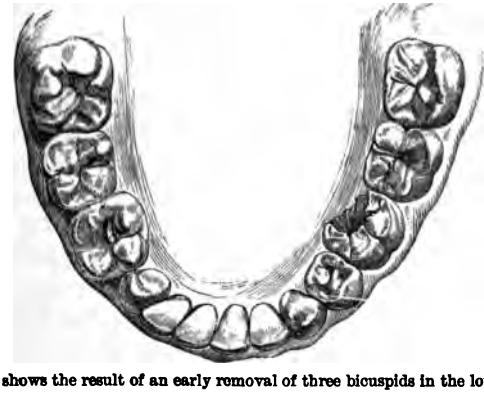


Fig. 49 shows the result of an early removal of three bicuspids in the lower jaw.

means for devoting the space which they occupy to the benefit of the anterior of the arch, as the second molars will be necessary as points of traction.

With regard to the teeth which ought to be removed, it is even more difficult to lay down any fixed rules, except, of course, that we should, if it can possibly effect our object, take by preference teeth of abnormal form, or teeth so affected by disease that there is no certain prospect of their being permanently saved; and, indeed, in not attempting removal too soon, we may often have ground for satisfaction in finding that disease has set in, in members which it was not our intention to sacrifice. On the other hand, a very early manifestation of disease would no doubt lead us to prompter treatment. Supposing that all the teeth appear sound, and there is no urgent reason for our selecting certain teeth in preference to others, we may be satisfactorily guided to our selection by a consideration of the comparative liability of the teeth to disease, and information on this subject has been provided for us by J. Tomes, whose valuable table we copy.[1]

Central incisors	25
Lateral „	62
Canines	36
First bicuspids	227
Second bicuspids	393
First molars	1090
Second molars	575
Third molars	230

Other practitioners have collected somewhat similar statistics, which in the main agree with that given, and the information gathered therefrom would lead us to sacrifice a first molar in preference to any other tooth, provided that in so doing our object could be equally well accomplished, and in like manner a second in preference to a first bicuspid. Cuspidati we should be very loth to remove on the ground also of their being characteristic teeth in the dental arch.

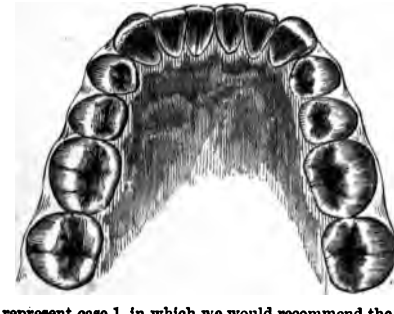
The only way in which we can pretend to aid the student in this matter is, by taking a few typical cases, and the manner

[1] 'Analysis of 2,638 cases of extraction on account of caries,' by J. Tomes, F.R.S., *Lectures on Dental Surgery and Anatomy.*

in which we should treat them. In case 1 (Figs. 50, 51), where both jaws are generally over-crowded, our best course would no doubt be to remove the four first molars. In case 2 (Figs. 52, 53), where the lower arch, though rather imperfectly developed, contains the teeth in a fairly even position, but the upper arch is

Fig. 50.

Fig. 51.



Figs. 50 and 51 represent case 1, in which we would recommend the removal of the first molars from each jaw.

V-shaped, and the front teeth are unduly prominent, but not resting on the lower lip when the mouth is closed, we should remove the upper first bicuspids only, and the action of the lips would probably bring the projecting teeth into good position. Should the incisors rest upon the lower lip, we must in addition

make use of the plate shown in Fig. 33, p. 51, for drawing them backwards. In case 3 (Figs. 56, 57), we should in the upper jaw remove the second bicuspids, which we should always select in preference to the first, when any suspicion may exist that the space made may not wholly fill up, as well as from their greater

Fig. 52.

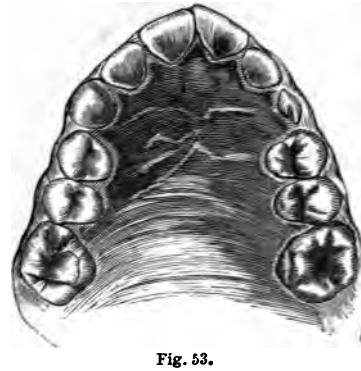


Fig. 53.

Figs. 52 and 53 represent case 2, in which we would recommend the removal of the first bicuspids of the upper jaw only.

liability to caries: we should also adapt a plate to press out the lateral incisors bitten over by the lower cuspidati, and probably also to draw back the upper cuspidati: in the lower jaw we should remove the right lateral incisor. In case 4 (Fig. 45, p. 64), where we have not only prominent incisors resting upon the lip when the mouth is closed, but also a considerable

narrowing of the dental arch at its sides, causing the bicuspids and first molars to close more or less within the lower dental arch, we should, the lower arch being well-developed, expand the upper by pressing out the bicuspids and first molars, and,

Fig. 54.

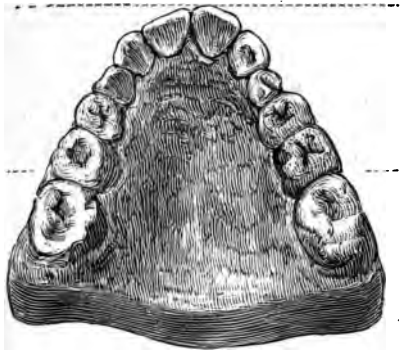
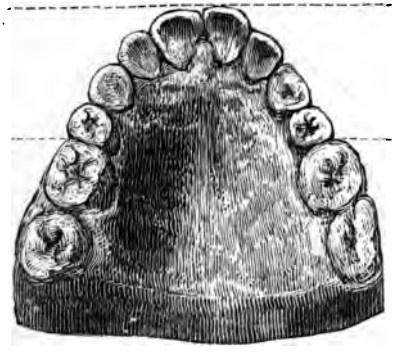


Fig. 55.



Figs. 54 and 55 represent, though very imperfectly, case 2 before and after treatment. The dotted lines show the distance the front teeth have been drawn backwards In 56 the second permanent molars have been erupted.

when this is accomplished, draw backwards the front teeth. The cases which we have taken as illustrations could each of them no doubt be satisfactorily treated in the manner suggested, as many almost similar ones daily are, but there are many com-

plications which arise, rendering the treatment much more difficult and tedious, and sometimes wholly defeating our efforts, and a few of which we may point out: thus, in the case of a patient's being underhung, we may without difficulty press out the upper front teeth beyond the cutting edges of the lower,

Fig. 56.

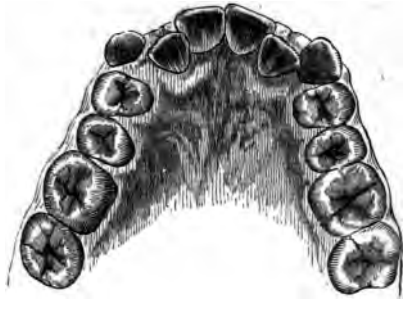


Fig. 57.

Figs. 56 and 57 represent case 3, in which we would recommend the removal of the two second bicuspids from the upper, and the right lateral incisor from the lower jaw.

but yet the shortness of the former may, after the discontinuance of the plate, allow of their return to their old position, and the same thing may occur from the back teeth meeting too soon. In the first case little can be done beyond wearing a plate adapted to the palate only for a long time in order to try and retain the teeth in proper position, and trust that they may

drop somewhat after a time when not bitten upon: in the second case we have often found the chin-retractor (Fig. 9, p. 20), which elevates it as well, of great service, it being of course most applicable in very young subjects. We know how the constant tension of a contracting cicatrix in the neck of a young person will distort the growing inferior maxilla, and on the same principle an effect in the contrary direction may be produced. But perhaps the greatest obstacle to success exists in the circumstance, that the very means which we employ for overcoming one evil is productive of another not less serious in character, and that the constant wearing of plates is a most fertile source of the production of caries. Much may be done by the patient no doubt to prevent this; thus, the plate, which should never be so attached but that the patient can remove it, should be scrupulously cleansed with soap and precipitated chalk after every meal, as well as the teeth themselves, and the plate and mouth finally rinsed in a weak solution of spirit and water. In one very obstinate case we were tempted to secure in the mouth a plate, having the soft deal wedges before spoken of, by ligatures for about ten days, when it was seen that the enamel had become defective on all the teeth in contact with the wedges; an immediate discontinuance of the plate, and the application of salvolatile to the spots six times in the day, happily arrested all further mischief, at least so far as it was possible to determine. The same thing has occurred where a platina band went in front of the upper incisors, but which the salvolatile treatment appeared also perfectly to arrest. We now generally recommend, that, after thorough cleansing of the plate, all bands should be wiped over with that compound. The mischief is no doubt due to the decomposition of the food which lodges in such places.

A question of no little importance is whether, by the timely removal of temporary teeth in contracted arches, more space may be afforded for their successors. It is a subject to which we have long both given and called attention,[1] having had reason

[1] *Vide Trans. Odont. Soc.*, old series, vol. iv. p. 227.

to believe that thousands, perhaps millions, of unhappy children have submitted to operations about as necessary as we now regard those of bleeding and gum-lancing as practised some half-century ago. To take very common cases, in the lower jaw for instance: when that bone is well developed, we shall observe that, as the period of the second dentition approaches, the temporary teeth, especially the six front ones, become more prominent in the dental arch, and also separated, laterally, from each other, so that, as each drops out, room is afforded for its successor (see Fig. 28, p. 44). In imperfectly developed maxillæ such prominence and separation do not occur,

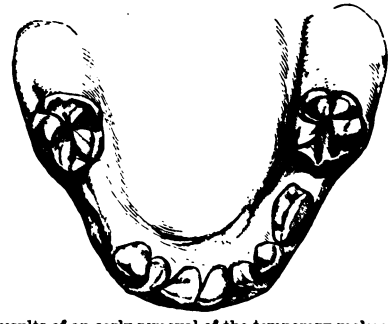


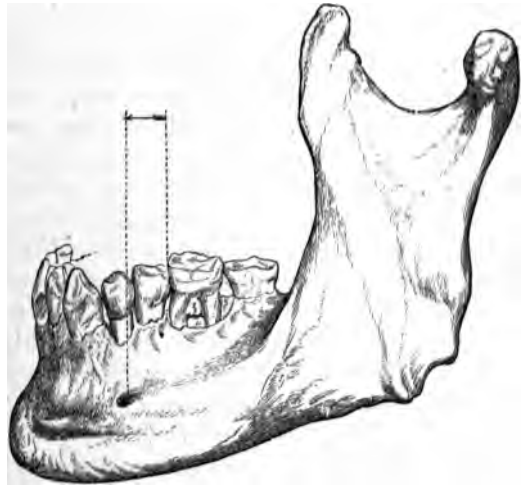
Fig. 58 shows the results of an early removal of the temporary molars in an ill-developed lower jaw; the first permanent molars having advanced into an abnormal position.

so that when the first incisor is erupted, it will appear behind its predecessor and partially behind the lateral incisor of that side: in like manner the permanent lateral incisor will appear behind the temporary and cuspidatus teeth. The treatment was, and is unhappily still, very commonly adopted of removing all interfering temporary teeth, *to afford the permanent ones room in the dental arch.* It did not occur, we think, to those who thus acted, that the limits of the dental arch are almost entirely determined before such treatment commences; that there are fixed points to its limits in the two already erupted permanent molars, which, especially in crowded arches, are ever ready to usurp any room afforded to them in

an anterior direction, as shown in Fig. 58 (p. 74), where an early removal of the two second temporary molars is followed

Fig. 59.

Fig. 60.



Figs. 59 and 60 show when compared the usual advance of the first permanent molars after the shedding of the temporary molars; and that no room is afforded to the teeth anterior to the first molars by the difference in size between the temporary molars and the bicuspids.

by an eruption of the two first permanent ones in abnormally advanced positions. The same advance is always met with in

normally developed jaws: the two temporary molars occupy a larger space in the dental arch than do their successors, the two bicuspids, but, as soon as the former are shed, the excess of space is usurped by the advance of the permanent molar; a fact which has been generally overlooked, as it has been stated that such space is accorded to accommodate the permanent cuspidati. Figs. 59 and 60, drawn from normal preparations, clearly illustrate this point.

In well-developed maxillæ the early removal of the temporary teeth will have little effect upon the permanent dental arch. Cases, where all have been removed before the eruption of one permanent tooth, are taken to illustrate this point, but it is certainly very different in the case of a defective maxilla. Thus, as in the following cut (Fig. 61) of a case which we treated unfortunately in this way very many years ago, where the incisors and cuspidati of the first series were removed to accommodate the four incisors of the second series, and where everything looked very satisfactory up to the eruption of the cuspidati, when two bicuspids had to be removed, and a plate worn to accommodate the cuspidati. It would have been far better for the case, and much more agreeable to the patient, had we done nothing further than remove, if necessary, any temporary teeth whose successors had appeared, when, as in the illustration (Fig. 62), one incisor would eventually have assumed a position anterior or posterior to the dental arch, and its removal alone would have effected all that could be desired. It must be distinctly borne in mind that these remarks apply solely to the treatment of the lower jaw, and to the rule that we would lay down,—if it be safe to lay down any rule at all in the treatment of irregularities in position,—viz., simply to remove each temporary tooth as its permanent successor appears; and this indeed not as a matter of great urgency, the tongue always pressing forward the teeth into any space available for them. In the upper jaw this rule cannot apply, as it would often occur that teeth would be kept within the arch, and bitten over by those of the lower jaw. The temporary teeth must be

removed which prevent the permanent ones from assuming their right position; also the difference in size of the upper incisor teeth with regard to each other would, as a rule, forbid our re-

Fig. 61 shows the result of the common treatment of removing the temporary incisors and cuspidati to give room for the permanent incisors. The incisors appear to be in good position, but no room is left for the permanent cuspidati.

moving one of these to afford space, and we therefore generally select bicuspids or molars.

Fig. 62 shows the treatment of removing from the lower jaw the temporary teeth only as their successors appear. Here the removal of the right lower central incisor will be the only treatment necessary.

We willingly confess to the imperfect manner in which the

important subject contained in this chapter has been treated; but to have done it more justice would have involved a larger space in the volume than we can afford to allot to it. The student desirous of investigating it more deeply may with advantage consult the excellent work of Norman Kingsley on Oral Deformities.[1]

[1] *A Treatise on Oral Deformities as a branch of Mechanical Surgery*, by Norman W. Kingsley, D.D.S. &c. H. K. Lewis, London, 1880.

CHAPTER V.

INJURIES TO THE TEETH.

CONCUSSION.—From violence caused by a blow or fall, or where the lower jaw has been driven forcibly against the upper, one or more of the teeth may suffer. If slight, it may merely result in tenderness and discomfort for a few days; if more severe, it may result in the death of a tooth, under which circumstance the tooth after a time usually assumes a pale fawn colour, due to extravasation of the vessels of the pulp, and consequent staining of the dentine by the hæmato-globuline of the blood: with this exception the tooth often continues for years [1] otherwise quite unimpaired, but occasionally a small gum-boil forms over the apex of its root. Or again, a tooth so injured may never become quite firm, and is usually lost at an earlier period than the rest. For such cases, rest for the organ, so far as it can be obtained by soft food, and soothing fomentations within the mouth, of which camomile and poppy are the best, will be the only treatment.

DISLOCATION, PARTIAL.—The same cause may result in a tooth being loosened in, and partially detached from, its socket, in which case the alveolus is usually more or less injured, the periosteum lacerated, and the vessels and nerves, which enter

[1] It was our opinion until recently that recovery of its proper colour in a tooth that had once lost it, in consequence of a blow, was impossible; but a case came under our observation in which there was undoubted evidence to the contrary, the brown tint was gradually disappearing from the cutting edge of an upper central incisor towards its neck. In such case we apprehend that extravasation of blood had occurred but not death of the pulp, and that the blood was being absorbed.

at the radical extremity of the tooth, generally severed. In such cases the mouth should be washed with tepid water until bleeding has ceased, and the tooth or teeth pressed carefully between the finger and thumb, and steadily but forcibly back into their proper positions, whilst the same members of the other hand should simultaneously reduce any displaced portions of alveolus. The above-mentioned applications for concussion may be employed, but great tenderness may be often relieved by the application of one or two leeches to the neighbouring part.

DISLOCATION, COMPLETE. — Should this result of violence occur, the mouth should be washed until bleeding has ceased, when the alveolus is cleared of coagula by cotton, and afterwards by the syringe and tepid water, to insure removal of any particles of cotton, tartar, &c.; and the tooth or teeth, as the case may be, which should be freed from all foreign substances and kept immersed in tepid water during the interval, carefully but firmly replaced in their sockets, and the alveoli, probably more injured than in the former cases, moulded to their sides as before. In almost all the cases now under consideration, the teeth thus treated will, after a day or two, appear elongated in their sockets, and looser than when replanted, but this, the result of effusion, generally passes off in the course of a few days. If the alveolar process has not been much injured, the operation is generally successful, and we should not despair of success even where a tooth has been out of the mouth for several hours. We shall again refer to this subject in the chapter on Replantation and Transplantation.

As the result of violence, an accident almost the reverse of dislocation may occur, viz., where a tooth is driven into and beyond its alveolus. It is more likely to occur to the teeth of the upper than to those of the lower jaw, and in some cases has even effected a perforation of the floor of the nares. The treatment here will be, to bring the tooth down to its proper level by the aid of forceps; and in this case a ligature attached to an adjoining tooth or adjoining teeth, to retain it *in situ*,

may be essential; and there can be no objection to the employment of a ligature, as plenty of space in the alveolus will exist for any exudation to occupy. In the case of ordinary dislocation, as we have described it, we do consider the ligature of the replaced tooth to its neighbours, as generally recommended, objectionable, as it prevents the effusion of lymph into the alveolus, which forms the medium of union between the severed portions of the alveolo-dental membrane.

Fracture of the teeth may be another consequence of violence, and may vary in amount from slight chipping of the enamel to complete division at the neck or elsewhere. Where very slight, it may be attended with no further result than its unsightliness. Should, however, a portion of the dentine be involved, it will be generally very sensitive when touched, and also to heat and cold for some time; but, if fractured so as to expose the pulp, there will be considerable pain on the slightest contact of even soft substances. Fracture may, of course, be complicated with partial or complete dislocation.

Treatment.— In the first simple cases we may, by a judicious employment of the file, often lessen the unsightliness; thus, if the chip be at the cutting edge of an incisor, we may, by rounding it off, and slightly shortening the tooth, render it scarcely conspicuous. When the dentine has been exposed, especially in a young subject, we must wait until the sensitiveness has passed off (which may be accelerated by the application of salvolatile or solution of zinc chloride) before the file can be employed, and we may often with advantage sacrifice a little of the enamel of the contiguous teeth. When, however, the tooth has been much fractured, and especially if the pulp has been exposed, one of two alternatives must be adopted,—either the destruction of the pulp, or the removal of the tooth,—our decision as to which will depend upon the nature of the fracture, the age at which it occurs, the crowding or otherwise of the teeth, and their relative sizes. Should the fracture include more than a small portion below the neck of the tooth, or be accompanied with much injury to the alveolus, we should

without hesitation at once extract. Should it occur in a patient over fifteen years of age whose teeth are not crowded. and should the fracture not extend obliquely below, or much below, the surface of the gum, we should adopt the former plan, the process for which we shall hereafter describe, and supply the patient with an artificial tooth to be attached to the root of the fractured tooth. Should, however, the patient be under fifteen, when the fang of an incisor or cuspidatus is not fully developed, and also when there exists no very marked difference in size between the various front teeth, with especially a tendency to crowding, or, at all events to the teeth not being separated from each other, we shall then do best to extract, as we may feel pretty sure that without, but almost certain that with, mechanical aid, the space will in time be quite filled up. We removed, about two years ago, a large upper central incisor from the mouth of a little girl aged ten, and a year afterwards its fellow: the lateral incisors now meet closely together, and the mouth looks far better than it did at first, as the teeth in question were abnormally developed. They were removed on account of caries.

The uniting of the portions of a fractured fang is so very rare an event that we can hardly ever look for its occurrence; nevertheless, as cases have been recorded, we should at all events be in no great hurry to extract where such event has occurred. The favourable cases would no doubt be in young persons, where, of course, the vitality of the pulp has not been destroyed or the periosteum much injured. The medium of union in such cases appears to be cementum, but the pulp in the region of the fracture had in one case recorded become calcified. Teeth fractured by violence in their fangs may be retained with moderate firmness by the periosteum for some time, but they sooner or later become a source of inconvenience, and the crown portion either has to be removed, or becomes loose and drops out; still we have seen them so retained for several years. Two cases are recorded where a tooth had been fractured by violence, and the crown portion removed, but the

pulp left had been converted into secondary dentine of more than normal dimensions; also another, where the same accident occurred, but where the surface of the retained portion became coated with cementum.[1] The only recorded case of impacted fracture of a tooth is, we believe, one we communicated to the Odontological Society.[2] The case was interesting, inasmuch as the existence of the fracture was not discovered until after the tooth was extracted; it was an upper central incisor, and one practitioner of eminence had even drilled through the crown, and partially removed the contents of and filled the pulp-cavity to relieve periostitis, without perceiving the mischief. It occurred in the person of a youth of fourteen, and was certainly a most favourable case for re-union, as the two fragments were immoveable and kept in accurate position for three years, but the violence of the shock had caused death of the pulp.

Fig. 63 shows a case of impacted fracture in an upper incisor tooth. The two fragments dovetail into each other.

Under the term 'dilaceration' J. Tomes has described a condition supposed to be due to violence, in which the crown of a tooth is found bent at a considerable angle to its fang; a section in such a case will exhibit the dentinal tubules abruptly bent or deviated at such angle. We have ever been inclined to regard such deviation as more dependent upon the ordinary lines of development having become abruptly altered; and this view has been entertained by others:[3] at the same time, a blow or other violence might readily determine an altered course of development, which we can readily comprehend if we adopt the views already given with regard to the growth of bone resulting in the eruption of the teeth; thus, in a tooth, the crown of which is just or nearly developed, any condition that would cause the surrounding growing bone to advance to the surface

[1] *A System of Dental Surgery*, by John Tomes, F.R.S.
[2] *Trans. Odont. Soc.* vol. xi. p. 140.
[3] *The Pathology of the Teeth*, by Carl Wedl.

in an altered direction would naturally alter the relationship of that portion of the tooth to the rest. In a very well marked case of this deformity, a central incisor of the upper jaw, which we handed to J. Tomes, and which, we believe, he has figured in one of his works, there was a distinct history of violence at the period when the crown of such tooth would have been nearly calcified, but the character of the violence rendered it difficult to imagine that its results could have affected one tooth only, or have affected it so as to cause its being so much bent upon its fang.

CHAPTER VI.

DENTAL CARIES.

To the dental practitioner there can be no subject more important or interesting than the disease which bears the above-mentioned designation, for of the cases which come before him some ninety per cent. will most probably be more or less dependent upon its presence or its results. Its interest, too, is enhanced by the fact that it is a disease much more common to civilised than to uncivilised communities, and is undoubtedly, but less happily, like civilisation, greatly on the increase. That such is the case, we accept again the experience of those who have had under observation the mouths of several generations in the same families, as well as avail ourselves of the results of our own practical examination of the skulls of past generations as compared with those of individuals now living.[1] There is, probably, no disease so common to the civilised portion of the human race in the present day as dental caries; so much so, that it is rare to find a mouth in which some manifestation of its ravages is not present, or an individual so fortunate as to have never experienced the pain which commonly accompanies it. Nevertheless, it is remarkable that no one amongst its numerous and talented investigators has yet offered for a disease so common and apparently so favourable for observation an explanation of its causes or nature that has been at all generally accepted by dental practitioners. The most diversified and opposite views have been put forward, and to the speculative here are theories to the heart's content. It will be our duty to

[1] *Trans. Odont. Soc.*, vol. iv. p. 227, old series.

notice the most important of these, but we shall first attempt to dscribe what actually takes place if we watch the disease from its commencement to its termination.

According to our own observations, made when it has commenced in positions favourable for observation, the first manifestation of its existence has been a small whitish opaque spot on the enamel as contrasted with the yellowish and somewhat opalescent appearance of that structure. In its progress

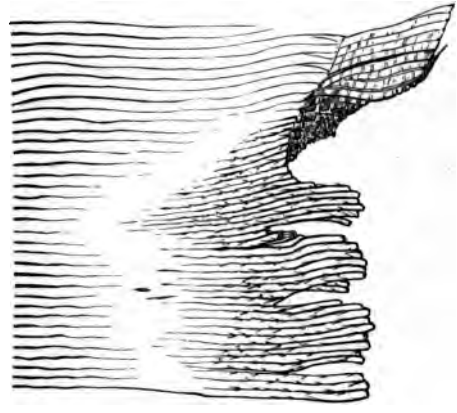


Fig. 64 shows a portion of a tooth affected with caries drawn from a section in our possession. On the upp: r part at the right side will be seen a small portion of enamel involved; the rods appear more distinct than when normal, and also exhibit the transverse markings. In the affected dentine the tubuli appear more distinct, with tendency to separate from each other; the diseased portions are seen dipping down amongst the healthy structure in the direction of the pulp-cavity. That portion situated between the diseased and healthy tissue, and where the markings of the tubuli are less distinct, is the translucent zone of Tomes.

it generally assumes a somewhat darker, light brown, or fawn colour, though this much depends upon the rate of its progress, for, where this is very rapid, a light colour is maintained throughout. Microscopical examination at the earliest stages, which it is difficult to conduct owing to the friable nature of the enamel,[1] shows this structure to possess an orange brown

[1] Dr. Frank Abbott, *Dental Cosmos*, vol. xxi. p. 59, recommends the following method as employed by Dr. Bödecker, viz.:—

A section sawn from a carious tooth perfectly fresh should be

hue in the parts affected, especially in the basis-substance of the enamel rods, which latter have their outlines more distinct than when normal: they also present transverse markings which are seldom seen, or seen distinctly, in the perfect tissue. In the interstices between the enamel rods some investigators [1] have discovered delicate beaded fibres, which may be stained by carmine, whilst on the outer surface appear flat epithelial-like bodies, supposed to be the remnants of Nasmyth's membrane. At the earliest stages, when only the enamel is affected, we find no traces of leptothrix or micrococci, to the presence of which in causing or promoting dental caries some writers have attached much importance. As the disease advances, the subjacent dentine becomes involved, and, it being a much less dense and less homogeneous structure than the enamel, the disorganisation takes place in it more rapidly, the lime-salts disappear, leaving the gelatinous basis-substance much in the same condition as it was when its calcification took place. In some cases, those of so-called chalky decay, it would appear as if the calcified structure broke down at once. In both the enamel and dentine the greatest destruction appears at the outer surfaces, *i.e.* the part first attacked, for dental caries arises from without, not from within, a tooth, and this will give to the parts affected cone-like forms; in the enamel one having its base at the surface whilst its truncated apex is in apposition to the base of that of the dentine, which is a larger and more perfect representation of this figure. In the dentine it pursues its course in the direction of the dentinal tubuli, *i.e.* towards the pulp-cavity into which they open. Microscopical examination at this period [2] shows the enamel more broken up and disorganised than

ground by a corundum wheel under the surface of water, and, when sufficiently thin, immersed in a dilute solution of chromic acid, viz. ½ per cent., for twenty-four hours: it should be then stained in carmine solution and mounted in a mixture of glycerine and water, two parts of the former to one of the latter.

[1] Dr. Frank Abbott, *Dental Cosmos*, vol. xxi. p. 62.

[2] Dr. Frank Abbott, *op. cit.*, recommends the following process:—The carious tooth, or a suitable portion of it, should be immersed for

in the former case, and the subjacent dentine of a yellowish colour, having festoon-shaped boundaries separating it from the healthy structure; whilst, especially in acute cases, portions having the yellow colour are seen dipping down at some distance from the principal centre of the disease towards the pulp-cavity. At the margin of the diseased structure the dentinal tubuli appear less distinct than they do in the perfectly healthy tissue nearer the pulp-cavity: viewed with a low power this portion has a zone-like form, the zone of Tomes, who regarded it as a consolidation of the contents of the tubuli, an

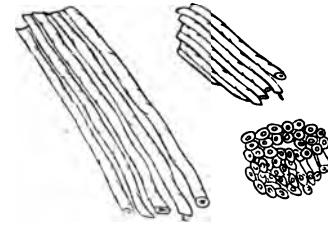


Fig. 65 shows the tobacco-pipe-stem appearance (Tomes): the drawing is made from a specimen of the chalky decay.

effort of nature, in fact, to put a barrier between the healthy and diseased structures: other and later observers have, however, regarded it as a result of diseased action producing an absolute exclusion of air from the tubuli, thus rendering them invisible when viewed by transmitted light, but amongst several living authorities the views of J. Tomes are still adopted. At the more affected portions, *i.e.*, nearer to the surface, we observe the tubular structure of the dentine to be more apparent than in the healthy tissue, and for the reason, doubtless, that the intertubular substance is the first to be attacked, the walls or external portions of the tubuli appearing to possess a greater

two months in a 1 per cent. solution of chromic acid, to which a few drops of dilute hydrochloric acid should be added every other day, the mixture being changed weekly; at the end of the two months the tooth should be embedded in warm paraffine, to which a little bees'-wax has been added, and, when it is cold, sections should be cut off with a razor, stained with carmine, and mounted in the glycerine solution.

power of resistance. When the diseased portion is seen in transverse, or in partially transverse, section, its appearance reminds us of a bundle of tobacco-pipes when broken short off in their stems, as described and figured by J. Tomes.[1] But a section, cut so as to exhibit the results of the disease at various distances from the surface and viewed by a very high power,[2]

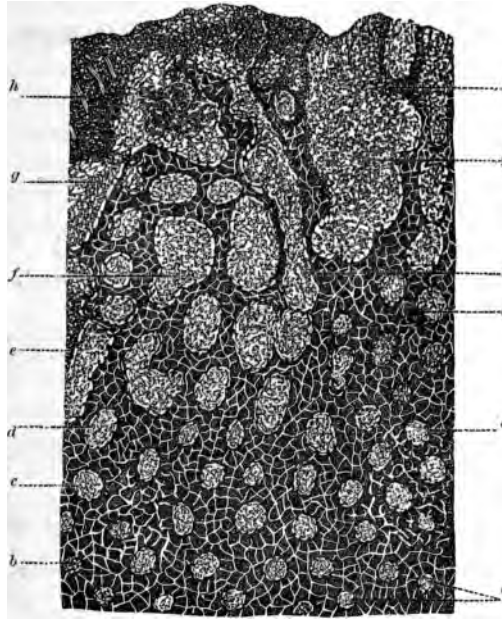


Fig. 66 shows a cross section of carious dentine magnified 1,000 diameters, copied from Dr Frank Abbott's excellent paper in the *Dental Cosmos* (vol. xxi. p. 117); *a*, canaliculi, with radiated offshoots, in the healthy tissue; *b*, the same enlarged by extension of disease and exhibiting granules and threads which take up carmine; *c* and *d*, the same more affected by disease; *e*, canaliculi enlarged to ten or fifteen times their ordinary diameters, and filled with partly-nucleated protoplasm; *f* and *g*, confluence of two or more canaliculi; *h*, basis substance entirely disappeared, and beyond this a disintegrated mass composed probably in great part of micrococci.

shows, at its neighbourhood to the healthy tissue, the canaliculi unaffected; but, as the decayed surface is approached, these are

[1] *System of Dental Surgery*, 2nd edit. p. 296.

[2] Dr. Frank Abbott, *Dental Cosmos*, vol. xxi. p. 116.

enlarged, and filled apparently with granules and threads, which receive the staining of carmine; still nearer to the surface they are enlarged to two or three times their normal diameters, exhibiting within them a network of living matter, and occasionally, where more enlarged, nuclei also. Further outwards they are so extended that several become confluent; as this increases, the basis substance disappears, the outermost layer consisting of a disintegrated mass of tissue mixed up with micrococci and leptothrix.

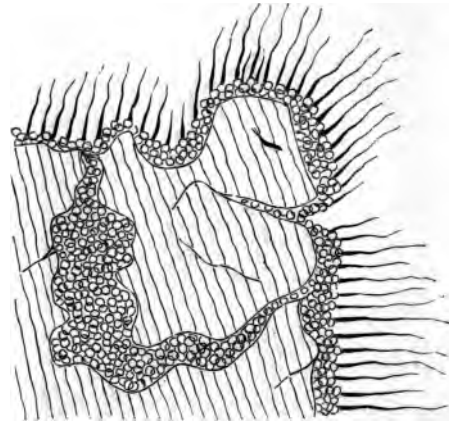


Fig. 67 shows a fragment of dentine covered on its surface, and interstices with leptothrix and micrococci. The drawing must be regarded as diagrammatic rather than accurate.

If a portion of carious dentine be tested with litmus paper, it will be found to possess a strong acid reaction, whilst in a healthy tooth the dentine,—probably the contents of the canaliculi,—yields a decidedly alkaline reaction. The acid reaction of carious dentine we have accounted for by the neutral phosphates of lime which are incorporated with the basis substance becoming converted into the soluble acid phosphate, the hypophosphate of lime.

To revert to our general observation of the process, we next, probably, get the effects of mechanical strain on the

enamel, which is imperfectly supported by the subjacent softened dentine, and breaks down, leaving a more or less exposed cavity. Where the disease has been very rapid and interstitial, *i.e.* occurring between teeth, the breaking of the enamel is often the first intimation to the patient of what has existed, he not unfrequently attributing the fracture to an accident in mastication, and the decay as sequence to and result of the accident: where it has been less rapid, the enamel disintegrates in minute particles. In both cases the progress of the disease becomes more rapid when an actual cavity exists, one at least that can readily retain portions of food, and ere long in the natural order of events the pulp-cavity becomes invaded. Such, however, is not always the case, for it may happen, and this is more likely where the disease advances very slowly, that the pulp becomes calcified—converted, that is, into what has been termed secondary dentine; and, indeed, in almost all cases, even in the most rapid, we shall find that some attempt, the result no doubt of irritation, has been made by the pulp in this direction.

The consequence of exposure of the pulp is usually its inflammation, and, owing to the attendant effusion into a structure surrounded with unyielding walls, the pain set up is generally most acute; in many cases, however, we find the pulp exposed in the progress of caries where pain has never been experienced, except, perhaps, when pressed upon by food, and where we may doubtless rightly infer that severe inflammatory action has never set in. Pain is, however, often felt before the pulp is actually exposed; sometimes in the very earliest stages, and indeed, in a few cases, before any actual manifestation of the disease is discernible, but where, at the spot referred to, the disease after a time makes its appearance. Exposure of the pulp is usually attended with ulceration of its surface, and with such ulceration more or less exudation of serous or sanguino-serous fluid. This has generally been spoken of as suppuration of the pulp; but, although actual pus may occasionally be formed by the pulp, it is very different from the first named

fluid, and contains only a small proportion of the *débris* of the white corpuscles. The crimson surface of an exposed pulp is most comparable to that of the 'irritable ulcer,' and the fluid exuded not dissimilar, except that it decomposes more rapidly, emitting a most offensive cadaverous smell. The reaction of this fluid is alkaline, and it certainly tends to neutralise the acid condition of the dentine at least at the surface, for we have found it acid a short distance below, and thus probably, as has been pointed out, to some extent retards the progress of the disease, whilst the pulp gradually sloughs away more or less rapidly. The pulp being lost, the dentine softens rapidly, the enamel breaking away as its support is withdrawn from it, until the carious surface becomes level, or nearly so, with the surrounding gum, where, from protection of surface by the latter, aided probably by that other protection against decomposition which living substances exert towards organic bodies in their immediate vicinity, the softening of the dentine of the fang or fangs advances much more slowly. Still the residue, gradually carried to the surface by the process which we have described, becomes continually diminished until its hold on the mucous membrane is so slight that it falls away under the friction of the tongue or in mastication. Such, then, is the ordinary career of a carious tooth from its commencement to its end. Many variations in the process occur, but the conditions above described may be considered typical; and now the far more difficult task devolves upon us of attempting to describe briefly, and with justice to the authors, the various theories which have been propounded to account for it.

Hunter, who, amongst modern pathologists, was one of the first to investigate dental diseases, and give to them the prominence which they deserved, denominated this as 'the decay of the teeth arising from rottenness;' but that he implied something different from what we now generally comprehend by slow chemical decomposition of animal or vegetable substances is evident from his statement 'that such decay would appear to deserve the name of mortification;' and still something more,

for 'the simple death of the part would produce but little effect,' and he suspects that during life there is some operation going on which produces a change in the diseased part. When it attacks the bony part of a tooth, it appears first to destroy the earth, as the bony part becomes softer and softer. It begins sometimes in the inside of a tooth, although but rarely: if it always so commenced, it might have been supposed to arise from a deficiency of nourishment from some fault in the vascular system, but, as it most commonly begins externally, where the teeth in their most sound state receive little or no nourishment, it cannot be referred to that cause. It does not arise from external injury or from menstrua, which have a power of dissolving part of a tooth, for such could not act so partially; and it is reasonable to suppose that it is a disease arising originally in the tooth itself, because, when once the shell of the tooth has given way to the cavity, the cavity itself soon becomes diseased in the same way: in a sound tooth broken by accident no such quick decay ensues.

From a perusal of Hunter's work,[1] it can scarcely be gathered that that great man held any very distinct theory or definite views upon the causes and nature of dental caries; although with regard to it, and what is observed during its progress, he writes with a clearness which is a characteristic of all his works.

Fox,[2] who wrote about a quarter of a century later than Hunter, alludes to the disease as 'caries, or, as it is most commonly called, decay,' showing that it had received the former designation,—though by whom we have not been able to ascertain,—since the period in which Hunter's work was published. He states, in opposition to Hunter, that the disease originates from within the tooth, *i.e.*, 'the bony part of the crown of the tooth,' and 'that when it has made some progress internally, a small opaque spot appears on the enamel,' &c.

[1] *The Natural History of the Human Teeth*, by John Hunter.

[2] *The Natural History and Diseases of the Human Teeth*, by Joseph Fox.

'The proximate cause of caries appears to be an inflammation in the bone of the crown of the tooth, which, on account of its peculiar structure, terminates in mortification.' Again, the cause of the mortification in the bone of the tooth is inflammation occurring to the dental pulp, 'occasioned by any excitement that produces irregular action,' and which, 'when inflamed, separates from the bone, and the death of the tooth is the consequence,' in the like manner 'that a caries of other bones is caused by a separation of those membranes which cover them and which are attached to them.'

It is evident, from what is stated above, that Fox attempted to show the similarity of dental caries to that disease in bone, adopting the theories respecting the latter prevalent in his day.

The next writer of eminence is Thomas Bell,[1] whose work appeared about thirty years after the last-named, and whose views do not so very materially differ from his. During the period just mentioned more correct views had come to be entertained in regard to diseases in bone generally, the structure of that tissue being better understood. Bell commences by severe strictures on the name 'caries,' which he considers 'is totally misapplied,' and desires to substitute for it 'gangrene of the teeth,' 'as the disease has not the slightest analogy to true caries in bone.' 'Its proximate cause is inflammation in the bony structure of the tooth, set up by cold or any other cause, and the part which suffers the most severely is unable, from its possessing comparatively but a small degree of vital power, to recover from the effects of the inflammation, and mortification of that part is the consequence.' Roots that have lost their vitality, owing to the destruction of the pulp, 'are no longer the subject of disease, and often continue for years in nearly the same apparent state.'

Robertson, of Birmingham, in a work almost exclusively devoted to this subject, and published in 1835,[2] adopts a wholly

[1] *The Anatomy, Physiology, and Diseases of the Teeth*, by Thomas Bell, F.R.S., &c.

[2] *A Practical Treatise on the Diseases of the Teeth, in which the Origin and Nature of Decay are Explained, &c.*, by William Robertson.

different view from either of the foregoing, believing the disease to be essentially the result of a chemical action upon the teeth. 'The only cause capable of explaining the partial operation and the particular situations of decay is the corrosive or chemical action of the solid particles of food which have been retained and have undergone a process of putrefaction, or fermentation, in the several parts of the teeth best adapted for their reception.'

At the time when Robertson wrote, the true structure of dentine was but little understood; he held that the sole object of the pulp was to supply additional bone to the tooth when worn by mastication; but, if so, why a pulp-cavity at all? Even when the researches of J. Tomes with regard to the contents of the dentinal tubuli had been made known, this writer still held that the office of the pulp or blood-vessels was not to supply nutriment to the bone of the tooth, but for the object above-mentioned;[1] but then he avows himself a disbeliever in the value of microscopic research in throwing light upon either the cause or the nature of dental caries.

John Tomes,[2] whose opinions have generally received the appellation of the Chemico-Vital Theory of Dental Caries, and are a happy combination of the two very opposite views which had been advanced, believes that it 'may be defined as the death and subsequent progressive decomposition of a part or a whole of the tooth;' that with the loss of its vitality the dentine loses also its power of resisting chemical action, and that consequently the dead part is, under favouring circumstances, decomposed by the fluids of the mouth; 'that there must be a concurrence of dead dental tissue and of a condition of the oral fluids capable of decomposing the dead part before the phenomena of caries can be developed;' that in the course of its progress there are distinct evidences of vital action, to wit, the transparent zone, the formation of secondary dentine in the pulp, and the occurrence of pain in a tooth often long before the disease has encroached

[1] *Trans. Odont. Soc.*, vol. i. p. 101.

[2] *A Course of Lectures on Dental Physiology and Surgery*, by John Tomes, 1848.

upon the pulp-cavity. The manner in which the decomposition of the dead dentine is brought about is by the chemical solution of its earthy ingredients, the solvents being probably furnished by the saliva in abnormal conditions, especially when containing excess of acid mucus. It is also suggested in a note that the decomposition of the gelatine may furnish an acid of sufficient strength to rob the contiguous dentine of its lime. The predisposing causes of dental caries have for the most part a structural origin, they are faults in the development of the dental tissues, and especially of the enamel: such are the pits in honeycombed teeth, abnormal depth in the fissures on the masticating surfaces of teeth, imperfections in the enamel fibres themselves, and imperfections in their union with each other, and in the dentine an imperfect calcification of that structure. Fevers, a scrofulous diathesis, salivation, indigestion, a low damp situation, are amongst the general predisposing causes. 'Circumstances which favour the chemical decomposition of the dental tissues may lead also to the loss of vitality which renders them susceptible of decomposition. Thus caries may, no doubt, be excited by the local application of numerous substances, such as the mineral acids, either when incautiously taken in medicine or in sweetmeats, and also by the presence of the gastric acids eructated during a fit of indigestion.'

In a later work[1] than that from which we have quoted the same views are maintained, though more stress is laid upon the influence of acid mucus in the process; but the saliva or even the stomach may supply the necessary acid by which the vitality of the part is destroyed and decomposition succeeds the loss of life.

In the latest work of this author, edited also by his son, C. S. Tomes,[2] the leaning is evidently towards the views of Robertson, which have recently received some confirmation at the hands of Magitot, Leber and Rottenstein, and Wedl, all of

[1] *A System of Dental Surgery*, by John Tomes, F.R.S., 1859.

[2] *A System of Dental Surgery*, by John Tomes, F.R.S., &c., and C. S. Tomes, M.A., 1873.

whom more or less avow that the conditions observed in carious teeth are to be met with in human teeth and hippopotamus ivory which have been employed as artificial substitutes in the mouth. Thus, according to this author, 'there is an overwhelming body of evidence to show that caries—in so far as it is a process of disintegration—has no relation whatever to the connection of the tooth with the living body.' The translucent zone of the earlier works is in this no longer an evidence of a vital action occurring in the progress of the disease, but a result of chemical decomposition of the dentine, as adduced by Wedl and Leber and Rottenstein, but in opposition to Magitot and Salter. Finally, the conclusion is, 'that inasmuch as no characteristic appearances can be found to distinguish caries as occurring in living from that attacking dead teeth, it seems that the hypothesis of vital action in any way modifying the disease must be abandoned *in toto*, and dental caries cannot, strictly speaking, be said to have any 'pathology.'

Bridgman, who was the successful candidate for a prize essay on dental caries,[1] attributes the phenomena witnessed in that disease to purely electrical conditions. He compares the mouth to an electrolytic apparatus, in which the crowns of the teeth represent under ordinary conditions the positive electrodes, whilst their roots, with the cutis, &c., represent the negative electrodes, the saliva of course being the electrolyte. When certain abnormal conditions in the saliva or vascular system exist, then electrical action is set up with such intensity that the positive pole, the crown of a tooth, yields up its lime-salts, which pass to the negative pole represented by the root, where they are at times deposited as tartar. It is impossible in a short statement to do justice to a theory which, although at variance with certain facts as we now know them to exist, is nevertheless maintained by much ingenious argument.

Spence Bate, of Plymouth, attributes dental caries[2] chiefly to

[1] *Trans. Odont. Soc.*, vol. iii. p. 369.

[2] 'The Pathology of Dental Caries,' by C. Spence Bate, F.R.S., *Trans. Odont. Soc.*, vol. iv. p. 40.

the presence of carbonic acid in abnormal positions and in abnormal quantities. A death and decomposition of the membrane covering the enamel will furnish this acid in a nascent state, in which condition it will act readily upon the lime-salts of the subjacent structure, especially if that structure be imperfectly developed. When the disease has reached the dentine, the dentinal tubuli become opened, and empty their contents into the carious cavity, which likewise decomposing furnish further supplies of nascent carbonic acid to continue and augment the process.

Finally, Leber and Rottenstein [1] advocate the view that the disease in question is mainly due to the presence of the leptothrix. As this cryptogamic growth is not met with in the earlier stages of caries, when confined to the enamel only, they apprehend that portion of the process to be due to the solvent action of an acid; but, when the subjacent dentine becomes exposed, then the leptothrix, finding its way into the dentinal canals, effects a rapid disintegration of the dentine.

Of the various opinions advanced, that which most accords with our own views is the so-called chemico-vital theory of J. Tomes, notwithstanding that, as stated in the last edition of his work, the editors have followed the opinions of certain Continental writers, who, judging from the comparison of microscopical preparations obtained from carious teeth, and teeth softened and acted upon by food and oral fluids when attached to artificial dentures, have adopted apparently the purely chemical theory of Robertson. That the conditions prevailing in the progress of dental caries are dissimilar to those which take place in the inflammation of most soft structures, such as hyperæmia, effusion, cell-migration, softening, fatty degeneration, &c. &c., we can readily admit, without denying to the process a pathological character.

The teeth of every person must in the mouth, like every other portion of the body,—the hair, nails, and skin included,—

[1] *Recherches sur la Carie Dentaire*, par Leber et Rottenstein, Paris, 1868.

be continually exposed to conditions, which, but for a prevailing something, would ere long subject them to those changes which all highly complex nitrogenous bodies undergo when removed from its sphere or influence. It is this prevailing something, ceasing or changing with the loss of life in an individual, that immediately permits the existence of those affinities, or no longer opposes their action, which tend to break up into simpler forms the more complex chemical compounds of which an animal or vegetable body consists, and to which consequently we apply the vague term 'vital force,' which, if actually a force, is probably not more distinct from the chemical than the latter is from the electrical, or any of the so-called forces; indeed, it may be only one manifestation of the chemical force. Whilst this exists or remains unchanged, the teeth are, so to speak, protected from conditions, viz., moisture, warmth, action of acids, and bodies themselves undergoing change and decomposition, which would otherwise certainly allow the exercise which those affinities are ever exerting to break up complex organic compounds.

We are prepared to grant that such affinities may when strong overcome that resistance, as well as have their full action when it is weakened, changed, or withdrawn, but this would in our eyes constitute it a pathological process.[1] If we follow its

[1] That the microscopical appearances as exhibited in the decay that occurs in teeth employed as artificial substitutes should closely resemble the same in teeth naturally attached in the mouth is rather what we should look for, and, to our mind, is no evidence that the process is not a pathological one, both having been brought into the same or nearly similar condition by pathological processes; the former by probably the death of the whole individual of whom the tooth formed a part, the latter by the death of the portion of the tooth attacked, the conditions of the subsequent decomposition being almost precisely the same. If we are bound to assert that the loss of vitality in the dentine of a living tooth is a result of inflammatory action, then we must admit that our evidences of its existence are very small; recent research would rather tend to show that it might be so, and, in the case of affected cementum, there is every ground for believing it to be so; but the loss of vitality in a part may occur independently of inflammatory action, and yet, we presume, deserve the appellation of pathological.

course as we have described it, we shall find, as a rule, that the disease continues to be more circumscribed and limited so long as the pulp retains its vitality; with the loss of vitality a much more general softening of the surrounding dentine ensues, which is more comparable to that of natural teeth attached to artificial dentures. Our views, which on the whole differ but little from those of J. Tomes, are, that the disease arises from the action of particles of food, or mucus, or the combination of both, undergoing decomposition in contact with the teeth at parts where, owing to certain conditions, that influence which protects living structures is weakened or absent. The favouring conditions will be imperfection in development, either in the structure itself, or in the form of the teeth, whereby a greater opportunity for the lodgment and retention of food and mucus is afforded. This latter alone, we are prepared to admit, may in time be able to overcome the resisting force where otherwise the development may not be imperfect. To the acids formed in such decomposition of food and mucus has been generally assigned the entire agency in the work; but, whilst admitting the great importance of the part they play, we cannot but believe that another condition is largely concerned in it, viz., that arising from the contact of bodies undergoing molecular change upon bodies in a stable condition. This, though no longer allowed to be the potential agency in fermentation, is still admitted to exist in the case of bodies in a state of putrefaction. Fermentation, in which the leptothrix may play no unimportant part, probably does take place to some extent in the food collected in a carious cavity, and may produce the acids which certainly assist in the process. Experiments which we made some years ago,[1] where carious teeth, from which all softened dentine had been removed, were exposed to the action of different kinds of food contained in loosely covered vessels, and mixed some with water and some with water and saliva, and kept at about 100° F. for twenty days, showed that the

[1] 'On the Nature of Dental Caries.' *Trans. Odont. Soc.*, vol. iii. p. 80.

greatest amount of change was not always in proportion to the greatest amount of acid generated, or even to the character of the acid. Ordinary baker's bread in a solution of water and saliva was the most active, although the solution was far less rich in those acids which are known to decompose most readily the phosphates of lime than was the case in a similar experiment with cane-sugar, water, and saliva. The appearance, too, of the softened dentine in the bread and saliva experiment certainly more closely resembled that obtained from a carious tooth than in any other. In the case of teeth exposed under the same conditions in vessels including meat and water, and meat, water, and saliva, no softening whatever took place, but it must be admitted that the liquids at the end of the experiment were strongly alkaline.

In considering the question before us, we have laid no stress upon the existence of the zone of Tomes as evidencing a vital action in the process, its nature having been disputed by high authorities; but, putting aside this phenomenon, we may certainly see in those cases where very superficial caries has existed and become arrested, as frequently witnessed upon the coronal surfaces of first molars, a hardening, which, as compared with the subjacent structure, can, we think, hardly be explained as wholly the result of friction and polishing. Here we must leave the subject, and with the same remark as when we entered upon it, viz., that no explanation of the causes or nature of dental caries has yet been offered which has been generally acceptable to dental practitioners.

The question may now be considered,—is the disease which we have been describing, and which presents at times different features, one disease, or may we be comprehending in our description more than one? Some authorities incline to the latter view, and divide dental caries into soft and white decay, and hard and dark decay, in which latter condition the structures affected are at times almost black. Most authorities, however, are agreed that the disease is precisely the same, the conditions being varied by the former being rapidly, the latter slowly,

progressive. A variety of caries termed chalky, and met with most frequently in the third molars especially of the upper jaw, would, from the appearance which the affected portion presents, give the idea that its disintegration had not been preceded by a solution and removal of the lime-salts, but that the calcified structure had itself broken down. If we take some of the chalky powder, which upon the finger-nail appears to resemble whitening, and examine it under the microscope, we shall find it to consist of fragments of dentinal tubuli and intertubular substance, see Fig. 65, in which the tobacco-pipe appearance noticed by J. Tomes is very conspicuous: a little hydrochloric acid added to the specimen liberates abundant bubbles of gas.

Another condition is where a loss of substance occurs generally at the necks of the teeth, giving the appearance of a portion of the tooth having been removed by a file, and the place highly polished. This form has been termed 'decay by denudation,' or 'erosion.' It is most commonly seen upon the labial aspects of the teeth, especially the bicuspids, but it also does occur, though less frequently, upon their lingual surfaces, and in other spots inaccessible to the tooth-brush, which proves that it does not arise from the friction of that appliance, as some have supposed: it is also stated to be met with in some of the lower animals. It appears, however, almost perfectly identical in appearance with the wearing away of a tooth at its neck by the friction of a clasp to support a denture; such clasps invariably retain small portions of food, bread-substance especially, so that the rapid loss of substance they occasion is probably something more than friction. It is stated to be more common to the upper than to the lower teeth, and we believe this to be correct. Although most frequently met with at or below the termination of the enamel at the neck of the tooth, it occasionally, *i.e.*, on the assumption

Fig. 68 shows a cuspidatus of the lower jaw worn on its lingual surface by the friction of a plate.

that it is the same affection, attacks the enamel itself. We have cases on record where the two upper central incisors have so suffered, and in persons of undoubtedly good constitutions. In one case, which we had under observation for more than twelve years, the disease had appeared on the labial surface of the enamel, midway between the cutting surface of the tooth and the gum. As it progressed, there was no discoloration, and the surface presented was highly polished, and intensely hard and sensitive. Eventually one of the teeth broke off, the pulp having become dentified in the progress of the disease; the other has remained in much the same condition for a number of years, the patient, a lady, aged now about thirty-five, having most assiduously kept the cavity sealed with white wax, which almost completely hides the deformity. We feel inclined to attribute the condition which we have described to the solvent action of an acid secreted by certain labial and other mucous glands. It is by no means uncommon for dental caries in its ordinary form to appear upon the eroded portions of the necks of teeth, when the difference in the two conditions is very manifest. Cases are recorded where the teeth generally, but especially the six upper front ones, have undergone a general loss of substance above the gum; such loss has been too general to be accounted for in any other way than that they have been attacked by some solvent which has acted upon them generally.

Allusion has been made to the greater frequency of dental caries in the present day than formerly, and we may probably investigate this question more profitably, and with more hope of a satisfactory solution, than the former one, viz., its pathology. One of the chief causes of this degeneracy we believe to be the change, both in character and mode of preparation, which the food of man has undergone during the last few centuries. Take, for instance, his bread; this, as compared with that of the present day, was imperfectly ground and contained a larger proportion of husk of the grain, and, in consequence, a larger proportion of phosphates. Baked into a hard mass, it required

no small amount of force to bite and reduce it to a pulp with the saliva; yet this was readily accomplished by the well-developed jaws and strong teeth of bygone ages. His meat, cooked soon after the death of the animal that provided it, was presented to him in a condition which would sorely tax both teeth and jaws of the present generation: it was not then the custom to hang meat until upon the eve of putrefaction, or render it so soft by culinary art that it can be almost sucked into division, rather than brought to that state by lacerating and pounding. But further than this condition of his food, let us remark his manner of devouring it. The meat was torn from the bone by the grasp of the incisors and cuspidati, whilst in the present day by appliances indispensable in civilised life, the knife and fork,[1] the office of those teeth has become almost a sinecure. Organs or structures not properly exercised undergo, after, it may be, many generations, some form of degeneration, and it is only reasonable to conclude that the teeth and jaws follow that same law; the former unprotected, losing their power of resisting external agencies; the latter protected, appearing in diminished size and incapable of affording capacious dental arches, and hence also results a crowding of the teeth with pressure, which is an acknowledged predisposer to caries. The evidence of the injurious effects of soft food upon the teeth of dogs is strong support of the foregoing conclusion.

Another result arising from too soft a food is the unhealthy condition of the gums. From loss of a natural stimulus they become hyperæmic, soft, and spongy, not only causing, by absorption of the alveoli, premature shedding of the teeth, but secreting an abnormal quantity of acid-forming mucus. To the above must be added all conditions unfavourable to the perfect development and health of the body; the preservation of the weak and feeble, such as in a less civilised state would never attain to manhood, and consequent matrimony with progeny;

[1] Perhaps there was less absurdity, in a bishop in the reign of Queen Elizabeth preaching a sermon against the use of the fork, than has been commonly attributed to him in our time.

the depressing effects due to over-exertion of mental and nervous energies; and the far too great indulgence in the luxuries of the table, especially stimulants,[1] which weaken the digestive organs and vitiate the saliva. The mixing of breed also appears to have an unfavourable influence generally upon the physique of a nation, and especially upon their teeth. The effects of administering medicines, especially acid ones, have by some been considered important factors in producing dental caries. We believe that it has been over-rated; at the same time, the long continuance of acid medicines renders such secretions as the saliva abnormally acid; and the direct contact of such acids as phosphoric, hydrochloric, and nitric may no doubt in time affect the teeth, as they certainly do certain kinds of metallic fillings in them. As sulphuric acid has but a very slight action upon the dental tissues, from the circumstance that an insoluble sulphate of lime is formed as soon as it touches them, it may well be, where possible, substituted for any of the former. The common practice of employing a tube when taking acid medicines is of but small advantage compared with a thorough rinsing of the mouth with a solution of bicarbonate of potash or soda afterwards.

[1] Amongst the various classes of mankind whose teeth we have had the opportunity of inspecting, few have surpassed in beauty those of the *Bedouin* of the Arabian desert; and their much greater freedom from caries, as compared with the Arab of the town, is, by Waller Bey, of Cairo, who is able to speak from large experience, attributed to the former being total abstainers from alcoholic beverages. Their purity of breed, and the very perfect sanitary conditions of their surroundings, must not, however, be left out of the account.

CHAPTER VII.

TREATMENT OF DENTAL CARIES.

THE first consideration with regard to any disease should certainly be, if possible, its anticipation and prevention; and if, in our last chapter, we have at all rightly comprehended the nature of dental caries, or the conditions which favour its existence, we may approach the subject with some confidence of success. First, with regard to food, we can now generally obtain bread made from the whole-meal flour, which, if not quite so palatable at first, becomes to children brought up on it preferable to any other. With regard to meat we can say little. Some attribute the early loss of the teeth to eating too large a proportion of it; but then, if so, surely the Esquimaux ought to suffer considerably, whereas he has probably the finest teeth of any nation under the sun; on the other hand are tribes having excellent teeth who are almost entirely vegetable feeders. For children we would request the indulgence, viz., that during the period of their nurseryhood they be freely supplied with bones on which to exercise their teeth and gums. A child's invariable predilection for a bone to suck and gnaw must be some strong dictate of nature, and the freedom of a bone from all else than bone, after it has been in a child's possession, proves that nature most successfully fulfils her own demands.

We have spoken of the knife and fork, which we believe have much to answer for; or, perhaps, rather the civilisation which has introduced them, and holds them too dear to think of ever giving them up. But the same civilisation has to some extent atoned by the introduction of the tooth-brush, a

thorough employment of which latter will to a great extent counteract the evils of the former, as well as those arising from many other causes. The Chinese are and have long been a civilised nation, and as a rule have excellent teeth; but every house has its family tooth-brush, as well as its comb and its tongue-scraper, and the teeth are scrupulously cleansed after every meal. At the head of his boat, where would in England be seen a short pipe, the Canton boatman fixes his tooth-brush, ready for use after every meal; and in like manner do most Indian tribes of both the new and old worlds who live on soft food carefully cleanse their teeth after eating, with a species of cane root or even hard wood. Thorough brushing after every meal is strongly to be recommended, and, if this were practised, water alone would suffice; still there can be no objection to the occasional employment of a dentifrice, of which none can be better than a mixture of pure soap and precipitate chalk; in some cases an antiseptic may be added, such as finely powdered purified charcoal, but these are generally best used separately, and a pleasant and effective one is Eau de Cologne diluted with water, to which, when the secretions of the mouth appear acid, a little salvolatile may advantageously be added. Cases in which the foregoing recommendations have been scrupulously followed speak for themselves when compared with those where no such care has been exercised, and this especially is the case with children. It is a very common error to argue, that, because animals employ no tooth-brush and yet have excellent teeth, that appliance cannot be necessary. An animal's tooth-brush is its proper food, which, if changed for an improper one, will often result in injury to the teeth.

But we must now direct our attention to cases in which the disease has actually made its appearance, and first we take those cases in which it has either very recently commenced or advanced very slowly and superficially, and for such cases the operation of excision is often the most suitable. In performing this operation it is essential that the surface or part excised shall become free and exposed to the action of the tongue or lips, or, in other

words, so left that food shall no longer be able to lodge or remain in contact with it. The cases the most suitable for excision then are those in which the disease has made its appearance on the approximal surfaces of the upper front teeth, and more towards their posterior than their anterior ones, for there it can be cut away without any observable disfigurement and shelved off into the posterior surface of the tooth, where the movements of the tongue will prevent the lodgment of food. When the disease is quite superficial, and situated on the crowns of molars, bicuspids, or cuspidati, or on the approximal surfaces of the two former at or near to their masticating surfaces, which, when cut out, will leave a V-shaped space between those teeth, excision may also be well employed. The operation will be best performed by first cutting away all overhanging enamel with small highly-tempered chisels, termed enamel-cutters, the force being employed as far as possible in the line of the enamel-fibres, as the structure yields most readily in that direction. To prevent the instrument from slipping and injuring adjacent parts, it should be held near to the cutting edge and governed by the thumb of the hand grasping it, the thumb resting upon that operated on, or an adjoining tooth. Having removed most of the overhanging enamel, the operator will next do well to scrape away with an excavator,—a smaller description of chisel to be presently described,—all softened dentine, as this will afford him a certain knowledge of the depth of the diseased structures, and perhaps lead him to discover that the operation of excision is not suitable for the case before he has advanced too far in it. The softened dentine being removed, the enamel-cutter is again employed until the surface is rendered level, or nearly so, when, with files curved and bent so as to reach otherwise inaccessible places, a perfectly smooth surface is obtained, and may be finally polished by rubbing it with finely powdered pumice and water applied on a pointed piece of wood. The process of filing and polishing can be much more readily and effectually conducted by what is termed the 'dental or burr engine,' a very clever machine, which, worked by the foot like a lathe or sewing-

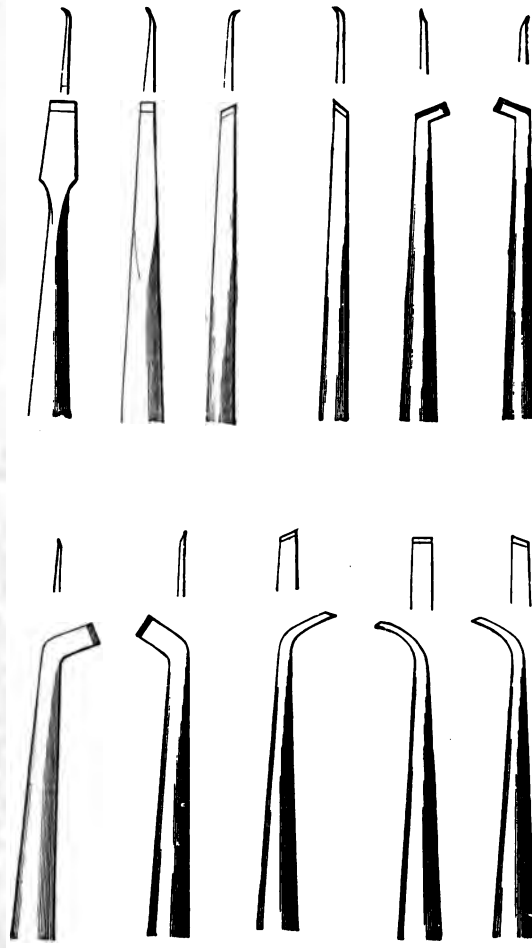


Fig. 69 shows a variety of forms of enamel chisels or cutters. The forms given will, we believe, be found the most useful in practice.

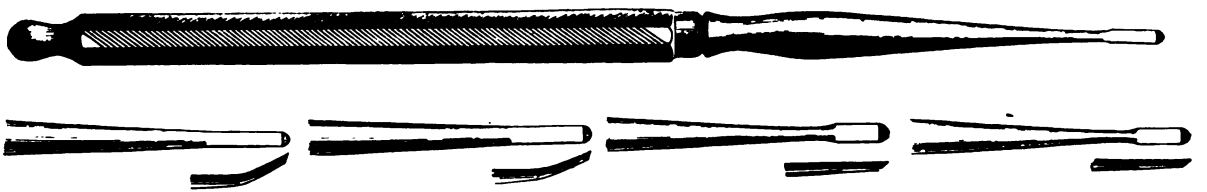


Fig. 70 shows the paraboloid and gouge chisels of Drs. Jack and Forbes, which we have found very serviceable.

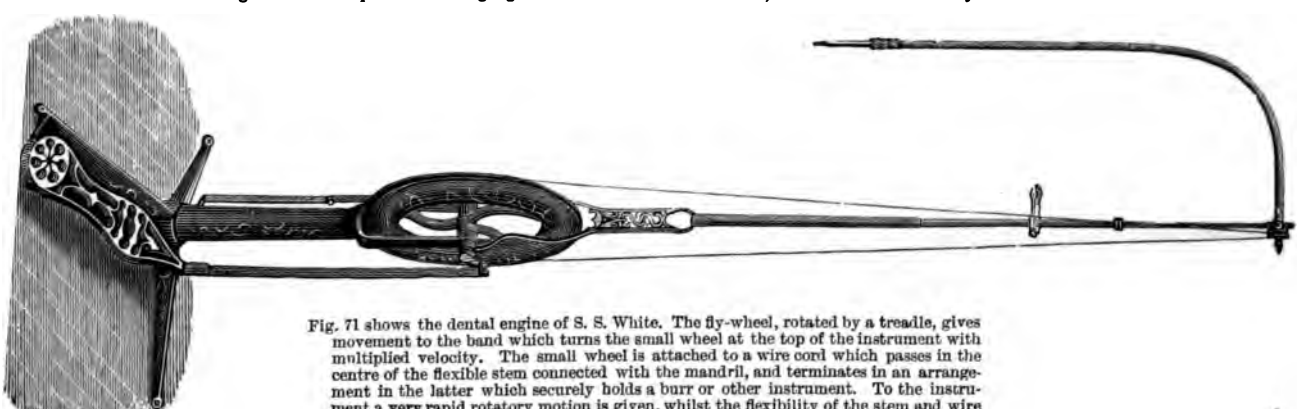


Fig. 71 shows the dental engine of S. S. White. The fly-wheel, rotated by a treadle, gives movement to the band which turns the small wheel at the top of the instrument with multiplied velocity. The small wheel is attached to a wire cord which passes in the centre of the flexible stem connected with the mandril, and terminates in an arrangement in the latter which securely holds a burr or other instrument. To the instrument a very rapid rotatory motion is given, whilst the flexibility of the stem and wire core permit at the same time its movement in almost any direction.

machine, gives to a small file or other instrument,—in this case more particularly a small corundum wheel or point,—a rotary movement continuous with other movements, which allow of application and removal within considerable limits,

Fig. 72 shows corundum points used with the dental engine.

for which valuable invention we were first indebted to our American confrère Morrison. If the conditions be suitable and the operation boldly performed, it will generally prove very successful, especially if the patient be careful to brush or rub such surface frequently. We have seen cases standing well where it had been performed thirty or even forty years previously. We sometimes see the same result naturally accomplished, viz., where much enamel has broken away from a superficial carious surface, or where a tooth removed allows the opportunity for the tongue to keep such surfaces clean and polished. It frequently occurs that the surface treated as above is left very sensitive to hot and cold applications: this will after a time subside of itself, but may be speedily lessened by a frequent application of salvolatile, which, indeed, appears also to harden such surface.

Where, and as more frequently is the case, the disease has made greater progress, or is situated so that, after excision, the tongue cannot get access to the spot, the process of filling stopping, or plugging, as it has been variously called, must be employed. This consists in removing all the diseased or softened portion of the tooth, and substituting for it some other substance capable of fulfilling to the greatest extent the conditions and qualities of the structure lost. Such substance should combine, if possible, the following conditions, viz.:—1, Freedom from liability to cause irritation; 2, Capability of being introduced in a soft state, and then, without change of bulk, becoming hard enough to resist the friction and wear of mastication; 3, Power of resisting to a considerable degree the

action of chemical reagents, or the effects of any such temperature as could be tolerated in the mouth; 4, The qualities of possessing an unchangeable colour, and of resembling the enamel of teeth. Substances possessing several of the above-mentioned qualities are in use for the purpose of filling teeth, but unhappily at present there is not one known which combines them all. Every one of these substances fails in one or more of such qualities, and therefore the operation of filling teeth, probably the most successful of any in surgery when properly performed, must yet be regarded as imperfect. We shall first describe the mode of removing the softened disorganised dentine, and preparing the cavity thus made for receiving one of the above-mentioned substances, and then point out their mode of application, with the various qualifications and disqualifications of each. As previously noticed, we shall generally find that the dentine has suffered to a greater extent than the superimposed enamel, and therefore, to insure the thorough removal of the softer portions of the former, we must sacrifice some of the latter, and this may be most easily and effectually done by a cautious use of the enamel-cutters.

At the first aspect it would no doubt generally appear that the form of cavity most suitable for retaining a foreign substance would be cavernous, *i.e.* having an orifice smaller than

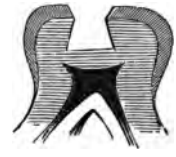


Fig. 73 shows what we may term the typical form of a cavity when prepared for receiving a filling: in the dentine it represents a truncated cone, the base of which is the bottom of the cavity, whilst in the enamel it is bevelled off in the opposite direction.

the cavity itself. In practice it is, however, found that a cylindrical, or nearly cylindrical, form will be the best; the most perfect being slightly conical in the dentine, the base being the bottom of the cavity, and the same in the enamel, but reversed; in fact, two cones meeting towards their truncated

apices. It will, of course, be impossible in many cases to obtain a cavity of such form, but taking it for a type we may always endeavour to obtain some approximation to it. Where the orifice to the softened dentine is small or narrow, we shall best enlarge it by the broach or burr drill, the former a kind of five-cornered drill, the latter a file to be rotated. Sufficient enamel having been removed to allow the use of excavators, if necessary,—for small cavities may be entirely cleared out by the broach or burr drill,—the softened dentine is scooped out until a clear and ringing sound, and sensation of density to the fingers, announce that this portion of the process is completed. The excavators before mentioned are small chisels, or scoops, and may be obtained of suitable sizes, and almost every form conceivable, to reach cavities in obscure places. They should be made of the best steel, tempered high at their points, but low just beyond where the instrument becomes thin, and frequently bent at an angle. Great difference of opinion in regard to their form may be exercised without prejudice; but in our experience those having the cutting extremity resembling a spoon do the work most rapidly and thoroughly, and with less risk of penetrating to dangerous places than those having the ordinary chisel points. It is well for the beginner to endeavour to ascertain at the outset the most useful forms, and those especially adapted for the greatest variety of cases, there being much loss of time and fatigue in having continually to change the instruments. The defective dentine will be soft in proportion to the rapidity of the disease, and generally sensitive in the same ratio. Whilst it is most desirable that all the softened and diseased dentine should be removed, it is yet all-important that the vascular and nervous portions which occupy the central cavity in the tooth should not be injured or exposed; and the student will do well to avail himself of opportunities of splitting into sections extracted teeth, in order to gain a lively recollection of the relative positions of the so-called pulp. After removal of the softened dentine it will often be found that the resulting cavity is too shallow and too saucer-shaped to retain a

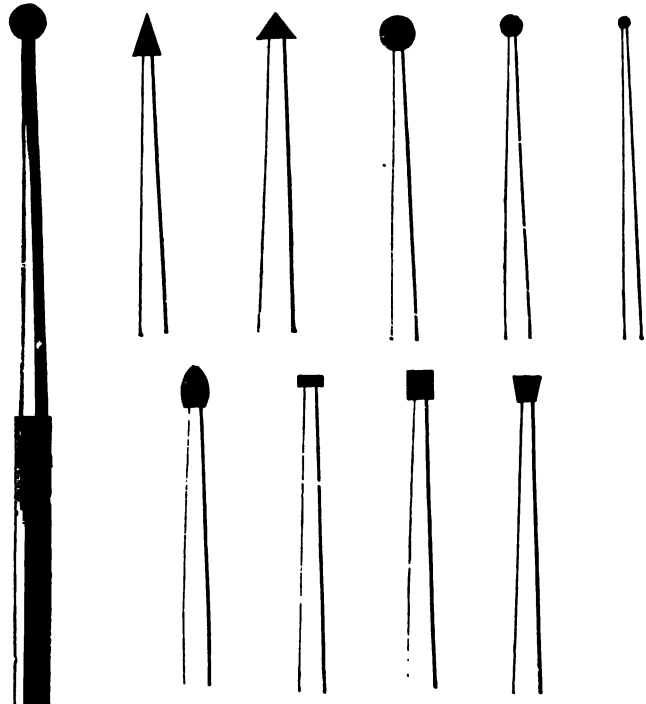


Fig. 74 shows burr and rose drills of various forms.

Fig. 75 shows a thimble for supporting the burr drill; it admits of the rotations being more readily performed, and saves the hand from becoming chafed.

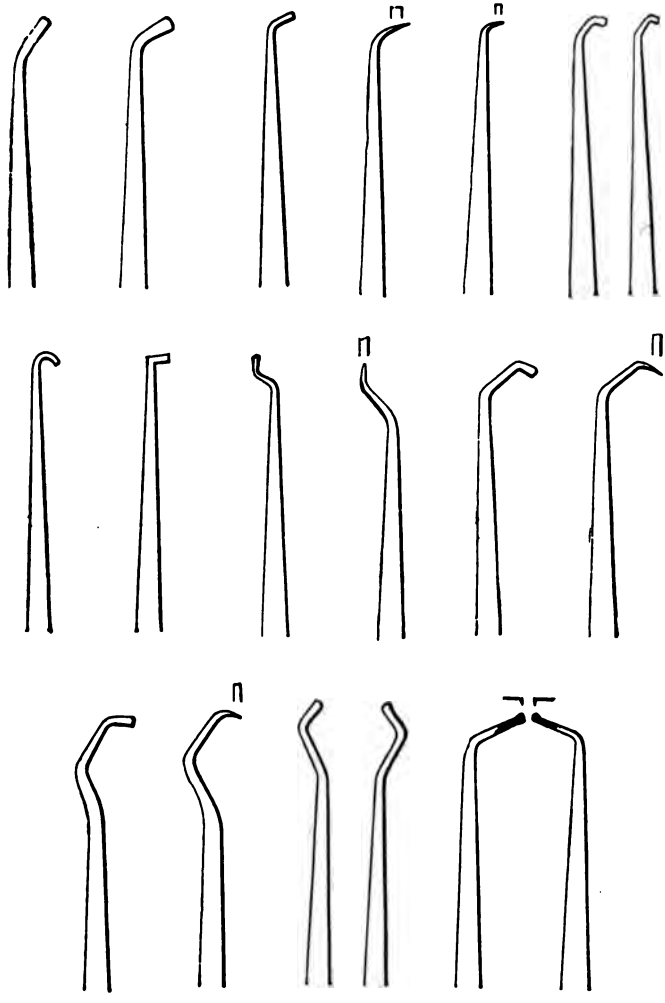


Fig. 76 shows excavators of various forms for removing the diseased dentine and shaping the cavity.

Fig. 78.

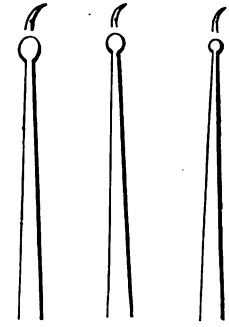


Fig. 77 shows excavators, the cutting portions of which resemble a spoon.

Fig. 79.

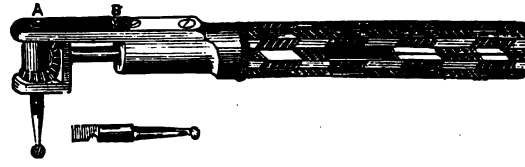


Fig. 80.

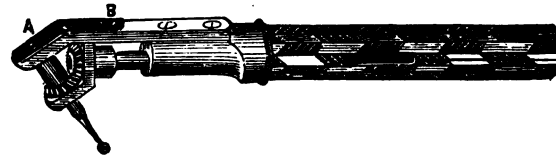
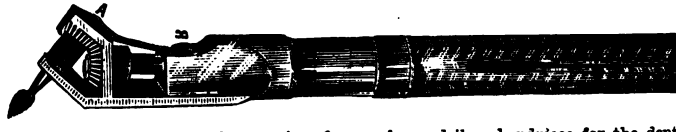


Fig. 81.



Figs. 78, 79, 80, and 81 show various forms of mandril or handpiece for the dental engine, 78 straight, 79 right angle, 80 acute angle, 81 obtuse angle. In Fig. 78 is shown the method for securing the instrument or bit.

filling; under these circumstances some of the healthy structure must be sacrificed. Here excavators of the chisel form will be most effective: they should be made very sharp and applied with a firm and unvibrating stroke to a dried surface, which reduces the amount of pain experienced. When it can be tolerated, the healthy dentine is most readily removed with burrs rotated by the engine, and which can be applied at almost any angle. It is desirable, after removal of the dentine, to render smooth the enamel where cut by enamel-cutters, either by the file or by the corundum point with the engine, and give to it a slightly countersunk form. All particles of tooth or *débris* should now be carefully removed from the cavity by the syringe, either with tepid water or with air; the latter only where the tooth has been kept quite dry during the process of excavation. The

Fig. 82 shows a flexible india-rubber syringe.

small india-rubber syringes (Fig. 82) employed for this are very convenient, as they necessitate the use of but one hand, and when empty refill themselves if the nozzle is placed below the surface of water before relaxation of the pressure which emptied them. The next consideration, and a very important one, if this has not already been done, will be the protection of the cavity from access of moisture during the insertion of the filling. It may be effected by placing folds of blotting-paper or linen cloth, or the folded extremities of a long narrow piece of diaper, the older and softer the better, on the one side between the tooth and the tongue, and on the other between the tooth and the cheek, and retaining the same by the finger and thumb of the left hand; or, if the patient be more than ordinarily intelligent and tractable, by his fore and middle fingers of either hand. A variety of ingenious instruments termed napkin-holders have been devised, but those long accustomed to this method of protection will mostly prefer the cloth or paper under the

Fig. 83 shows the saliva-ejector of C. S. Rogers.

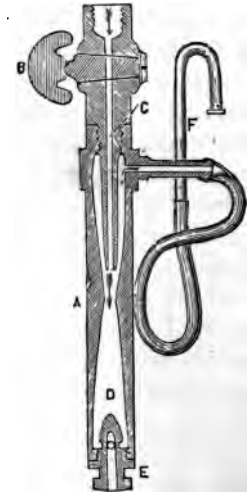


Fig. 84 shows in section Fisk's ejector, and the principle upon which the sucking action is obtained.

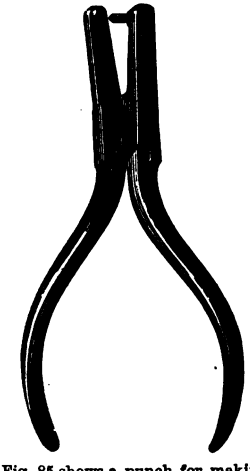


Fig. 85 shows a punch for making holes in the rubber-dam.

control of their own hands. If the operation prove a long one, and especially upon teeth of the lower jaw, the saliva will be almost certain to saturate the paper or cloth and find its way to the cavity. To obviate this, valuable instruments, termed saliva-ejectors, have been introduced, that devised by Claude S. Rogers (Fig. 83) being probably the simplest, if not quite so effective as Fisk's (Fig. 84). Its action consists in creating a vacuum in a tube by the pressure of water flowing down the same, entering through an orifice in the tube. To the upper open extremity of the latter an elastic tube, terminating in a suitably curved nozzle, is attached, which the patient holds in the sulcus in his mouth between the tongue and lower jaw. The ingenious device of the rubber coffer-dam, for which we are indebted to Barnum, an American practitioner, if less agreeable to

Fig. 86 shows a silvered glass mouth-mirror, with ball and socket joint for placing it at various angles.

the patient, certainly achieves in a most perfect manner the object contemplated. Its advantages are the following, viz. :— It being placed in position before excavation is commenced, the cavity does not become continually filled with saliva, nor the view of the same obscured, nor consequently frequent drying required, the *débris* being blown out with the air-syringe. It also permits the patient from time to time to close the mouth and to swallow the saliva, also better to intimate if he suffer pain, &c., unduly. By its use both hands of the operator are set at liberty. The operator will find this of immense advantage to him when filling teeth in positions the cavities of which can only be seen by reflection. As all students find a difficulty at first in so operating, from their movements appearing reversed in the mirror (Fig. 86), we recommend them in employing it to bear in

their minds continually the position of the cavity and the movements necessary for cutting or otherwise its various sides: they will thus soon forget the mirror with its deceptions whilst using it. As a means of illuminating a cavity by reflecting the light, the mirror is also a very valuable instrument. To return to the rubber dam, it much more thoroughly accomplishes its object than any other plan, even keeping away, to some extent, the moist air exhaled from the lungs. By the aid of clamps it can be applied in almost any situation, and can be used, and to the comfort of the patient, in conjunction with the saliva-pump. As this appliance has become so important a feature in the present day, we shall describe its mode of application, admitting at the same time that in common with many of the older practitioners we have used it much less, and therefore probably can apply it with less dexterity, than many of our juniors.

The material employed is thin sheet india-rubber: in substance it should not be so thick as to occupy much space when placed between the teeth, nor so thin as to tear. Of this a size is selected, varying according to the position of the tooth to which it is to be applied, being necessarily larger when back teeth are included. By means of a punch (Fig. 85) circular holes are cut in the rubber: thus, if we were about to apply it, say, to a central incisor of the upper jaw, we should make three holes, so as to include the tooth in question and its two neighbours, and about $\frac{1}{3\frac{1}{2}}$ inch in diameter, and $\frac{1}{8}$ inch from each other. For bicuspids we should do much the same, but for molars we should make rather larger holes, $\frac{1}{16}$ inch, and at rather greater distances from each other. In place of the punch we may draw the rubber tightly over the extremity of the steel handle of an ordinary excavator, and on its being touched a short distance from the extremity with a penknife, a small quite round disc will fly off from it: a little practice will enable an operator to control its size. The next proceeding will be, to place the dam in position, and this is often anything but easy to do. It is best accomplished by holding the dam by the thumbs and fingers of both hands, the hole nearest to the operator being

stretched over the tooth nearest to him; then the next in order is in like manner included, and, finally, the third tooth: this arrangement may, however, be altered as convenience dictates. Where the teeth are arranged closely together, difficulty will be

Fig. 87 shows an instrument for applying the coffer-dam. Silk or thread is passed into the grooves of the fork end, and tightened by winding it round the steel button. By means of the tense thread the dam can be pressed between the teeth.

Fig. 88 shows a clamp and the forceps for applying it upon a tooth.

experienced in passing the rubber between them: to facilitate this an instrument (Fig. 87) carrying a tensely stretched piece of silk or thread will be found very convenient, and the thread or silk may be detached and employed for tying round the teeth

adjoining the one to be filled. Floss silk rubbed with bees'-wax will be found the most suitable material for tying with, from its smaller liability to slip.

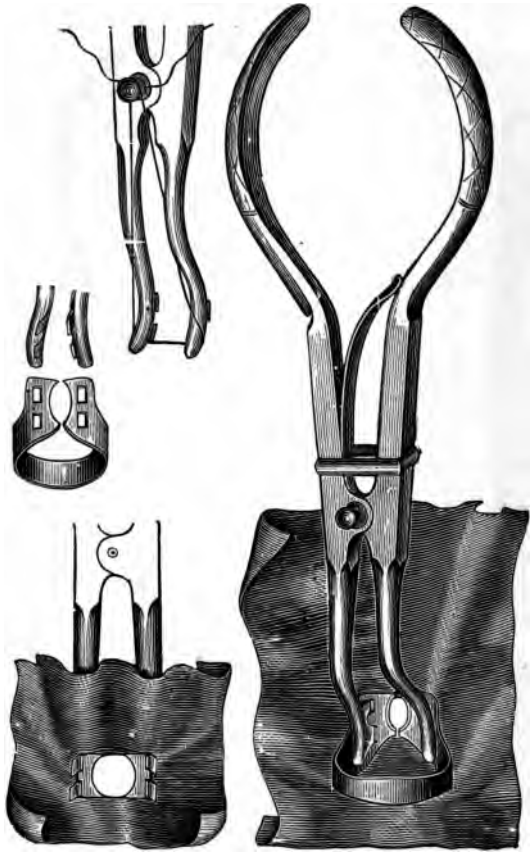


Fig. 89 shows the method of applying the rubber-dam as secured by means of the clamp. In this arrangement (Elliott's) the clamp forceps may also be employed in the place of Fig. 87.

In cases where teeth stand alone, or where, even when the dam can be tied on to adjoining ones, it cannot be carried so far upon the neck of a tooth as to bring it beyond the radical extremity of the cavity, the clamp may be employed; thus, if

we were desirous of placing the dam upon an upper or lower third molar standing alone, we should carry the clamp to the tooth by the clamp forceps. This ingenious appliance (Fig. 88), when its blades are inserted into the clamp, and its handles pressed

Fig. 90 shows the rubber-dam and clamp *in situ*.

upon, not only obtains a secure hold upon the clamp, but also distends its elastic sides, permitting them to go over the crown of a tooth and be adjusted to its neck, when, by relaxation of the pressure, the blades of the forceps are set free, and the clamp

Fig. 91 shows the rubber-dam when applied and the holder which passes round the patient's head, and both supports the dam and keeps it out of the operator's way.

left *in situ*. The rubber is now applied over both clamp and tooth, a little additional stretching being necessary (Fig. 90), or the clamp with the rubber upon it (Fig. 89) may be applied

at the same time. The rubber-dam being adjusted, its projecting sides are drawn to the cheek of the patient by the dam-holder, an elastic band which passes round the head, and terminates at either end in clips which grasp the rubber-dam (Fig. 91).

The cavity being protected from access of moisture, and carefully dried, if necessary, by amadou, thin bibulous paper, or cotton prepared purposely, the operator proceeds to insert the filling which he has selected. Let us first presume this to be a

Fig. 92 shows a dental table (Owen's), with three trays to hold instruments, and suitable box on top tray for holding gold.

Fig. 93 shows a bracket for holding instruments. By an ingenious contrivance the table can be drawn forwards, backwards, upwards, downwards, or from side to side.

preparation of gutta-percha, which, as employed for dental purposes, is a compound of the gum purified, and with it incorporated some fine siliceous or hard material, giving to it an increased hardness without impairing its colour, which should be nearly white. The two varieties most employed are Jacob's and Hill's—the names of their respective introducers. The first, an English preparation, is certainly, according to our experience, the best as regards both colour and durability; but the latter, an

American compound, is more easily employed, because rendered softer and more adhesive at a lower temperature. Some of either variety should be cut into pieces smaller than the cavity to be filled, and placed on a small, but steady table (Fig. 92) or moveable bracket support (Fig. 93), placed near to, and about the same level as, the patient's mouth, on which should be arranged all the instruments and appliances that the operator will, or will be likely to, require during the operation. Amongst these a spirit lamp will be requisite; and, all being ready, he should warm the point of a small steel instrument bent at a suitable angle, and covered at a short distance from the extremity with some non-conducting substance, to prevent the lips from being burned should it chance to touch them, and thus attach it to a piece of the gutta-percha. These instruments are conveniently formed out of broken excavators, of which the operator has generally but too large a stock, and with these the gutta-percha is carried to the flame of the spirit-lamp and passed just over or through it, backwards and forwards, long enough to soften it, but before any smoke is seen to ascend from it. At a less degree of heating it is not sufficiently soft or adhesive: at a greater, it will burn, and its surface be injured and powdery.[1] When thus heated to the right degree it is carried to the cavity and attached to that side or part of it which is the least accessible, and this is often accelerated by employment of a

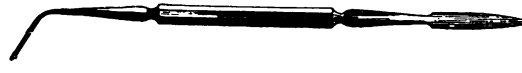


Fig. 94 shows a steel spatula (Houghton's) of suitable form for finishing off gutta-percha and amalgam fillings.

second instrument not heated. The heat on contact may cause some pain, but seldom of long duration, and the second and succeeding portions, when attached to the first, which should

[1] A more suitable appliance than the spirit-lamp for heating the gutta-percha is a tray or dish surrounded with hot water, as the material is more evenly heated and in no danger of being burnt.

adhere firmly, cause generally much less pain. In this way the cavity is filled, or a little over-filled, when the superfluous portion may be cut off with a thin spatula of steel, or, better still, of platina (see Figs. 94, 95), heated nearly to redness, and the surface smoothed over with a polished burnisher (see Fig. 97).

Gutta-percha filling possesses the following recommendations. It is applied without much difficulty, becoming readily softened by heat, and very soon hard again; it adheres to a tooth with some force, and may therefore be employed when a cavity is shallow and badly adapted for retention; it requires but little pressure, a qualification where the walls of a tooth are slender; it is, probably owing to its vegetable nature, the least likely to cause irritation of all the substances that we so employ; it resists moderately well such acids and alkalies, also such temperature, as may be met with in the mouth; and, lastly, it is of excellent colour, very fairly resembling the enamel of teeth. Its great disadvantage is, however, a serious one, viz., its insufficient hardness to resist the force of mastication; and it soon wears away, and is also pressed away from surfaces exposed to friction. In time also it appears to break up and become somewhat permeable to fluids, and therefore to emit an offensive smell; still we have in favourable cases seen it preserving a tooth after eleven and even twelve years without reapplication. Its employment will be found most valuable in cavities situated at the necks of teeth, especially when extending under the gum.

Zinc oxychlorides, vended under the absurd names of osteoplastic, os-artificial, artificial enamel, &c., are supplied by various makers in the form of zinc oxide in powder, and the zinc chloride in fluid: in many the former is mixed with some finely powdered siliceous material, to increase the hardness, whilst, the latter containing some water, a combination is formed resulting in a cement, which, like others of a similar class, takes up some of the water as a base, and thus forms hydrated oxychlorides of the metal.

In employing this filling, a little of the powder is placed on

a glass or porcelain slab with a drop or two of the liquid, and the two mixed into a thick paste with the platina or an ivory spatula, and conveyed by the same to the cavity, previously dried, and is carefully worked against its sides, to ensure per-

Fig. 95 shows a spatula and stopper combined (McAdams'), constructed of hard platina and mounted in ivory, suitable for oxychloride and pyrophosphate of zinc fillings.

fect adaptation and the exclusion of air-spaces; the later portions added may with advantage be of thicker consistency. The filling, if fresh, sets in a few minutes, but it may be well to coat it with varnish, or gutta-percha dissolved in chloroform, before permitting the moisture of the mouth to have access to it. After it has properly set, rubbing its surface with some highly polished substance, such as agate, for instance (Fig. 96), will, by

Fig. 96 shows an agate burnisher (Rowney's) for polishing and hardening the surface of fillings.

lessening its porosity, increase its resisting powers in the mouth. The advantages possessed by the zinc oxychloride are:—Ease in application, rapidity in setting, a considerable degree of hardness when set, attachment to surfaces when dry with considerable force, and therefore great suitability for shallow cavities and cavities with very fragile walls, and a colour, though not equal in this respect to gutta-percha, still nearer to that of the teeth than many other substances employed. Its disqualification, and that a most important one, is, that it is acted on by weak acid and alkaline solutions, and even, to a minute extent, by pure water, hence it cannot be relied on as a permanent filling, yielding, in contrast to gutta-percha, the most unfavourable results when applied at or near to the margin of the gum. It also produces considerable pain when applied to very sensitive

dentine; but this disadvantage is more than counterbalanced by its power of destroying such sensibility, as we shall presently show. It would be difficult and unsafe to make any statement as to the varieties which are most to be depended upon, further than that in our hands the compounds of Franzelius and Ash have, on the whole, yielded the best results. No doubt, in time, these compounds will be rendered more perfect.

Closely resembling the oxychloride in character is the pyrophosphate of zinc, vended like the former, but having the pyrophosphoric acid in crystals. Therefore, when it is employed, the crystals must be melted, which is best done in a platina or porcelain spoon held over a spirit lamp, ebullition being avoided; and, when fluid, or reduced to about the consistency of glycerine, it is dropped on the slab mentioned, which in cold weather at least should be previously warmed. It mixes less readily than does the oxychloride, and, if it be mixed too thickly, a crumbling mass results, or, if too thinly, a sticky, unworkable one: the proper combination will be, when it can be rolled between the finger and thumb without sticking to them or breaking to pieces. As it sets very rapidly, no time must be lost in conveying it to the cavity, and its introduction into the cavity is facilitated by the pressure of a highly polished steel burnisher: a platina one would no doubt be preferable. Its qualifications and disqualifications are so similar to the oxychloride above-mentioned, that we need only say that it differs from it in proving far more durable, especially when applied at the necks of the teeth. With both these compounds it is essential that they should be employed when recently made, exposure to air, especially in the case of the pyrophosphates, causing considerable deterioration. It is unfortunate, therefore, that they are not vended in smaller quantities and in hermetically sealed vessels. The pyrophosphate, to which our remarks are referable, is that sold as Pulson's: other varieties may require somewhat modified manipulation.

Of the alloys of mercury with other metals, termed amal-

gams, those which become hard after mixture have long enjoyed a reputation amongst the substances employed in filling teeth. As they possess no direct property of adhesion to the walls of a tooth, it is necessary, in preparing a cavity for their reception, that there be some undercutting, or dovetailing, to retain them. Two classes of these compounds apparently exist, viz., where the combination is a binary one, and appears something more than a mere mixture or solution of one metal in the other, heat being evolved in the union; and the result is probably a definite chemical compound dissolved in either metal which may be in excess of atomic quantity—analogous probably to the mixtures of sulphuric acid in water—at all events, the resulting alloys, as in the cases of mercury and palladium, or silver, or copper, are admitted to undergo less change in bulk after their mixture and application than do any of the other compounds consisting of more than two metals and which comprise the second class. Unfortunately, the first class possess one great drawback, viz., their unsuitable colour; and the silver and copper compounds the additional one of staining the teeth, the silver a greenish, and the copper a bluish-black colour; of the second class some are now prepared which, when properly manipulated, keep their white silvery colour for many years.

In applying the amalgams, certain precautions are necessary, according to the description employed; thus, with palladium, its compound sets very rapidly, so much so that we have found some specimens, and probably the purest, almost useless; also, when mixed in largish quantities at a time, say, enough for a good-sized cavity, it evolves so much heat as to explode with emission of light. About as much mercury as would fill the cavity to be treated is placed in the palm of the hand, and the palladium powder very gradually added. It requires some careful rubbing with the forefinger before the two become incorporated, when it should be divided into smallish pellets, and these rapidly carried, one after another, to the cavity, each piece being well compressed and rubbed into the inequalities of its walls by a burnishing or compressing instrument, and with a

Fig. 97.

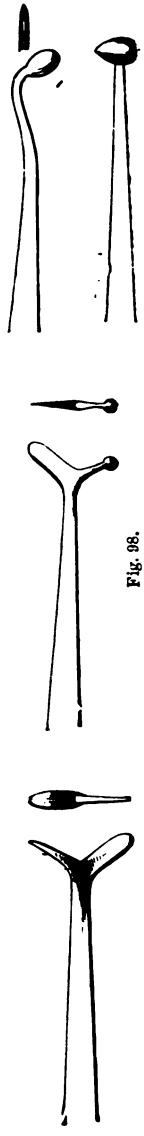


Fig. 98.

Figs. 97, 98 show polished steel burnishers of various forms.

Fig. 99.

Fig. 99 shows four useful forms of amalgam stoppers.

rotary movement of the hand. This is continued until the cavity is quite filled, or even, if necessary, to some slight extent built out, the surface being rendered smooth and polished with the burnisher until it has quite set, which is generally in a very little, too short a time. This is probably the most durable of all the amalgams, but the most difficult to manipulate. Its surface changes to a black colour, but, as a rule, it does not stain the structure of the tooth. The circumstance of its setting so soon has one advantage, viz., that the patient is less liable to displace it at the next meal. The silver compound is probably quite equal in durability to the palladium, but its staining and discolouring properties are so objectionable that it is very rarely employed. It sets almost as rapidly as the last-named, and must therefore be worked with the same precautions. Some experiments we have lately made with this compound entitle it, we think, to be more employed than it has been, and especially in cases where the cavity can be partially lined with the pyrophosphate cement.

The copper amalgam[1] is supplied in a different form from any other, viz., copper already in combination with mercury, and is commonly known as Sulivan's, the name of a maker who has long prepared it.

It is probably the easiest to employ of all amalgams. One of the little egg-shaped pieces in which form it is vended is placed in a small iron spoon or ladle (Fig. 100), and gently heated over the flame of a spirit-lamp, until minute globules of mercury exude upon its surface, with generally a slight hissing noise; it is then transferred to a glass or agate mortar (Fig. 101), broken up, and rubbed into a smooth paste; it should then be well washed

[1] The compound now generally supplied under the name of Sulivan's is, we believe, prepared by precipitating copper from a solution of the sulphate, with mercury at the bottom of the vessel that contains it, by means of stirring the fluid with a piece of zinc. A much better preparation is that obtained by substituting iron for zinc. The latter as so prepared was employed many years ago, and we occasionally now recognise it by a coppery lustre on portions most subjected to friction: it is, we believe, harder and more durable than the zinc-prepared material.

with a weak solution of sulphuric acid, some recommend soap and water, until no longer any black fluid can be obtained from it, when the acid or soap should be removed with clean water, and if the latter quite dissolved out with alcohol, and the amalgam thoroughly dried between folds of soft linen. A quantity of mercury may generally, after the amalgam is dried, be squeezed out through wash-leather, leaving it in an almost powdery

Fig. 100 shows an iron spoon or ladle with wooden handle for heating, over a spirit-lamp, the copper (Sulivan's) amalgam.

condition, which, on being rubbed in the palm of the hand, will soon become coherent and soft, when still more mercury may be squeezed out. The drier it can be employed the better, provided it will cohere in the cavity of the tooth, which cohesion will be favoured by the warmth of the mouth, and this also admits of drier portions being added to those first employed. The patient should be strictly enjoined to avoid eating upon it for several hours, or be restricted to a soup diet for that day.

Fig. 101 shows a pestle and mortar for breaking up the copper amalgam when heated. For this purpose they should be constructed of either agate or glass, as the compound adheres to Wedgwood's composition.

Under the above-mentioned conditions a moderately hard and durable stopping can generally be effected; but its black colour, together with staining of the tooth, are objections to its employment: doubtless it will always be useful for certain cases, such as the almost inaccessible cavities near to the gum between back teeth.

Those varieties, in which the compounds are apparently more of the nature of mixtures than the foregoing, are generally composed of silver and tin, to which may be added small quantities of either gold or platina, or both,[1] mixed in certain proportions by the various makers, by whose names they are designated, melted into ingots, and then cut into the convenient form of filings. Their mode of application is as follows: a small quantity of mercury should be shaken from the drop bottle into the palm of the left hand, and to this is added by degrees the filings, which are thus dissolved in the former until the mass is scarcely coherent; it should then be transferred to the mortar and thoroughly mixed and incorporated; it may then be again rubbed in the palm of the hand until it exhibits a slight consistency.[2]

Fig. 102 shows the mercury drop bottle from which the metal can be shaken in fine globules.

[1] One formula is, gold one part, silver three parts, tin two parts.

[2] T. Fletcher, of Warrington, has introduced a very perfect and

Fig. 103 shows a balance for weighing out Fletcher's filings and mercury in proper proportions. The arrangement admits of two varieties being weighed: thus mercury is put into the most distant of the two cups and counterbalanced by filings at the opposite extremity for his platina amalgam, but put into the other cup and in like manner counterbalanced for his extra plastic amalgam.

efficient method of manipulating his amalgam [platina and gold alloy]. By a simple form of balance, the right proportions of filings and mercury are obtained, and these are incorporated by agitation in a test-tube until thoroughly mixed, when the powdery mass is transferred to an ivory compressor, which reduces it into small cakes of cheese-like form: these are divided into smaller fragments and introduced into the cavity of a tooth, and worked into a consistent mass by a broad plugger pressed upon by the hand or the action of a mallet. Of both the preparation and the mode of its manipulation we can speak most highly.

The mixture is carried in small portions to the cavity of the tooth, where it must be patiently rubbed and pressed, and

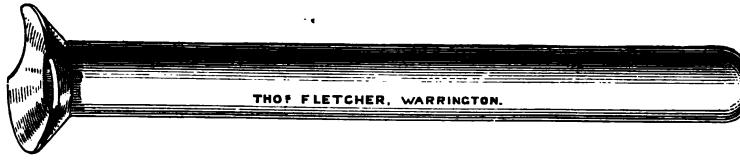


Fig. 104 shows Fletcher's mixing-tube for shaking together the filings and the mercury.

any appearance of free mercury be met by the addition of portions containing smaller and smaller quantities of that metal, keeping up the pressing and rubbing until indications of setting are becoming evident; and this process may be necessary for a considerable time, its object being to avoid that condition which fluid and semifluid bodies have a tendency, by attraction of their particles, to assume, viz., the spheroidal form, which we believe we were the first to point out in regard to amalgams, as one cause of their separation from the margins of a cavity. To ensure a more perfect result in regard to both durability and appearance, all amalgam fillings after a few days should have their surfaces carefully polished. It often happens that in smoothing over their summits some of the compound is spread over the surrounding tooth, and this thin layer breaks away, leaving slight irregularity and imperfection: if filing be not feasible, such superfluous portions may be wiped off, when the filling is completed, with a piece of soft amadou.

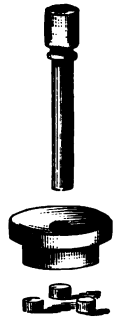


Fig. 105 shows Fletcher's mortar and plunger for compressing his platina amalgam into discs prior to insertion in the tooth.

As it is very difficult to carry out an amalgam filling in a powdery condition, with a cavity in which one of the sides is wanting, considerable assistance is afforded by the employment of a thin metal clamp applied round the tooth so as to supply during the process a temporary wall, and which is removed when the filling is completed.

In cases where it is desired to build up the lost crown of a tooth upon a surface almost level with the gum, and which will afford a very uncertain hold for the amalgam, we may

Fig. 106 shows a thin metal clamp (Pinney's) suitable for passing round a tooth and forming a temporary wall for sustaining an amalgam during the process of filling.

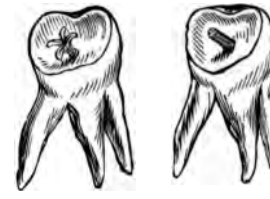


Fig. 107 shows an arrangement for giving support to an amalgam filling upon an almost flat surface by screwing pieces of gold wire into the substance of the tooth or its fangs. The free extremity of the wire is sawn, and the sections can be bent outwards after the insertion of the wire.

greatly increase the latter by screwing pieces of gold wire into the root-cavities; the projecting portions of the wire being previously sawn across with a hair saw, they may be opened and pressed outwards like the petals of a flower (Fig. 107). As some practitioners have believed that they have suffered from mixing these mercurial compounds in the hand, the mortar may be employed throughout.

Some few general precautions in regard to amalgam fillings may here be insisted on; thus, they should never be placed in cavities where pulps are almost exposed, without some intervening body of less heat-conducting properties. They are less suited for the teeth of young people, such, for instance, as have large cavities in the first permanent molars at the ages, say, of seven to fourteen; in this, as in the former case, there is great liability to death of the pulp. They are never to be inserted without special precautions upon surfaces of sensitive teeth, where they may come into contact with the gold clasps of artificial dentures, as severe pain will be experienced by an electrical action set up by the two metals coming in contact. Near the front of the mouth they must be used, if at all, very sparingly; but we cannot lay down the law that the whitest varieties shall never be inserted into front teeth. We have

even seen palladium inserted in the back portions of front teeth, the presence of which we should never have detected but for the mouth-mirror; but here the thickness of tooth-substance between the cavity and the surface was considerable. We have met with some varieties of palladium which have stained the teeth quite as badly as the copper compound.[1]

The next and last of the materials which we shall describe as used for filling teeth are the metals in their unalloyed state; they are employed either in the form of thin sheets, or in a finely precipitated condition, but much more commonly in the former. Those thus used are gold, platina, and tin, of which gold only has been as yet supplied in the precipitated form.[2]

Of all the materials employed in filling teeth, gold has certainly enjoyed the greatest reputation, but we fear that its popularity has not been wholly free from an element of vulgar prejudice, at least on the part of some patients. However this may be, there can be no doubt but that a metal so little affected by chemical re-agents is admirably adapted for occupying a position in the oral cavity. The modes of its application are by no means easy, and undoubtedly require a long and careful training before excellence can be attained, such as, it must be confessed, our American brethren have exhibited. To build up, as it were, from little more than a fragment of a tooth, a golden crown of corresponding anatomical form to the structure lost, requires no little skill and experience on the part of the operator, and must be met with an amount of patience and

[1] Some years ago a readily fusible metallic compound was occasionally employed for filling purposes; it appeared to make a durable stopping of good colour, but the heat necessary to soften it was more than could be generally borne, even in dead teeth.

[2] Within the last two years a preparation has been introduced, termed Sladen's compound, which consists of an amalgam in a very finely divided condition, and which is consolidated by pressure in much the same way as precipitated gold, to be spoken of presently. It seems to be capable of making a stopping of good colour, with little liability to change its dimensions, but sufficient time has not yet elapsed to enable us to speak with any confidence in regard to its true value.

endurance on the part of the patient not always to be obtained, even at the prospect of such a reward. As the operations of filling teeth with gold, especially when employed in the cohesive form, are lengthy and fatiguing ones, we counsel the

Fig. 108 shows the Wilkerson operating chair. The various movements of the seat, back, head-piece, foot-board, and of the whole chair itself upon its pedestal, are as perfect as it is possible to imagine, and are carried out with a patient seated, rapidly and with comparatively a very small amount of force.

beginner to make early attempts to conduct them in the sitting posture, and to this end we believe he will find no appliances so valuable as a Wilkerson's operating chair and a Lyons' stool. The numerous movements of the former, so easily effected with

the patient in the chair, and the suitable angles at which the latter can be placed, are only fully appreciated by those who have learned to operate in a sitting posture.

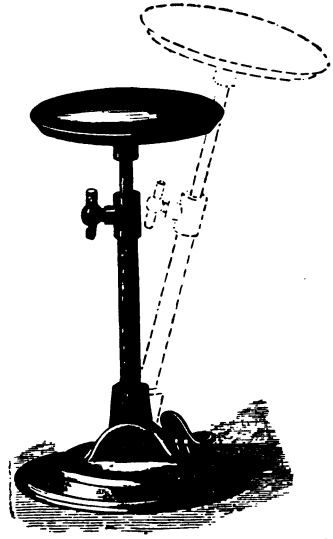


Fig. 109 shows an adjustable stool (Lyons'); the seat can be raised to any necessary height and also placed at various angles.

The gold, prepared in sheets or leaves, is technically termed foil, each sheet being usually about four inches square, and varying in weight from 2 up to 240 grains: of late years the makers have conveniently attached the number to each represented by their weight in grains. In the employment of different numbers there is much variety of opinion, some preferring the lower and some the higher; if there be any rule, it would be the obvious one of the former being selected for small and the latter for large cavities. Whichever be selected, one rule does prevail, and that is, to endeavour to insert the foil in folds parallel to the side walls of the cavity, *i.e.*, vertically to the base and orifice of the cavity, as there will then be less liability in the metal to flake off than if some of its layers were arranged parallel to the bottom and orifice of the cavity: the following methods to this end are adopted:—1. By tape or ribbon. A sheet, say, of No. 5 foil is divided by a long clean pair of scissors (Fig.110) into three or four even strips, and each of these folded upon itself until the reduced width is about the diameter of the cavity to be filled. The folding may be best accomplished with a gilder's knife (Fig. 111), as the ribbon or tape so formed will be more uniform in size, and less fingered, than if folded by the hand. If the cavity be protected from moisture by a napkin kept in position by the

forefinger and thumb of the left hand, one end of the tape is seized by the foil forceps (Fig. 112) or attached to the end of a serrated-pointed plugger, by pressing on the foil laid upon cloth or velvet, and so conveyed to the cavity, where it is best to

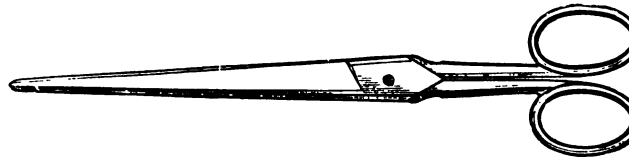


Fig. 110 shows scissors suitable for dividing the sheets of gold and other foil.

commence at the most distant or most inaccessible part. In the case of rubber-dam protection, where both hands are at liberty, the foil is taken up by the forceps in the left hand, whilst by a suitable instrument held in the right it is pressed down into folds

Fig. 111 shows a knife suitable for folding gold or other foil.

Fig. 112 shows a suitable form of tweezers to be employed in plugging teeth.

parallel with the sides of the cavity, each fold being made a little longer than the cavity is deep, thus projecting slightly above its orifice. After a few folds are thus arranged, the forceps are gently removed and the folds pressed against one side of the cavity, where, with a little management, they will be held with sufficient force to support the remainder of the tape. The instrument for forming the folds in the cavity should be flat, thin, and serrated, but not so sharp as to cut the gold (Fig. 113); that for compressing them, called from its shape a foot-plugger (Fig. 114), should be slightly roughened on the surface which exerts the pressure, but not so rough as to adhere to the foil and tear it

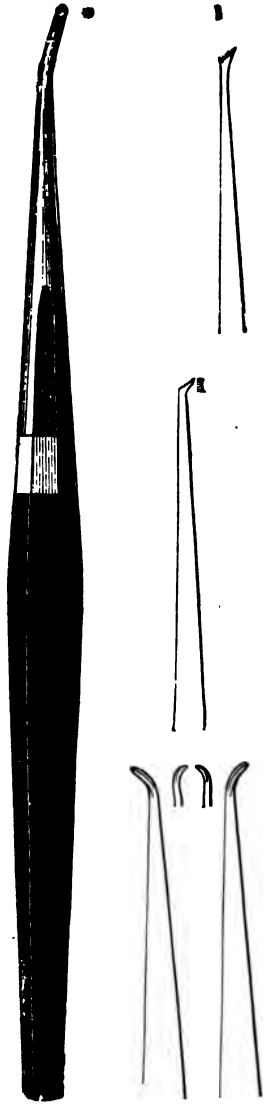


Fig. 113 shows the forms of plugger (Bing's) suitable for packing gold foil, folded like tape, in folds parallel to the walls of a cavity.

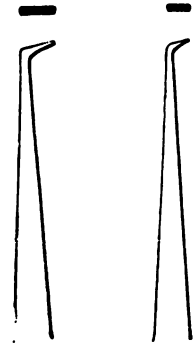


Fig. 114 shows foot-pluggers used for compressing gold foil against the walls of a cavity.

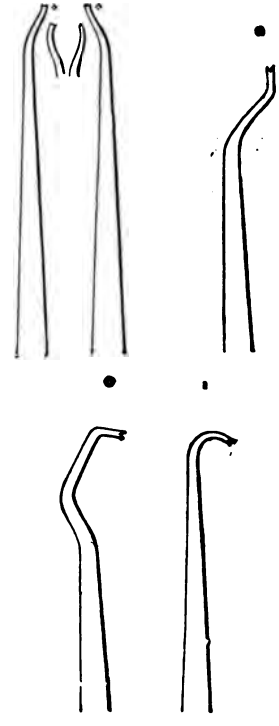


Fig. 115 shows various forms of plugger designed for packing go foil into cavities between teeth ar otherwise difficult positions to get a

away.[1] One length of tape being exhausted, another is in like manner introduced, and usually with less difficulty than the first, and the process continued as before, care being taken to compress each thoroughly with the foot-plugger with as much force as the walls of the tooth can safely withstand. Having thus introduced as many lengths of tape as possible, a sharp wedge-shaped instrument should be forced into the centre of the filling parallel with the folds, and moved backwards and forwards, but with much caution, as the leverage thus exercised on the walls of the cavity is considerable. Into the space thus made more tape is inserted, and this process continued until the wedge is with moderate force unable to penetrate the surface. The last added portions not being easily accomplished by the tape arrangement, it may be effected according to the plan which we shall next detail. If the above be carried into effect as described, we shall then have a cavity filled with gold foil, in layers parallel with each other, and held firmly by mutual compression, so that any dragging action on the surface will be resisted by the whole depth of the foil; whereas, were the parallelism of the folds reversed, the layer at the surface would only be sustained by the narrow portion forming its first fold. The process, however, has yet to be completed, as at this stage the gold should project slightly above the orifice of the cavity.

With instruments terminating in somewhat broad extremities, and file-cut, to prevent their slipping (Fig. 122), the surface is condensed by considerable pressure, greatly augmented by a slight rolling movement being given to them at the same time. In the place of hand pressure, force may be conveyed to plugging instruments by a mallet (Fig. 116), the substance forming the head being a soft metal, which occasions less vibration than does hard wood. The mallet may be an automatic one, and then its employment necessitates only the use of one hand. The first of such instruments was devised by J. Tomes, but the American contrivances of Salmon and Snow, in which the force is regulated

[1] Many other forms of plugger will be found necessary; those shown in Fig. 115 are amongst the most useful.

by a screw, are certainly preferable. When the cavity is situated between teeth—approximal as it has been termed—the condensing pressure may be often advantageously applied

Fig. 116 shows a hand mallet, the head of which is constructed of hard wood filled with lead, which lessens the amount of vibration when used.

Fig. 117 shows an automatic mallet (Snow & Lewis). The bit or plugger is inserted at the small end of the instrument, and when pressed upon raises a mallet against the resistance of a spring, and which at a given height is liberated by a trigger and strikes the bit. The amount of force can be regulated by the screw at the head of the instrument.

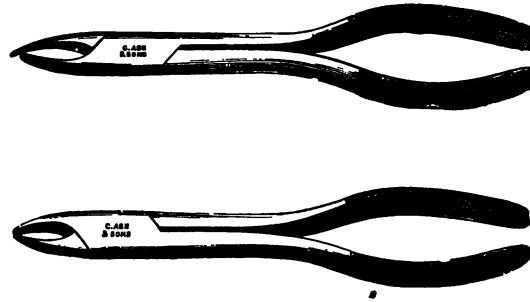


Fig. 118 shows plugging-forceps (Flagg's) for condensing fillings in cavities.

by means of compressing-forceps, one blade of which is applied to the surface of the filling and the other to the opposite side of the tooth. The instrument is especially indicated for teeth somewhat loose in their sockets, as great pressure can be em-

ployed without moving them in the same. The degree of condensation will inform the operator of the extent of perfection to which the first portion of the process has been carried; for should he be able to condense to more than a slight extent, he,

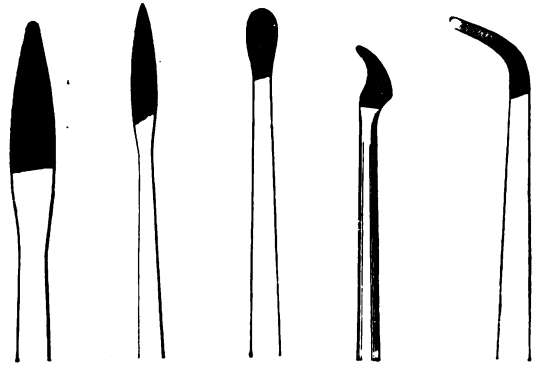


Fig. 119 shows various forms of file for removing the superfluous portions of a gold stopping.

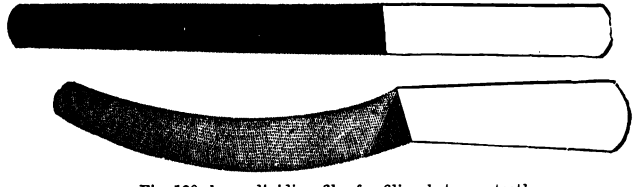


Fig. 120 shows dividing files for filing between teeth.

Fig. 121 shows a file-carrier for filing teeth at the back of the mouth.

may rest assured that he has not introduced the tapes as closely together or wedged them as tightly as they ought to have been. Such a filling may have a hard surface and may last for a time, but not so long as one that is more dense throughout in its entirety. If the process be successful, the surface after com-

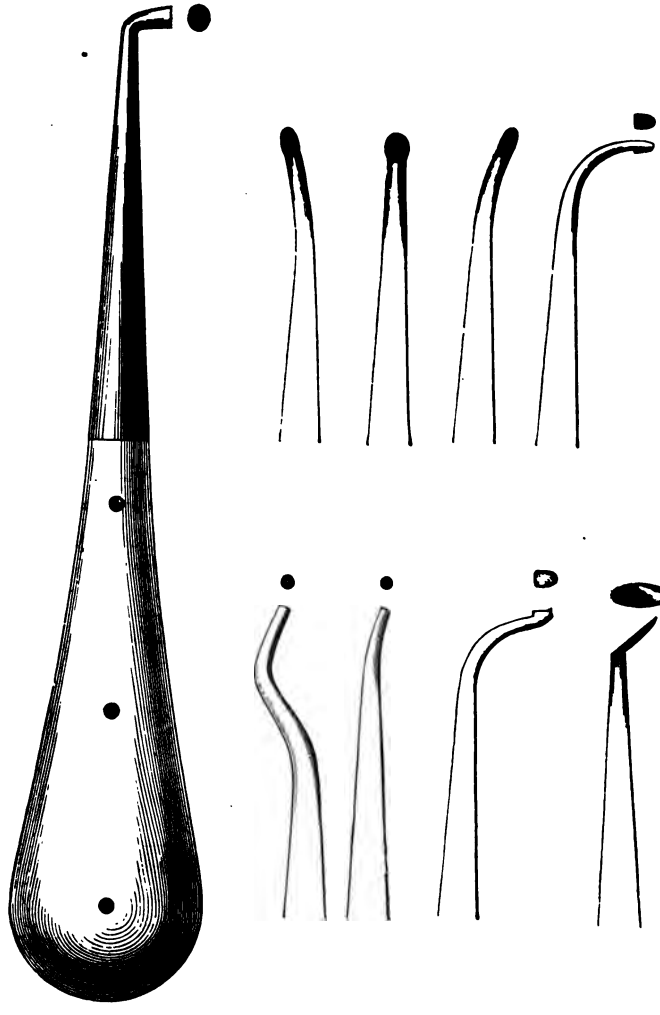


Fig. 122 shows various forms of plugger serviceable for condensing the surface of a gold filling. They are set in ivory or ebony handles of a form which gives a very firm grasp.

pression should be still slightly above the level of the cavity, and it may now be reduced with suitably shaped files (Fig. 119), directed by the hand, or burrs rotated by the engine. If at the side of a tooth, endeavour should be made to leave the filling contour, *i.e.*, of the form which that portion of the tooth originally presented; but, if on a masticating surface, experience shows that it is best not to attempt to imitate the cusps, a flat and perfectly level surface being found to stand the longest; indeed, some operators even reduce to the same level the adjacent cusps of the enamel. After the file a more perfect

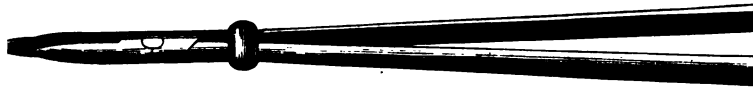


Fig. 123 shows a steel holder for carrying arkansas or corundum points for polishing stoppings.

Fig. 124 represents a tape-carrier (Harding's) with steel spring ratchet for tightening the tape. The instrument is employed for polishing the surfaces of gold fillings situated between teeth.

finish can be given by polishing the gold with an arkansas point (Fig. 123), or a little finely powdered pumice and water applied on a piece of wood or tape (Fig. 124), and, as a final application, whiting or crocus in the same manner. Such a surface will in a solid plug be left and remain highly polished, with far less tendency for food to accumulate about it than if it were rough or uneven. With some operators it is customary to carry out much of the finishing and polishing process by forcibly rubbing the gold surface with highly polished steel instruments —burnishers (Figs. 97, 98, p. 130). By their aid a very highly polished surface may be attained, but it is a somewhat deceptive one, especially where the filling is none too dense, and it seldom remains any length of time.

2. By ropes.—This is simply a modification of the last

method, the gold foil being rolled into a form resembling rope and applied in precisely the same manner. In this form it is rather more easy to manipulate, but a less perfect parallelism of the foil is attained; it is best suited to the more irregularly shaped cavities, into the inequalities of which it can be more readily compressed.

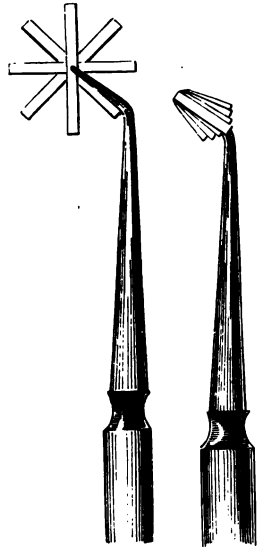


Fig. 125 shows the method of taking up gold foil for insertion into a cavity on the plan of stars or strips. The cut to the left represents the mode of taking up the foil with tweezers; that on the right of doing so on the point of a plugger.

3. By stars or strips. — This process consists in folding the foil into a broad tape, about half or three-quarters of an inch in breadth, and then cutting it at right angles to its length into narrow strips. Of these three or four, arranged over each other in form of a star (Fig. 125), are taken up at their centres by the foil-forceps, or the pointed extremity of a plugger, and inserted, the central portions downwards, into the cavity, after which the projecting ends are folded downwards and inwards, and pressed into the space left by the forceps or plugger: further portions are in like manner added, the foot-pluggers being constantly employed to condense laterally, and the wedges used in the latter stages, until the cavity is densely filled, when the finishing process, as before, is employed. This method is best adapted for narrow and deep cavities, where a perfect parallelism is less important, as the surface is small in comparison with the depth of the cavity: it is also very usefully combined with other methods, especially in applying the last portions of gold: a heavy gold, twenty grains to the leaf, is in such cases very readily pressed down to the bottom of a small deep orifice,

Fig. 126 shows a foil roller (Tomes') for making cylinders in foil.

when a lighter foil would stick on the way, or be perforated by the narrow instrument.

4. By cylinders.—By this elegant method the most perfect parallelism of folds is attained. It is

Fig. 127 shows the form in which gold foil prepared in cylinders is now vended.

accomplished by dividing, say, a leaf of No. 5 foil into two, three, or four strips, and folding them into tapes, a little broader than the cavity to be filled is deep. These are rolled round a fine broach,

Fig. 128 shows the form in which gold foil prepared in blocks with parallel layers is now vended.

or pair of delicate forceps (Fig. 126), constructed for the purpose, into little rolls (Fig. 127), like those in which ribbon is vended. Cylinders of various thicknesses and sizes, also blocks with the foil parallel, are now prepared expressly, and are superior to those made as described, which are of necessity thicker and more dense at each end where folded than in the centre, which is not the case with those sold. The cylinders are conveyed to the cavity in the tooth by the foil-forceps, and inserted with the folds parallel to the walls of the same; their disposition, when so placed, being best understood by the happy illustration of J. Tomes, 'packed into the tooth as you would proceed to pack cigars into a tumbler.'

Each cylinder, as introduced, should be well compressed to one side of the cavity before the next is introduced, and so on until no more

can be added; but, as it is difficult to complete the operation with cylinders, it will be best to accomplish it by filling up the interstices made by the wedge with foil in the form of strips. In treating interstitial cavities, viz., those existing between teeth, we shall find it most convenient to commence at the least accessible position, *i.e.* where the cavity impinges on the gum, and to complete towards the crown.

The foregoing descriptions of the methods of employing gold foil are equally applicable to platina and tin. The former is not much used on account of its harshness and the difficulty experienced in thoroughly adapting it without intervening spaces to the irregular walls of some cavities; otherwise, in colour, it surpasses gold, which also it equals as regards freedom from chemical action.

Tin, whilst sufficiently pure and unalterable by reagents, does not yield a plug sufficiently hard to resist, in exposed situations, the wear of mastication for many years: when applied in situations not so exposed, it appears to last in some cases even better than gold, and, being an inferior conductor of heat, is well suited to very sensitive teeth, especially the temporary ones, and also the permanent ones in young persons. Cavities situated on the buccal surfaces, and shallow cavities, retain this metal as well as, and often better than, any other material, and it might probably be employed with advantage much more frequently than it is at present. Gold, however, possesses a special qualification under certain conditions, viz., that of being cohesive either in the precipitated form spoken of, or rendered so by exposure to heat: more correctly, perhaps, it should be stated that gold is naturally cohesive, but that from exposure to air or other gases it loses this property, probably from weak chemical affinities which attach to its surface gases or vapours, and which prevent its particles from actually coming into perfect contact when two pieces of the metal are brought together. If a portion of non-adhesive gold foil be passed through the flame of a spirit-lamp, at a heat short of redness, a vapour will be seen to issue from its surface, after which such piece of gold

will, when pressed upon a similar one, become united to it so intimately, that, if an attempt be made to separate them, the gold will yield first in many places rather than at the attached surfaces. This property is not peculiar to gold or certain metals: it only requires the actual molecules of a body to be brought sufficiently close to those of another portion of a similar body, or in many cases a different body, for attraction of cohesion to take place, a condition most readily brought about by the process of liquefaction.[1]

Gold possessed of the property of cohesion can, it will be clearly perceived, be employed with much advantage in a variety of cases, especially in filling shallow cavities, building up lost portions of the teeth, &c.

In considering the subject of filling teeth with cohesive gold[2] it will be advisable, first, to give some attention to the shaping of cavities with relation to their means of retaining the filling.

The primary point to determine is, whether the filling shall be held in entirely by the general form of the cavity, or by retaining points or pits; the former being the more to be desired and the most generally applicable; the latter, however, must be relied on in certain shallow cavities, when the filling must be entirely cohesive.

Let us take as an example a saucer-shaped cavity on an approximal surface of a cuspidatus tooth, where we will suppose the decay to have penetrated but little further than the enamel. On all the disorganised enamel being chipped away, together with any diseased dentine that there may be, and the edges of the enamel being smoothed off with an arkansas-wheel on the dental engine, a shallow saucer-shaped cavity will be left,

[1] Whilst making the foregoing statement, with regard to gold being rendered cohesive, we must admit that a certain eminent English chemist regards the union as simply a mechanical adhesion.

[2] In the following description we have availed ourselves of the kind assistance of Claude S. Rogers, the demonstrator at the school of the Dental Hospital of London.

perfectly incapable of retaining any filling that will not adhere to its walls.

If into such cavity half-a-dozen retaining pits be now drilled near to the margin of the dentine, in directions divergent from one another, and so as to avoid all proximity to the pulp-chamber, sufficient hold will be attained to securely retain the gold.

For making these retaining pits, a small square-pointed drill (Fig. 129) should be used, and the pits cut no deeper into

Fig. 129 shows a form of drill suitable for cutting retaining points in the dentine of a cavity for cohesive gold.

Fig. 130 shows a wheel-burr which may be used in the place of the drill for making retaining points. The sizes represented in this and Fig. 129 are too large for the object.

Fig. 131 represents a shallow and spoon-shaped cavity in a cuspidatus tooth with two retaining points at its gingival margin and two retaining grooves, one at each side, cut into it.

the dentine than about the diameter of the drill itself; or a small wheel-burr (Fig. 130) used in the engine will do equally well. If the cavity be somewhat deeper than has been supposed in the foregoing, it may be well to join two or three of these pits together on two opposite sides of the cavity, thus forming two opposing grooves (Fig. 131).

In these, as in all other forms of cavity, the enamel edges should be smoothed off either with an arkansas-wheel, as before mentioned, or with small chisels; in fact, a somewhat countersunk form should be given to the edges, so that the plug when completed shall fit like a screw-head (see Fig. 73, p. 112).

The cavity having been prepared and the rubber-dam applied, if that has not been previously done, the cavity is now ready for the filling.

The gold should be employed in loosely rolled pellets; small sizes of Williams's A cylinders answer exceedingly well. If foil be preferred, No. 4 is the best, whole sheets being made into a rope and cut up into small pellets. As this should be done before the foil is annealed, it is best to use non-cohesive foil, to

Fig. 132 shows a spirit-lamp and tray for heating (annealing) gold foil.

Fig. 133 shows a spirit-lamp suitable for heating (annealing) gold foil.

be made cohesive by heating slightly in a tray over the spirit-lamp (Fig. 132), or by passing each pellet over the flame before placing it *in situ*. In annealing the gold, care should be taken not to over-heat it, as in that case the gold becomes harsh and brittle, losing all the beautiful softness that it possesses: if this be avoided, a degree of heat considerably below redness is all that is necessary; indeed, for very small pellets a single wave over the spirit-flame will be found sufficient.

The gold having been thus prepared, we proceed to fill each retaining pit with the pellets, conveying them by means of the foil-carriers and thoroughly condensing each pellet as it is put in its place. This is best done with pluggers having fine serrated points (Fig. 135), which may receive their force from the hand, from the ordinary mallet (Fig. 116, p. 142), from the automatic mallet (Fig. 117, p. 142), from the pneumatic mallet (Fig. 136), which is worked by the foot, from a very ingenious

Fig. 134 shows a form of tweezers (Rich's) suitable for carrying cohesive foil to the retaining points or grooves.

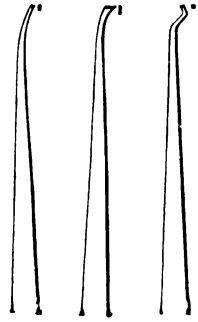


Fig. 135 shows three forms of plugger suitable for condensing cohesive foil.

Fig. 136 shows Kirby's pneumatic mallet.

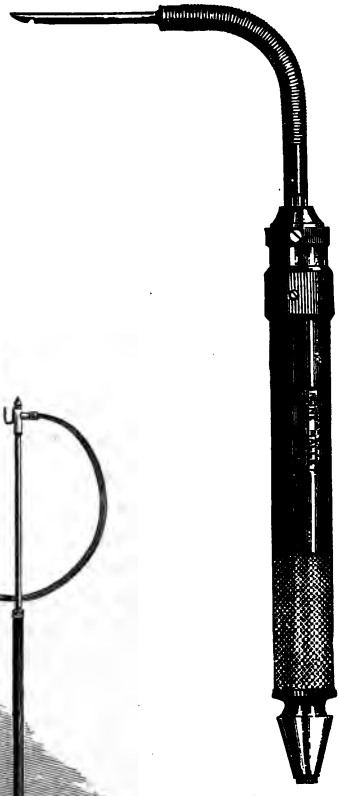


Fig. 137 shov
Power's malle
which is a
tached to a
worked by t
dental engine.

mallet which can be attached to the dental engine (Fig. 137), or from the electro-magnetic mallet (Fig. 139). The retaining pits being filled, the gold is carried over from one to the other, across and back again, gradually covering the surface of the cavity, the centre first and the margins afterwards. This should not be done too quickly, as there is a tendency in the gold to curl away from the surface if the mass be too thin: a careful guard should therefore be kept, that the plug in its early stages is sufficiently strong in its centre to prevent this. We now proceed to mass on the pellets, using larger ones as the plug becomes stronger, until

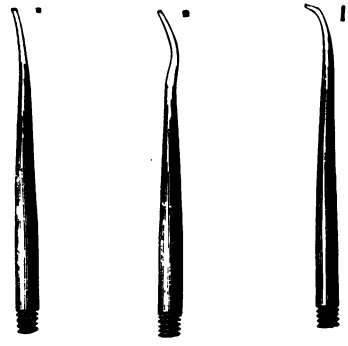


Fig. 138 shows three forms of bit to be employed with Power's engine mallet.

the gold stands fairly above and over all the edges of the cavity, when it is filed or cut down with corundum-wheels in the engine (Fig. 140) to the contour of the face of the tooth, and smoothed off with arkansas stone, so that a pointed instrument can be passed from the gold to the enamel, and *vice versâ*, without there being any catch perceptible to the touch. The finishing process is polishing with crocus powder on a soft rubber point.

If sponge gold be employed, the process is conducted in the same manner, somewhat smaller pieces being used. The condensing force also requires to be, if anything, rather more carefully and thoroughly done, commencing a partial condensa-

tion with a large plugger, then employing a smaller one, and then a still smaller one; and thus each piece is treated as it is placed *in situ*.

When sponge gold first attained its great popularity, it was estimated that with it operations could be done with greater

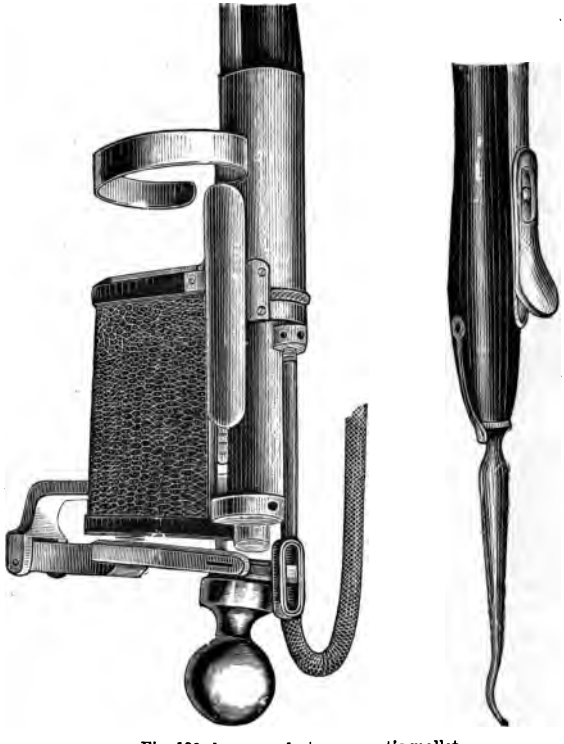


Fig. 139 shows an electro-magnetic mallet.

rapidity than with the foil. Time, however, showed that the apparently sound and beautiful fillings thus effected were not solid; in fact, only the outer fibres of each piece were condensed, the centres remaining porous, so that fluids of the mouth soon worked into the weak portions, and decay went on around the filling. If, however, small pieces be used, as before

stated, and each piece thoroughly condensed with small points, as good a filling can be made of sponge gold as with foil: it

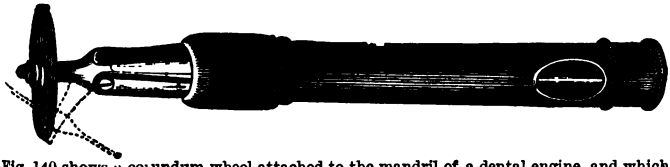


Fig. 140 shows a corundum wheel attached to the mandril of a dental engine, and which is capable of being fixed at various angles.

requires, however, more time and labour, and it is in this respect that the chief objection to it lies. In employing any form of

Fig. 141 shows a corundum wheel mounted with Ives' tongue and cheek protector.

adhesive gold it is all-important that it be kept perfectly dry during the process; should moisture happen to get to it, the surface must be again rendered quite dry by wiping it with amadou, after washing it with pure water or spirit, and finally by blasts of heated air from the air-syringe (Fig. 142).

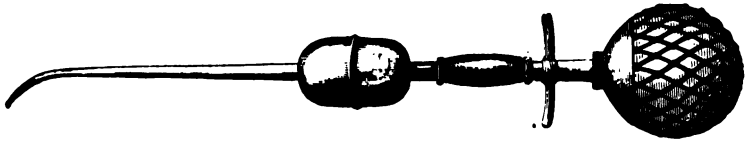


Fig. 142 shows a hot-air syringe (Moffatt's). In using it the metal air-chamber is heated in the flame of a spirit-lamp, and the air propelled through it becomes heated and dried.

The combination of soft with cohesive gold is, however, by far the preferable method, as the former can be more readily placed and driven into deep undercuts: it is also far better adapted to the cervical walls in approximal cavities. Since

annealed gold will cohere readily to the unannealed form, or retaining pits in the latter are readily obtained, a good starting point for the cohesive pellets can be thus made. A description of one or two of the more difficult cases may serve as good examples of this process of filling cavities with gold.

We will take a carious cavity of decay extending over the whole mesial wall of an upper incisor tooth, encroaching upon its labial and lingual surfaces, and up to but not beneath the gum. We first cut away all frail edges of enamel with fine chisels, which permits the cavity to be freely viewed in all parts for the removal of the decay and for filling, and at the same time renders the labial and lingual walls less liable to fracture. We next remove the decayed dentine, carefully avoiding the neighbourhood of the pulp, and for this purpose the spoon-shaped excavators will be found of excellent service (see Fig. 77, p. 116).

All decay having been carefully removed, the next step is to shape the cavity so that it will retain the filling securely. Sometimes there is sufficient left of the labial and lingual walls to admit of a slight groove being made all round, except at the cervical wall of the cavity, that being kept as flat as possible, for fear of leaving the thin enamel there to be split off with pressure, to which it is very liable. More often, however, it will be necessary to partly or wholly remove these walls, leaving a somewhat spoon-shaped cavity: in such a case anchorage is obtained for the filling by cutting two opposing angles, one of which may be termed the cervico-labial, and the other the cervico-lingual, angle, and a third good retaining angle or pit may be made between these towards the cusp of the tooth. If these three angles be cut sufficiently deep, though not so deep as to materially weaken the strength of the tooth-substance at such points, a perfectly secure hold for the filling will be obtained. To proceed with the filling: we take a soft cylinder of medium density, and place it, transverse to the long axis of the tooth, at the cervico-lingual angle, and with a fine foot-plugger press it against the lingual wall. If it will not lodge

there alone, we hold it in its place with another instrument held in the other hand, and insert a second cylinder, or a third, and a fourth if necessary, until the cervico-labial angle is reached, when, taking a larger foot-plugger, we press the whole mass towards the cervical wall. If the angles have been sufficiently and properly cut, they will be all-sufficient to hold firmly in place this bed of soft gold: if not, it must be firmly pressed there with an instrument in the left hand, until sufficient of the non-cohesive gold has been built on to allow of its being removed without any fear of the mass shifting its position. On this bed of soft gold cohesive pellets can be packed, each one being condensed with the mallet well up to, but not on to, the walls of the cavity, care being taken to see that the lingual edge is well perfected during the process, since this part is the most difficult to rectify afterwards: if it be not so, we keep the gold well out in the required contour, so as to do as much of the malleting in the long axis of the tooth as possible, as in this direction it will tolerate force better than in any other. If the angle at the junction of the lingual and labial walls, *i.e.* near the cusp of the tooth, be a deep one, then one or two small soft non-cohesive cylinders may be placed there on which the cohesive foil is to be built, and at this point it will be necessary to change the direction of the force to the transverse. The remainder of the operation is the piling on of cohesive pellets up to the contour of the tooth, letting it come well up to and over its edges: we then trim down with various forms of corundum wheels and files applicable, and polish with tape and polishing powders.

For our second example we will take the case of approximal decay on the anterior surface of an upper second bicuspid, extending from the crown to the gengival margin, the pulp not being invaded. In all these cases, whether the decay extends quite to the grinding surface or only nearly to it, it is best to cut right down from the crown with the enamel chisel, clearing away the undercut angles beneath the cusps, since by this means a much more effectual stopping can be made, as we get

rid of corners where it is most likely to fail from imperfect packing; also the whole of the cavity is well open to view.

We next remove all frail portions of the enamel as before, and shape the cavity either by so sloping the walls that the filling shall be retained like a carpenter's dovetail, or by making two lateral grooves which shall diverge as they proceed upwards. If it be decided to proceed on the former plan, small obtuse-angle chisels should be used, so cutting the lingual and labial walls that they shall converge in the direction of the neighbouring tooth and diverge in the upward direction, leaving the cervical wall quite flat, the enamel edge being slightly bevelled off. The cutting should be carried far enough upwards to form cervico-lingual and cervico-labial angles, that rounded form of cervical wall being thus removed which is so frequently a cause of rocking of the filling when partially completed.

Fig. 143 shows a cavity in a bicuspid tooth prepared for filling by the combined process, *i.e.*, with soft and cohesive gold foil.

Should any fissure of decay exhibit itself on the grinding surface, however slight, it must be cut out, as this will also add materially to the retention of the filling.

In inserting the gold much the same process is pursued as in the last mentioned case; large, soft, non-cohesive cylinders are placed at the cervical wall, with their cut ends projecting towards the neighbouring tooth, commencing at one angle and progressing to the other, when they are condensed towards the cervical wall: if the angles and walls have the proper form, this mass of gold will be held firmly in its place. Another row of soft cylinders may be placed on this if it be a deep cavity, and then condensed upwards in the same manner, about one-half the cavity being thus filled with non-cohesive gold.

On this cohesive pellets are packed in the usual manner, care being taken always to carry the condensing force well up to the tooth-substance. If a crown-fissure exist, this should be

also filled with cohesive gold, and united to that in the main cavity: we then file down and finish in the usual way.

Tin cylinders may be used instead of gold at the cervical wall, and especially in those cases where the decay extends below the gum;[1] tin having the advantage of remaining perfectly soft and adaptable after any amount of condensation, it can be better condensed and burnished on to the edge of a cervical wall than gold. It is sometimes well to partially finish the surface of the filling at the cervical wall when the filling is only half completed, as then it is more easily reached than when the whole plug has been finished and built out against the neighbouring tooth.

This plan is more especially advantageous when two contiguous fillings of this description are effected at one sitting; that is to say, we file or cut down with a chisel the superfluous filling from the upper half of both of them to the required level, leaving, however, the polishing of these parts until afterwards, and finishing as before.

In cases where the decay is small, and situated too high up on the proximal surface of a tooth to justify the cutting down from the crown, an opening may be made by cutting in from the labial or buccal wall, and shaping the cavity as before directed,—merely transposing its relative positions.

In attempting to draw any comparison between the two kinds of gold filling, it may be stated, that, whilst the cohesive is probably the more dense and solid, and less liable to wear or chip away, it is certainly less elastic, and more likely, as in the case of amalgams, to become, by changes of temperature, slightly detached from the walls of a cavity. The slight elasticity which a non-cohesive filling possesses compensates for any change of temperature.

We may venture, however, to lay down the rule, that, whilst

[1] We desire to make this statement with some reservation, as we have seen cases in which there has been an appearance of the filling, so performed, having failed from electro-chemical action at the point where the two metals came in contact.

the non-cohesive method is the best for small and fairly deep cavities, the cohesive method is decidedly the best for very large and for shallow ones. The majority of very large cavities filled with non-cohesive gold are seen to fail after a few years.

Gold, it must be admitted, when solid and highly polished, is in the front of the mouth very conspicuous. To obviate this, the following ingenious method has been adopted by some. Thin leaves of platina are gilded and made adhesive, and then are worked in parallel layers, and, when filed and polished, the colour of the combined metals resembles, to a very considerable degree, that of the teeth. The process must be conducted with considerable care; first in the annealing of the foil, as, if not heated sufficiently, it will not be adhesive, and, if a little over-heated, the gold readily melts off from the platina. A perfect parallelism of the layers must also be maintained, otherwise there will appear on the surface patches of gold.

CHAPTER VIII.

TREATMENT OF DENTAL CARIES—*continued.*

We must now describe some of the difficulties and complications not unfrequently met with in the operation of filling teeth.

First, with regard to the position of the cavity; it may be so placed that no justifiable employment of the chisel or file can obtain room for the insertion of the stopping, or, indeed, for the proper excavation of the cavity. To effect our object, then, the teeth must be separated, and this separation may be either immediate or mediate. The immediate method consists in taking a thinly-pointed wedge of wood, inserting its point between the teeth where lies the cavity, near to or even a little below the gum, and then giving to the wedge a smart blow or blows with a mallet until sufficient space is attained: a portion of each projecting end is then cut off with cutting pliers. The sensation to the patient is by no means agreeable, and the operation, if performed without due caution, may endanger the vitality of the teeth, or even liberate one of them from its alveolus, to the vexation of patient and operator. We do not recommend the plan as so pursued, but we may often, especially where no very great or increased amount of room is required, obtain it by simply pressing steadily with the fingers a similar wedge of wood cut from a piece of soft deal, which has been firmly compressed in a strong vice for some hours: such a wedge will expand when moistened, but the force is gradual and even, not sudden and violent. If the room so afforded be not sufficient, the wedge may be cut close to the teeth and gum, and left *in situ* for a day or two, then changed for a larger one,

and so on, till sufficient space is attained, which space is soon lost after discontinuance of the wedge. Where the rubber-dam is not employed, the wedge, from its position, serves the useful purpose of preventing moisture from the gum having access to the cavity, and, by forming an artificial ledge, often assists in retaining the gold first inserted at the cervical edge of the cavity. Instead of the wedge, strips of india-rubber may be employed, but in our experience these cause more irritation and discomfort than the wood. Cotton pressed between the teeth and changed daily will in a little time effect a considerable separation in the teeth, and gutta-percha likewise will so act upon them when packed closely between two teeth. The last-mentioned is a convenient plan when a second visit is not obtainable for some three to six months. A cavity in a tooth thus situated may be excavated as far as possible, and gutta-percha introduced and left projecting against the adjoining tooth. We have never seen injury arise from the gutta-percha in contact with the sound tooth, but, if cotton be used, it should be moistened with alcohol or Eau de Cologne before being applied.

From the manner in which we have spoken of the operation of excision, and the excavation of cavities in carious teeth for receiving fillings, it might almost be imagined that we had to deal with structures as free from sensation as hair, nails, &c. Unfortunately it is mostly otherwise; dentine is often acutely sensitive, and its excision so unbearable that no other than a very enduring patient can tolerate the process; and this perhaps constitutes one of the greatest, if not the greatest, difficulty which the dental surgeon has to encounter in his conservative efforts. The cause of this æsthesia, though perhaps not a finally settled point, is generally admitted to depend upon the contents of those minute canals,—the dentinal tubuli,—which ramify from the pulp-chamber to, and often beyond, the peripheral surface of the dentine. At first regarded as solid fibres, then as tubes conveying nutritive fluid, they were shown by J. Tomes to be tubes, containing soft semi-solid contents, and, like nerve-filaments, capable of conducting sensory impressions. Later

research has shown them to be prolongations of those cell-like bodies, the odontoblasts, which are arranged in a layer on the outer surface of the pulp, and appear so intimately concerned in the formation of dentine. Their union with the nerves which ramify throughcut the pulp has not yet been clearly established: they may, as Boll [1] conjectures, but has not been able to verify, be so united within the dentinal tubuli; and this, we believe, we have made out in the pulp of a calf; or it may be through the stellate cells of the pulp itself.

With respect to the odontoblasts, we are inclined to accord to them another function besides the important one of assisting in the development of dentine, viz., a special sensory property like that of touch-corpuscles, Pacinian bodies, rods and cones of the retina, the olfactory cells, and various similar bodies in the auditory apparatus, all connected with nerves, and which in the teeth renders them capable of judging, and somewhat accurately, of the nature of bodies which come under their action,—the difference between a crisp rusk and a fragment of cinder being directly distinguished, and thus enabling them to act as guardians to the delicate structures of the alimentary canal. To determine the exact position of the food during mastication, it seems essential that the teeth should be sensory organs, conveying nervous influence by branches to the same centre that receives impressions from all structures and parts concerned in the process, viz., lips, tongue, cheeks, and floor and roof of mouth, &c., whilst the muscles which are concerned in the movements should be controlled and harmonised by a common centre. That the process is almost purely a reflex one, and can be conducted without the aid of the cerebrum, is evidenced by the manner in which the act is performed by anacephalous monsters.[2] Whatever the physiological explanation may be, and we doubt not that the foregoing is an

[1] *Arch.* 1, *Mikrosk. Anat.* iv. 1868.

[2] It is an undoubted fact, that persons who have artificial teeth supplied to them find at first considerable difficulty in ascertaining when their food has been sufficiently comminuted.

approximation to the truth, the practical, unpleasant fact exists that dentine is generally a highly sensitive structure, and in many cases is probably pathologically hyperæsthetic. It often appears intensely sensitive when first touched by an instrument, but becomes less so after a little time, which may arise from the nerves becoming exhausted by frequent irritation. Often when it is cut in one direction, say from right to left, the pain is unendurable: when the movement is reversed from left to right it becomes endurable. Many applications have from time to time been advocated as capable of reducing this sensitiveness: chloroform, carbolic acid, creosote, and aconite, at times mitigate it [1] so much as to bring it within bearable limits, but generally have little effect other than that of encouraging the patient to more endurance. Where, however, the sensitiveness compels us to desist, we may induce our patients themselves to apply a solution of tannin in ether; [2] or we may dress the tooth with creosote and morphia, covered over with cotton steeped in mastich-varnish, which should be changed about every four or five days: the spirit of the varnish leaves it on account of its greater affinity for the fluids of the mouth than for the mastich, which latter is left incorporated in the meshes of the cotton, and makes a useful temporary stopping for some days. The application of very small quantities of arsenious acid has been recommended, but there is some danger of the pulp being compromised in the process, its object being the destruction only of the contents of the dentinal tubuli. To obviate the trouble and unpleasantness of such applications as those above mentioned, we may resort to temporary fillings. Those varieties of gutta-percha compounds which are most readily softened by heat are very serviceable, and their efficacy may be increased by placing

[1] The last we have found the best. All are applied on very small dossils of cotton to the sensitive surface only.

[2] R. Acidi tannici ʒiij
Ætheris ℥j
M. ft. applicatio.

To be applied on cotton, and changed two or three times daily.

them over small discs of card moistened with creosote or carbolic acid. They may be left in from one month to three months, when the tooth will probably be found much less sensitive. No application that we know of attains the end in view so certainly as the oxychloride of zinc, but its application may be attended with severe pain; still it can be borne in most cases, and for this the preparation vended as Fletcher's is the best; for, not containing any hardening foreign material, it is much the easiest to remove, which should be done after one to three months.

However careful we may be in removing the softened dentine, we at times cannot avoid exposing the dental pulp, especially when it is abnormally situated, as is occasionally the case in upper incisor teeth. The pain inflicted generally, but not always, indicates to us what has happened, and the cavity of the tooth becomes filled with blood. The blood being staunched with a little carbolic acid or solution of tannin, and the cavity having been completed, a small cap of metal of concavo-convex form may be laid, the concave surface over the exposed spot, and the filling completed as if no such occurrence had happened. Instead of metal (gold, tin, lead) quill or card caps may be used, or we may touch the exposed spot with strong nitric acid, and, without capping, fill over with foil, taking care so to place a large and firm cylinder over the exposed spot, that it may be condensed without touching the pulp.[1]

The process of capping is likewise employed with advantage wherever the disease has so far encroached upon the pulp that we have reason to suspect that only a thin layer of dentine intervenes, and where the irritation of a metallic filling, through such close proximity or changes of temperature, might lead to irritation, if not destruction, of that organ; and this is especially desirable in the treatment of the teeth of young persons.

But the pulp may have become exposed in the progress of the disease, and, when this is the case, its surface is almost in-

[1] The practice, we believe, of Bogue, of New York.

variably found to present an ulcerated condition, most difficult to be made to heal over, and excreting a thin sanious and offensive fluid, most resembling perhaps the puriform fluids exuded from gangrenous parts. As before noticed (see p. 91), this fluid is commonly spoken of as pus; but, although pus may sometimes be found in the pulp-cavity, it differs greatly from that bland, cell-formed excretion. Whilst the ulcerated surface of the pulp continues to excrete this or any other fluid, no attempt to hermetically close up the cavity must be attempted; for the fluid, continuing to form, and having no outlet, would press back upon the pulp, and those painful conditions, generally culminating in severe alveolar abscess, would ensue, which are but too well known to patients as well as to practitioners. A few years ago it was the general custom to treat by destruction almost all cases of exposure of the pulp by disease, and not a few even of those of exposure by the excavator. The process is a convenient one to the practitioner, as it leaves a tooth which may be afterwards excavated without sensation into any requisite convenient shape for filling. Experience, however, having proved that a large percentage of such cases do, after a time, become liable to periodontal irritation and inflammation with its results, more conservative plans have been adopted, and, when those have failed, there is generally the *dernier ressort* left, of destruction of the pulp. Since the introduction of carbolic acid and the zinc oxychlorides, a larger number of pulps have no doubt been preserved, and with considerable comfort to the patient. The proceeding consists in removing all the softened dentine, and then well dosing the exposed pulp with carbolic acid;[1] over the pulp is then placed a cap of thin address-card or stiff paper, also moistened with carbolic acid, and this is covered by a larger cap, coated on one side with mastich-varnish to cause it to adhere, and also to prevent any of the oxychloride from reaching the pulp, with which compound the filling is completed. If such a filling be

[1] A good form is the pure crystallised acid, rendered fluid by a few drops of chloroform.

removed after some months, the pulp may be found exposed, living, and free from discharge; or it may be found still exposed and discharging, in which case the discharge has relieved itself into, and even through, the porous oxychloride, which will be found saturated with it; or it may be found to have lost its vitality. Under the first conditions it may now be capped over and filled permanently; under the second, the process must be repeated or the pulp destroyed; under the third, the dead pulp must be removed, and the fangs, as well as the pulp-cavity, filled in the method to be shortly described. For some years we have adopted a plan which has yielded excellent results, and by means of which the pulp, and consequently the vitality of the tooth, is preserved, whilst the tooth is permanently filled at the same time; and it is more especially suited to cases in which the exposed pulp, say, of a molar tooth, is found of a crimson colour, freely exposed, and even granulating into the carious cavity beyond the pulp-cavity,—an early stage of polypus of the pulp, and a condition in which the attempt at preservation by carbolic acid is seldom successful, and destruction by arsenious acid often tedious and uncertain. The softened dentine having been cleared away, and the cavity otherwise prepared, the sensitiveness of the exposed pulp is lessened by a free application of carbolic acid, and then a small disc of card, but little larger than the exposed surface, and well saturated with the strongest nitric acid, is laid gently upon it, and so retained for about half a minute: at times a sensation like tooth-ache, but never severe, is felt for a few minutes afterwards. After removal of the nitric acid, a cap of thick paper, moistened with carbolic acid, is placed over the pulp, and, if the tooth is to be filled with foil, over the paper cap one of metal, concave on the pulp surface, to guard the pulp from all pressure: the filling is then completed as if no exposure of the pulp had existed. The same process may be adopted in the case of an amalgam filling, but it will be found a good plan to give a coating of oxychloride over the first paper cap in the place of the metal one; and this is best done by keeping such caps in readiness, as there is then no

danger of moist oxychloride getting access to the pulp. The oxychloride being an inferior conductor of heat to metal, there will be less chance of irritation due to changes of temperature. In almost all cases where we have had the opportunity of seeing the result of this treatment, we have found the pulp alive and apparently healthy, but never calcified.

In the place of nitric acid the actual cautery may be employed (Fig. 145), the best form being the galvanic, in which a bent platina wire is maintained at a white heat. After destroying a portion of the surface of the pulp by the heated wire, we proceed as in the treatment after the application of nitric acid.

We have spoken of hypertrophy of the pulp when exposed by disease. In many cases, especially those of extensive caries on masticating surfaces, the pulp becomes enlarged to several times its own normal dimensions, extending to the level of the crowns of adjoining teeth. It presents a pale rose colour, and is tender when pressed upon, but not nearly as much so as an ordinarily exposed pulp; it bleeds freely when touched, and excretes a fluid of most offensive odour, often tainting the breath considerably. A section shows its surface to be covered with very regularly arranged papillæ, but we have not been able to make out any special secreting glands. In most cases the teeth thus affected are too far destroyed to induce us to attempt their preservation, but, in cases where it has been considered worth while, we have generally by the following plan succeeded. We first dose the growth with carbolic acid to deaden its sensitiveness, and then, with a scythe-shaped lancet, cut away as much of it as possible. After the bleeding has ceased, we carry out precisely the nitric acid process above described.

When it is deemed expedient to destroy the pulp, this may be effected immediately or mediately. The former is only suitable in cases where the pulp can be easily reached, notably in cases of fractured single-fanged teeth. A thin barbed instrument of soft steel (Fig. 144) is passed along the pulp to its extremity, rotated and withdrawn, bringing with it the contents of pulp and fang cavities. It is mostly an intensely painful

process without an anæsthetic. A white hot steel instrument causes much less pain, as does also a fine splinter of wood previously dipped in strong nitric acid. In most cases we resort to the mediate process, which consists in applying some strong escharotic, as chloride of zinc, nitrate of silver, or caustic potash, or irritant, such as

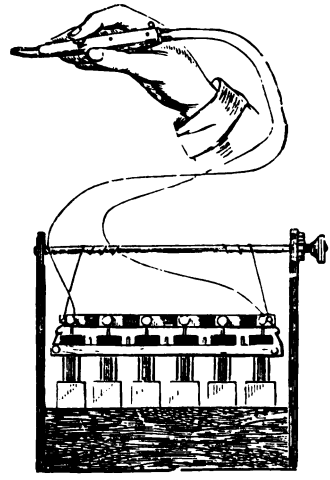


Fig. 145 shows the galvanic cautery. The portion held in the hand is constructed of ivory, and insulates the wires from the battery, which terminate in a loop of fine platina wire: the latter becomes white hot when the battery is in action.

arsenic, to the surface of the pulp. The latter is the agent most employed, and the process is best accomplished as follows:— The softened dentine being removed, it is essential to have the pulp freely exposed, and, although the process is painful, it is little to the agony experienced when, from insufficient exposure, the inflamed and swelling pulp becomes compressed in the

Fig. 144 shows barbed nerve-extractors made of soft steel for removal of dental pulps.

Fig. 146 shows a lancet of convenient form for excising a polypus either of the dental pulp or of the gum.

unyielding pulp-cavity: the frequent application of carbolic acid generally renders it tolerable, whilst it at the same time staunches the bleeding. Upon the pulp now freely exposed is gently laid a small disc of card, saturated with carbolic acid, and having attached to its pulp-surface about $\frac{1}{20}$ to $\frac{1}{16}$ of a grain of pure arsenious acid. The moistened card readily takes up the acid when laid upon it. The cavity is now lightly but carefully filled up with a little bees'-wax softened by heat. The patient should be seen the next day, and, on removal of the wax and card, the pulp will be generally found free, or almost free, from sensitiveness, although it not unfrequently bleeds freely when the fine-barbed nerve-extractors are inserted into the fang-cavities, gently rotated, and withdrawn, having attached to them, it may be hoped, the contents of the fang-cavities, all of which should be thoroughly removed. Should the patient not be seen again for some days after the application of the arsenic, the pulp will probably be found softened, devitalised, and not vascular. Some deem it very important that the patient should be seen the next day, having a fear that the arsenic may in time get access to the system, a view the absurdity of which is manifest when we recollect that the amount applied, and locally to a structure destitute of absorbents, is seldom more than the full dose administered to a patient internally in the course of a day, and bears no comparison to the quantities applied externally in the destruction of a malignant growth. Nevertheless due care should be exercised that none of the agent finds its way directly to the mouth. In cases when the patient cannot be seen for some weeks after the application of the arsenic, it will be best, after placing it upon the pulp, to cover it with a concave metal cap, and then fill over with Hill's gutta-percha stopping: cases thus treated often remain well for years. Arsenious acid has probably two kinds of action when applied to soft living tissues; one, escharotic, in which it destroys vitality by forming compounds with their albuminous constituents; and the other, as a powerful irritant, exciting severe

inflammation; and it is generally believed that it is chiefly the latter action, which, terminating in sphacelus, causes destruction of vitality in the dental pulp. Arsenious acid has also, as is well known, a powerful antiseptic action, and is unequalled in preventing for lengthened periods the decomposition of animal substances; hence the pulp, though destroyed, is seldom

Fig. 147 shows a form of instruments for removing the disorganised contents of a pulp-cavity.

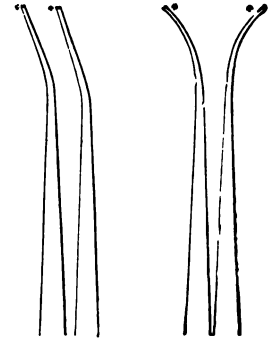


Fig. 148 shows pluggers of a fine form for filling fang-cavities with foil.

found putrid after its action, and this property may, as we shall see, be turned to good account in certain troublesome cases. To resume: the fang-cavities being cleared out,—no easy matter in the case of lower molars,—they should be filled up, and, though gold may be employed in certain easy cases, it is better to use the oxychloride of zinc, mixed rather fluid, and incorporated with finely-chopped cotton wool; this must be worked into the fangs by a sort of pumping action, by which means the air is pressed out and the stopping pressed in; the oxychloride being powerfully antiseptic, little hurt is likely to accrue if any small particles of soft tissue be left in the fang-cavities. If gold be used, it is well to wash out the fang-cavities with carbolic acid or creosote before attempting to insert it.

Occasionally, though rarely, and more especially in single-fang teeth, we may find that the pulp has undergone a species of dry gangrene, and on removal appears free from unpleasant-

ness, and of a pithy consistency; the tooth has not changed colour, and the periodontal membrane appears perfectly healthy, showing that the tooth, though possessing no vitality except probably at its cementum, is no cause of irritation to surrounding tissues. In other cases we may find that the whole of the dental pulp has sloughed away, leaving the surrounding dentine softened, but not putrid, both of which classes of cases we should treat precisely as if we had removed the pulp. It may, however, happen that, whilst the pulp has sloughed away, the canal-cavities are filled with puriform fluids, the dentine itself being moist and very offensive; and it is rare to find, in such cases, freedom from periodontal irritation, caused no doubt by the presence of septic substance. Such cases have been usually treated by the frequent application of strong antiseptics, carbolic acid and creosote, alone, or mixed with iodine, being the favourites; but for some years we have employed arsenious acid, as with one application we have obtained more certain results than with ten or twenty applications of those above mentioned: we simply clear out the pulp-cavity, wash out with carbolic acid, and apply the arsenic precisely as if for destruction of a pulp, laying the application over the orifice or orifices of the fang-cavities, and then filling over with oxychloride of zinc. If the latter be removed after two or three months, the pulp and fang cavities will generally be found dry and perfectly sweet; indeed, we believe that there is really no necessity for fang-filling in these cases, as the arsenic effectually renders their contents incapable of further decomposition; but upon this point we would speak with reserve.

We have thus treated many cases permanently at the first sitting, and, so far as time has permitted, we may speak most favourably of the results. In such cases only part of the cavity has been filled with the oxychloride, the remainder with foil or amalgam. In very many of the cases slight periodontal irritation, which previously existed, has disappe red, the teeth becoming again fully serviceable for mastication. In treating upon the subject of discharging pulps, the student cannot be

too forcibly impressed with the importance of always ascertaining whether such condition exists previous to inserting a filling into a tooth: the cavity may deceive, from being shallow and at a distance from the pulp, and may yet communicate with it by a very fine channel. During the progress of excavation, clean cotton wool should be more than once introduced into the cavity, and, when it has been removed, the sense of smell will seldom fail to detect any existence of discharge. Liability to the opposite error may, however, arise in cavities close to, or below, the gum, where the latter has bled and its serum become decomposed in the cavity, when the same stench is afforded. In such doubtful cases the cavity may be purified by permanganate of potash, and then after a little time fresh cotton applied, which will be sweet or otherwise, according as discharge exists or not. A ready but less perfect means of treating cases where discharge exists in the fang-cavities, consists in capping over the pulp-cavity, and at once filling the tooth, after which a fine hole is drilled either through the side of the tooth just below and through the margin of the gum, or through the filling itself into the pulp-cavity: the process of decay, though not wholly arrested, is thus very much retarded, whilst the discharge obtains a free outlet, and generally after a few years ceases to be secreted.

Fig. 149 shows drills to be employed with the dental engine, suitable for drilling into the pulp-cavity of a tooth.

The same process may be adopted when pain comes on after a tooth has been filled, especially if it be conjectured that the pulp has perished, when the gases and fluids generated will obtain an outlet.[1] Hullihen has recommended our doing so in cases where we may believe the pulp to be still living: we have drilled into a living pulp on a few occasions, and on the whole with benefit to the patients, thereby no doubt relieving the tension of the organ.

[1] An operation more than a century old, and now most readily accomplished with the burr-engine.

In most cases, however, where pain is set up in a tooth that has been filled, especially if it be constant and increasing, we shall do best to remove the stopping, and ascertain, if possible, its cause. We may find that exposure of the pulp at a certain spot existed, and has been overlooked, for it is quite possible for a pulp to be exposed and yet excrete no unpleasant discharge, as we have occasionally found to be the case. It may prove, as in the case of amalgams especially, that changes of temperature readily conducted through them have led to irritation of the not far distant pulp; or even in the case of an amalgam which expands slightly in setting, the adjoining dentine may have thus suffered from pressure. In the two latter cases, the substitution of a gutta-percha filling, for a time, in the place of the metallic one, will be the safest course to pursue.

Pain, of a moderate amount, may come on at intervals in a tooth in which we may have good reason to believe that none of the above-mentioned causes exist. Coming into a warm room, suddenly moving the head, as in stooping or going down stairs, and also being exhausted or fatigued, especially during fasting, may seem to excite it. Under such conditions we may surmise that the pulp is subject to occasional congestions, the explanation, we presume, of what is termed an irritable pulp. For the relief of these cases we have found no class of remedies so serviceable as counter-irritants, and that which we most employ is a saturated solution of chloride of ammonium in water, rubbed upon the surrounding gum. Experiment has shown that for a considerable distance below the spot at which a blister has been applied the various structures, and not essentially all of those which receive their blood from the same source, are more anæmic than normal, which explains the action of counter-irritants in relieving congestion.

Many other conditions not enumerated will at times crop up, to interfere with or even defeat the best and most patient efforts of the operator. Cramp in the jaws, from wide distension, is a trouble from which some patients suffer much, at times relieved by their having a prop to bite upon, which is often a

comfort also to those whose mouths are kept long open. Very small mouths, or rather mouths with very small openings, considerably obstruct an operator; but that which is perhaps worse than any of the above-mentioned peculiarities, is the tendency of some patients to faint as soon as an operation is attempted: we have best succeeded with these at an early period of the day, *i.e.* soon after breakfast and the night's rest.

The teeth of very young people, however carefully filled, have a strong tendency to an extension of the mischief around the fillings. We have seen some of the most excellent fillings fail thus, though made by operators of the highest reputation. We believe that it will be found good practice to fill the teeth of these first with either the zinc-chlorides or zinc-phosphates, which, probably from their making perfectly water-tight fillings, have a tendency to harden the tooth in the neighbourhood of the filling. In strong teeth, though it be very desirable, it is not absolutely imperative that a filling should be perfectly water-tight. If we select from amongst the teeth which we have removed some which have been filled with gold or amalgam for a number of years, and in which the fillings still appear quite perfect, and immerse them for some time in a coloured fluid which is a chemical compound, *i.e.* not merely a coloured body held in suspension,—Draper's ink answers the purpose very well,—we shall, on removing the teeth, and splitting them across the filled spots, almost invariably find that the colour has penetrated between the stopping and the cavity. It would seem, therefore, that the presence of more solid substance is essential, in strong teeth at least, to the progress of caries, which favours the opinion we have expressed with regard to it (see p. 100).

In those whose teeth have on the whole stood well, changes in the constitution may have a great effect for the worse, and amongst these pregnancy is undoubtedly the most common. Women who have had excellent teeth up to the period of a first pregnancy, often lose them one after another, and usually with considerable suffering, especially if a family come very fast.

Various explanations have been offered, none of which appear to us so satisfactory as that the secretions of the mouth are altered in character, and the teeth have their power of resistance lessened. Again, we have seen teeth in young persons, which we have pronounced excellent, become completely altered in character after an attack of one of the exanthemata, especially scarlatina. Great mental strain is another cause of teeth taking on sudden and rapid decay, and this is well illustrated in the case of those who have been working for some time for severe competitive examinations. A visit abroad, notwithstanding the general good done to the system, often has a deleterious influence upon the teeth, and a short residence in Switzerland is so marked in this respect, that we cannot but believe it to be due to certain local conditions, probably the water. On the other hand, a residence in some countries has the opposite effect, and we believe we may say without contradiction, that residence for a time in India or China, the former especially, proves beneficial to these organs. In treating teeth which have suffered from the above-mentioned causes, we shall find the ordinary metallic fillings most unsatisfactory, and we shall employ to most advantage the zinc-phosphate or gutta-percha, until we can conclude that the abnormal conditions have to a great extent passed off. A most careful employment of the tooth-brush after every meal must be inculcated, and the ammonia and spirit-mixture spoken of (see p. 22) may be used with advantage.

In the present chapter we have incidentally spoken of almost all the abnormal conditions which may occur to the dental pulp. Some writers have considered it desirable to attempt to classify them, and to define each at some length. We believe such attempt to be more likely to confuse the dental student than to aid him, at least in his practical work: his treatment of a tooth will probably never be influenced by his considering the question,—is the pulp in this case in a congested condition only, or may it be in a state of chronic inflammation? He can obtain but at most a very imperfect knowledge of

its condition, enclosed as it is in its bony surroundings, unless it be at some spot exposed to view, and he will then act, in nine out of ten instances, according to the appearance that it presents, whether for its preservation or for its destruction. If for the purposes of an Examination such knowledge be deemed requisite, we would simply remind the student that the dental pulp is very liable to all those conditions and stages that are to be met with in delicate structures largely supplied with nerves and blood-vessels, comprehended under the general designation of inflammation, which we shall dwell upon in connection with the subject of the following chapter.

CHAPTER IX.

PERIODONTITIS.

INFLAMMATION of the periosteum of the tooth—the periodontal or alveolo-dental[1] membrane—is, as has been already pointed out, a very common sequence to caries, and therefore a description of its symptoms, pathology, and treatment naturally follows that of the latter disease. It occurs in both the acute and chronic forms, sometimes commencing in the former and terminating in the latter, and *vice versâ*. Although by far most frequently the result of dental caries, it at times appears with apparently perfectly sound teeth; it is also a concomitant of stomatitis, whether of idiopathic, rheumatic, syphilitic, or mercurial or other medicinal origin. As a concomitant of dental caries its origin is probably due to the presence of septic matter generated by a decomposing pulp, which may come into direct contact with the membrane itself, or may, through the dentine and cementum, so influence it; or may, as some have supposed, affect it through the vessels which supply both the pulp and the alveolo-dental membrane. It is possible, when occurring to a perfectly sound tooth without any conditions which may account for it, that it may arise from embolism of the nutrient vessels of the pulp; when due to rheumatism or syphilis, it no doubt arises from depositions, the result of those affections, which have a predilection or affinity for such fibrous structures. Cold or violence may in this, as in any other structure, be the

[1] The Latin term has been adopted by C. S. Tomes, as it explains more correctly the true nature of this structure.

proximate cause of inflammation. The symptoms of acute periodontitis are generally of the following character, as we have ourselves experienced it, which agrees in the main with the description given by other writers.

In the first place, a tooth becomes the subject of attention on account of peculiar and uncomfortable, rather than of painful, sensations. It soon appears to be slightly elongated, *i.e.* extruded from its socket, and also slightly loosened, which is the case, for, on closing the mouth, it can be felt to be pressed into its socket, and on opening the mouth it seems to part from its antagonist with a sensation of stickiness. Biting on the tooth at this stage appears to afford comfort, although it probably by no means improves the condition of matters. It may happen that recovery takes place at this, the first stage, although the disease more frequently runs on to another, in which the result of pressure is anything but agreeable; and this tenderness increases until even the slightest attempt to close the mouth, and even contact with the tongue, becomes intolerable. Independently of that caused by pressure, pain of a constant character, varied only by an aggravation at each pulsation, is experienced, which generally continues, it may be for some days, until a swelling appears in the neighbourhood of the tooth, or some adjacent part, when, as a rule, there is a considerable mitigation. Subsequently the swelling becomes more defined and prominent at one part,—the pointing of an abscess,—which bursts and evacuates the matter it contains, when a still greater mitigation of all the unpleasant symptoms is experienced. It is generally some little time before the swelling entirely disappears, or the discharge ceases to be secreted: often for years afterwards a small fistulous opening remains, through which small quantities of pus, increased through cold, gastric disturbance, &c., find their way to the surface.

Of all the teeth, the lateral incisors of the upper jaw appear the most liable to attacks of acute periodontitis. The fact has been pointed out, but the reason not explained. When it attacks these, the upper lip usually becomes considerably

swollen, as does also the facial depression formed by the myrtiform fossa, and that to the outer side of the nasal process of the superior maxilla; the swelling often extending up to the lower eyelid, with considerable ecchymosis at this part. There may, on the other hand, be little or no swelling on the anterior portions of the jaw, but there may be considerable in the palate, extending quite as far as the limits of the hard palate. No teeth are, we believe, so likely to cause the palatal swellings as the upper lateral incisors, which swellings often exist for a considerable time, when the cause of their existence has apparently been removed. Swellings in the same positions may arise from any of the upper six front teeth, and pus may evacuate itself anteriorly over the apices of their roots, or in the palate, or into the nares, and more rarely upon the surface of the face. In the case of the bicuspids and molars, the matter generally points over the roots on the external alveolar wall, where the bone is thinnest; occasionally it appears on the inner surface of the cheek opposite to the tooth, and not far from Stenon's duct: it probably takes this course when the matter is formed above the inner fibrous covering to the buccinator muscle. From these teeth also pus may evacuate in the palate, especially when the mischief pertains chiefly to the palatine fangs of the molars.

In the lower jaw, such abscesses, occurring from incisors and cuspidati, whilst generally opening near the apices of their fangs on the external alveolar surface opposite to the lower lip, occasionally point on the outer surface under the chin: more rarely they do so on the inner surface of the alveolus about the root of the tongue. Abscesses from the bicuspids and molars most commonly open on the external alveolar surface, about the apices of their roots, but also very frequently on the external surface, not far from the angle of the jaw; and these, if permitted to continue, give rise to an unsightly puckered scar, not unfrequently resembling and mistaken for the result of a strumous abscess. The abscesses set up by the lower third molars are the most severe and formidable in their character and results. We have witnessed, as such, a mass of

brawny tissue extending from the angle of the jaw to the clavicle, the structures matted together, and infiltrated with pus flowing from several orifices, all characteristic of well-marked phlegmonous erysipelas. Occasionally, but happily rarely, such abscesses open into the pharynx or œsophagus; and a case of evacuation into the trachea, attended with a fatal result, has been recorded by G. Pollock.

The pathology of periodontitis has been variously described, but we believe that the following account of its nature and progress, which may differ in some respects from the views of others, will be found, upon the whole, in accordance with the

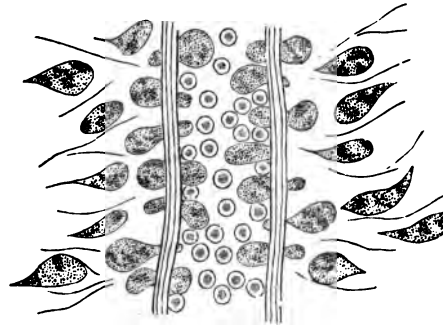


Fig. 150 represents the passage of the white blood-corpuscles through the walls of a blood-vessel, and their subsequent migration between the fibres of the surrounding connective tissue. The red and white blood-cells are not represented in their due proportions, as this would obscure the chief point we desire to illustrate.

conditions as they present themselves. Owing to the causes already alluded to, viz., cold, violence, the extension of previous inflammation in adjacent parts, the presence of obnoxious material in the form of rheumatic or syphilitic deposits, but more especially of septic material, the alveolo-dental membrane suffers irritation at certain spots. This irritation results in those changes which have been so industriously studied in the web of the frog's foot, wing of the bat, mesentery of the frog, tail of the fish, &c. The vessels at the irritated spot, whether primarily contracted or not, become dilated, whilst the blood which they contain becomes retarded in its flow, with complete

stagnation at certain points: without the limits of the area of irritation the vessels are dilated, and the circulation more than normally active. This probably constitutes the stage of congestion of the alveolo-dental membrane, which becomes enlarged in consequence, and this enlargement can only be effected by an elevation of the tooth in its socket; hence also the apparent looseness of the tooth. Pressure on the tooth at this period forces the blood from the dilated vessels of the membrane, and hence no doubt the comfort experienced by this act. In the next stage, at the stagnant parts, the vessels become crowded and finally blocked up with the red corpuscles which adhere to their walls, whilst the white corpuscles, in like manner adherent, are seen in increased quantity: these latter put forth processes which penetrate the walls of the vessels, and, enlarging on the outer sides of the vessels, and diminishing on the inner, thus transport their contents or substance through them (Fig. 150): when free, the cells travel towards the irritated spots by aid of their amœboid contractility, the changes in the surrounding connective tissue, by the softening and fusion of its fibres, rendering their passage more easy. Besides the passage of the white blood-cells, serum more or less considerable in quantity has passed out of the vessels into the surrounding tissue, and probably by its presence and pressure gives rise to the pain experienced at this stage, when biting on the tooth can no longer simply empty the vessels of their surplus quantity of blood, but causes abnormal pressure on the hyperæsthetic nerves.

In the next stage, we get a rapid cell-proliferation at the spots of chief irritation, accompanied also no doubt by a similar proliferation of the cells of the adjacent connective tissue, and these formations, taking place within hard and unyielding surroundings, account for the constant pain increased by the further pressure of each pulsation before alluded to. But the ever present connective tissue of the body, not excluding bone itself, shares in the process of suppuration, until finally the external surroundings become involved: we discard the idea of a pyogenic membrane, which on the

one side possesses a property of secreting pus, and on the other a property of absorbing adjacent tissues. When the bone is lost, the pressure of the mass of cells with the products of their fatty degeneration—pus—readily distends the softer tissues of the mucous membrane, and with this swelling and lessening of pressure comes a general relief from pain. A continuance of the process causes a like breaking-down towards the surface; in such direction probably because the tissues most remote from their blood-supply possess the least power of resistance until only the epithelial covering is left, which speedily gives way and the matter is evacuated. The amount of matter formed in an alveolar abscess varies considerably, about half a teacup-ful being sometimes evacuated at the first opening, whilst, for some days following, the discharge may be considerable: after a time it may heal up by granulation, but its doing so rapidly, or otherwise, will much depend upon the nature of its first cause: thus, if it has been due to the presence of septic matter, the result of a necrosed tooth, so long as this remains so long will pus in smaller or greater quantities be secreted. When such abscesses open externally, as in the case of the lower molars especially, an opportunity is afforded for seeing for how long a time after the opening of the abscess pus continues to exude, drop by drop, from the fistulous orifice, which consists of a mass of granulations of nipple form, whilst the surrounding structures are glued to the bone by adhesions which have undergone contraction, presenting a most unsightly spectacle.[1]

[1] A rare consequence of a dental fistula may be a salivary fistula. A case of this kind came under our notice many years ago, in the person of a male adult, and when we were attached to the Metropolitan Free Hospital. The dental fistula which arose from the root of a lower tooth had been in existence for some time, and, when the root was removed, the opening remained patent and the saliva continually flowed through it. A probe introduced through the opening in the cheek passed readily into the open alveolus of the tooth. By freeing the surroundings of the opening from the bone to which they were adherent, and paring its edges, the opening was readily closed by a silver wire suture, and healed up without trouble.

The general symptoms are those which are included under the term pyrexia; such as an elevation of the temperature, a quickened, full, and incompressible pulse, a dry tongue thickly coated with brown fur, thirst, head-ache, absence of appetite, urine scanty and high-coloured, and bowels usually constipated.

The treatment will of course be local and general. In the early or first stage, when the act of biting upon the tooth gives a sense of comfort, the application of continued warmth, which is best accomplished by means of poppy or camomile decoctions a little warmer than the temperature of the mouth, and held within it, will often afford relief and occasionally arrest further progress. Cold, no doubt, might effect the same result, and probably more expeditiously, but it is almost impossible to apply cold continuously to the mouth, and a frequent alternation of temperature is worse than useless. Cold most probably, by causing a contraction of the vessels at the part congested, as well as a lessening of the active vital changes, restricts the process: warmth, on the other hand, has the opposite tendency, viz., to promote and augment those changes and conditions which are a part of inflammatory processes, especially of cell-activity and proliferation; but then it encourages a more healthy circulation in the stagnant vessels, and thus lessens the congestion and tendency to exudation and cell-migration. Cold, to be effective, must be applied very early, and continuously maintained, until a cure is effected. In a small burn, such as the dropping of ignited sealing-wax upon the finger, which ordinarily produces a blister and painful sore, if the part be immediately plunged into cold water, intense relief is experienced; and, if it be kept there long enough, no blister will appear, or other usual consequences of such an injury.

In the second stage, where we have reason to believe that exudation is taking place, the application of one or two leeches to the gum over the external alveolus, corresponding to the apex of the fang of the tooth, is often productive of great relief, the tooth generally appearing to recede again into its socket; indeed, the same remedy may be employed with benefit,

if it be considered worth the trouble, in the first stage. The bleeding should be encouraged, after the leech has ceased sucking, with warm water, within moderate limits, and when it has quite ceased, the poppy or camomile fomentation may be continuously used. It is never well to apply the fomentation or poultices to the external surface, for, although they undoubtedly afford relief, they render the tendency greater for an abscess to open on such surface. In the second stage, if it has not been seen to in the first, the bowels should be well opened; the whole trouble having probably arisen as much from a systemic as from a local cause. We often remove teeth in which there has never been other than the inflammation which would have been caused by the simplest irritants, yet not only the pulp-cavity and dentine are in a highly offensive condition, but also the alveolo-dental membrane; the latter a mass of apparently noxious septic material, exuding fluids of the same character. We can therefore only account for those severer forms of erysipelatous character as being due to a peculiar state of the system, or to an altered condition in the surrounding vessels. The former is probably the more correct view, and for the reason that we find these attacks generally associated with some debilitating condition, such as probably conduces, as Simon points out, to an accumulation of those products of disintegrated tissues in the blood which in health are eliminated from it by important excreting organs of the body. A sudden chill appears a very common forerunner of these attacks, and nothing is more likely to affect the excreting organs: great mental strain and overwork is another, and probably also by their indirect effects on the same organs. Aperients and diuretics are therefore certainly indicated in the early stages of acute periodontitis. When these have exhibited their desired effects, we may with much advantage prescribe tonics, the best of which, in our experience, are bark and sulphuric acid.[1] Nothing appears so

[1] R. Acidi sulphurici dil. ℥ij
Decoct. cinchonæ ℥viij
M. ft. haust.
An eighth part twice or thrice in the day.

readily to remove the fur from the tongue as this does; and, though it may be said to favour suppuration on the one hand, it undoubtedly strengthens the system to bear it on the other, and may even enable the system to dispose of the products of cell-formation without permitting them to degenerate into pus. We witness this in certain rare cases where the disease is arrested in the second stage, the products of inflammation becoming organised and remaining as a swelling, which after some time entirely disappears. In the later stages, when suppuration is inevitable, the patient should be well supported with soft nutritious diet, and, if necessary, a liberal amount of stimulant. During the period of the acutest pain, when it is more than probable that matter has formed, it is a question whether much relief might not be afforded by treating as for abscess in bone, *i.e.* by trephining; an anæsthetic might be employed during the process. Could we always ensure hitting upon the exact spot, it might be safely recommended; but, as these abscesses often form at no inconsiderable distance from the tooth, failure would probably add much to the patient's sufferings: the lower jaw would probably be safer so to operate on than the upper.

Bell, in treating upon alveolar abscess, makes a distinction between those which occur in the immediate neighbourhood of a tooth and those which occur at some distance: believing, however, the cause of both to be one and the same, we see no object in drawing such distinction.

Should the disease occur in teeth apparently sound, and without any previous debilitating or otherwise predisposing conditions, we may suspect, in those who are the subjects of rheumatism, that it is of such origin, and we have found it yield readily to an alkaline treatment. In those who are the subjects of syphilis, iodide of potassium is doubtless the best remedy; and, should it occur as the result of mercurial treatment, chlorate of potash, both internally and as a lotion, appears to give the most speedy relief.

In describing the treatment of periodontitis we have presumed

that the tooth or teeth affected have been sound, or at all events serviceable ones; should it be otherwise, and not the result of extended inflammation, or occurring from the causes enumerated in the foregoing paragraph, we may cut the matter short by extraction. In former days it was not the custom to remove teeth the surroundings of which were greatly inflamed; we know of no objection to so doing other than the pain occurring at the time, and generally for some hours after. A surgeon would surely never refuse to withdraw a splinter from the flesh, however severely inflamed, provided he could readily grasp the same: in each case the removal of the foreign body, the cause of the mischief, would, if practicable, be the right course; at the same time no positive rule on the subject can be laid down; there are, for instance, those forms of inflammation having the tendency to ulceration of surface, in which an open wound would be a most undesirable condition. With regard to opening the abscess by the knife, or allowing it to open spontaneously, much will depend upon its position and condition: if it appear to be pointing in a suitable position and without hindrance, it may be left alone, but we may by a somewhat bold incision prevent its opening on the external surface: where it appears bagging, and discharging at one or more small openings, we may with advantage make a free incision at the most dependent part.

Chronic periodontitis is not unfrequently the condition left after the acute form has passed off, whilst, on the other hand, as before noticed, the chronic may suddenly take on the acute form. It may and generally does occur to a greater or lesser extent with teeth the vitality of which has been lost through violence, or destroyed by the employment of escharotics in the process of filling, especially where the fang-cavities have not been carefully cleansed and filled, as before described; also with teeth that are much injured by caries with discharging pulps. It is, we believe, a fact that such teeth become much freer from chronic periodontitis after the whole of their pulps have sloughed away, and the place of their former occupation is found sweet and inoffensive. A tooth that has been long affected with

chronic periodontitis is generally much discoloured, which gives it the appearance of having been filled with a dark amalgam : it is usually more or less coated with salivary calculus, as are also not only its immediate neighbours but the corresponding teeth of the opposing jaw. If pressed upon laterally it is seen to move slightly in its socket, and when tapped gives more or less pain, and yields a duller and less clear sound than in the case of a healthy tooth. The mucous membrane covering that portion of the alveolar process, on the external surface especially, which corresponds to the situation of the apices of its root or roots, will be seen to be congested and of a deep purple colour, whilst in the same region will occasionally be seen a small pustule, which at times enlarges and discharges itself: in the latter case the tooth is generally less sensitive to pressure, and will often bear biting on. The discharge has been considered by some to be the fluid generated by the pulp, which, especially in the case of filled teeth, thus makes its way to the surface; an error palpable from the fact that the two fluids have hardly any similarity, the former being ordinary inoffensive pus, but which, however, may arise in consequence of the presence of the latter.

If we remove a tooth the subject of long-existing chronic periodontitis, we shall generally find that it will require less force than a healthy one. It mostly brings with it a considerable portion of its alveolo-dental membrane, which we find considerably hypertrophied, of a dark red colour, and emitting a most offensive odour. The apices of the fangs are generally bared of membrane. In some cases the tooth comes away free from any of the membrane, moist, and glistening with purulent fluid : this is generally in the severer cases. If we examine the hypertrophied alveolo-dental membrane, we find that it separates much more readily from the root, especially near the apex, than when healthy, being firmer as we approach the neck of the tooth, where it is less affected. We have accounted for the separation of the membrane at the apex of the fang as due to the larger amount of cementum there, which no doubt is in these cases

necrosed. The membrane is found highly congested and infiltrated with lymph and serum, and at the portion attached to the apex of the fang there is often a small amount of pus, and, as its form when folded together somewhat resembles a sac, it has often been regarded as the sac of an abscess. Small abscesses situated in the thickened alveolo-dental membrane, as well as small cysts, do occasionally come away entire with the tooth. Under the microscope the fibrous tissue of the membrane appears less compact and discernible than in health; we perceive amongst its meshes abundant cells and nuclei; many of the cells are nucleated and oat-shaped, elongating at their extremities to form fibres; and some of the cells appear in an active state of proliferation, whilst others appear to be undergoing fatty degeneration.

The treatment of chronic periodontitis will much depend upon the condition of the tooth affected: if its origin be that of violence, and in a sound tooth, a leech may be applied, followed by fomentation; or, when the disease is very slight, and has occurred from time to time, a small piece of toasted fig, or a little warm bread and milk, may be placed in the sulcus formed by the gum and cheek before the patient retires to rest. In like manner we may treat a tooth which has been filled, and which at times gives evidence of periodontal irritation; but in such cases counter-irritants appear more effectual, and we would recommend what we have suggested and found very serviceable, viz., a saturated solution of chloride of ammonium,[1] which is especially applicable in cases where pain comes on in a tooth after entering a hot room, or when the individual is overfatigued. If in either condition we have reason to suppose that it depends upon the presence of a diseased or devitalised pulp, or any portion of it, in the one case, viz., that of a sound tooth, an opening should be drilled through the crown into the pulp-

[1] R. Ammoniæ hydrochl. ʒiij
Aquæ ʒj
M. ft. applicatio.
To be applied to the gum with the finger when pain comes on.

cavity; in the other, the stopping should be removed, and all the diseased substance carefully cleared out. The pulp-cavity should be dressed with antiseptic substances until there is reason to believe that the dentine is free from decomposed

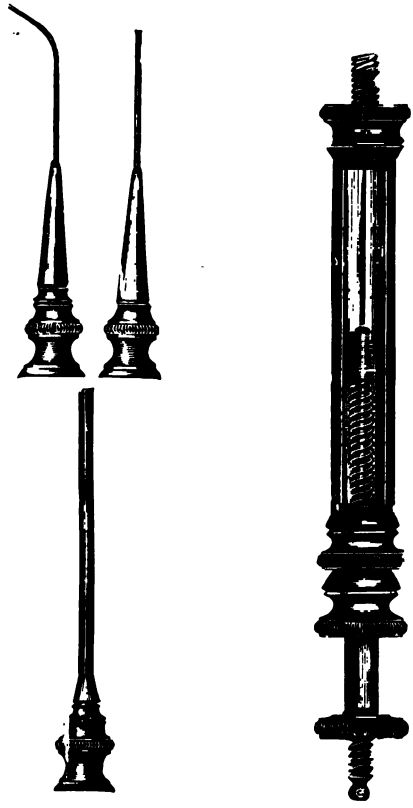


Fig. 151 shows an alveolar-abscess syringe (Farrar's), for injecting stimulating and antiseptic fluids through the fangs of teeth, for the treatment of alveolar-abscess and chronic periodontitis.

material before the fangs are filled and the cavity again sealed up. When it occurs in a tooth that is carious and has not been filled, especially one situated near to the front of the mouth,

in which the mischief has existed for some time, besides clearing away all the decomposed pulp-substance, it may be well to perforate the fang, so as to enlarge the foramen at its apex, and also to drill a hole through the external wall of the alveolus to meet this. That we have accomplished this, will be evidenced by syringing through the fang and seeing the fluid exude at the orifice in the gum, which should be of moderate size, and kept open by a tent. The treatment will then consist in thus syringing daily, oftener if possible, with some strong antiseptic fluid : a solution of iodine and creosote is probably the best; the tent should likewise be dipped in the same. Where a small gum-boil exists, it will be only necessary to see that the passages are patent. The rationale of this treatment is the attempt to correct the impurity of the necrosed dentine and the cementum about the apex of the root of the tooth. Where no gum-boil has existed, the simple removal of the contents of the pulp-cavity, and the application of arsenious acid, about $\frac{1}{15}$ of a grain, to the contents of the fang-cavity, covering with zinc oxychloride, has, under our hands, afforded very satisfactory results, and has the merit of saving a long, tedious, and disagreeable process. The treatment is on the same principle as that described above, viz., a correction of an existing septic condition. As a final resort, extraction and replantation, to be described hereafter, may be employed. If the tooth attacked be so imperfect that it would be of little or no value if retained, we may then speedily effect the cure by its removal; and how this operation should be best performed will shortly occupy our attention in a subsequent chapter.

CHAPTER X.

NECROSIS. ABSORPTION OF PERMANENT TEETH. EXOSTOSIS.

NECROSIS.—Of this we have already spoken on several occasions, but more particularly in the chapter treating upon injuries to the teeth. Though it is, no doubt, in sound teeth by far most frequently the result of an accident, yet we sometimes find teeth losing their vitality without any apparent cause, those most liable being the front teeth, and in the upper jaw the lateral incisors especially. When arising spontaneously, it not improbably results from embolism of the nutrient artery supplying the pulp, which structure undergoing change allows the colouring matter of the blood to stain the dentine or the contents of the dentinal tubuli, giving to the tooth a fawn colour, which as time progresses changes to a darker hue. The vitality of the dentine is lost, but that of the cementum may be retained, and the tooth then remains serviceable though unsightly. It is rare, however, for the cementum not to suffer to some extent, and, in consequence, the alveolo-dental membrane. As we have before pointed out, we may have a living pulp with more or less necrosis of the cementum; this latter most frequently occurs in cases of absorption of the alveoli. We have met with a case in which the irritation, caused by a patch of necrosed cementum on the anterior surface of a third lower molar, gave rise to so much pain that the tooth had to be removed: when split open, the pulp appeared perfectly healthy.

With regard to treatment we may, in the first class of cases, drill into the pulp-cavity,—if a front tooth, through the posterior surface of its crown,—and clear out the whole of its contents:

this will lessen the chance of the cementum suffering, and, if done early, also probably lessen the discolouration; indeed, we may attempt to bleach the tooth, oxalic acid having been found the most effective agent, and finally fill up the pulp-cavity and hole in the crown. In the second class of cases, where the cementum only is affected, little, likely to be of benefit, can be suggested. Could we accurately diagnose that only a small portion of cementum had suffered, and at a given spot, we might open down upon it, and excise it, or subject it for a time to the action of creosote and iodine.

Absorption of permanent teeth.—This condition, which we regard as normal and necessary in the case of the temporary

Fig. 152 shows an unerupted wisdom tooth, which by pressure has caused absorption of the approximal surface of a second molar.

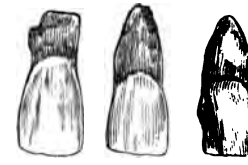


Fig. 153 shows absorption of the roots of three permanent incisor teeth. Copied from specimens in our possession.

teeth, is a pathological one when occurring in the case of the permanent teeth, although at times the two processes are not very dissimilar: thus it is not very uncommon to find the fang of a lateral incisor more or less absorbed where an unerupted or partially erupted cuspidatus has approximated abnormally to it; or, again, a second molar of the lower jaw may in like manner be found to have undergone absorption at the point impinged upon by the crown of an erupting wisdom tooth (Fig. 152). Teeth which have suffered from violence often undergo more or less absorption at their fangs; a tooth subjected to immediate torsion, as we have narrated, was found to have lost nearly the whole of its fang. Transplanted dried teeth almost invariably suffer in the same manner. But the condition of absorption in the permanent teeth is most commonly witnessed where

for a long time a more or less congested or inflamed periosteum has existed. In attempting to account for the various phenomena met with in absorption of the teeth, the difficulties have, we think, been augmented by our looking for special organs capable of effecting the process. Altered conditions in their surroundings have no doubt the greatest influence in effecting either their hypertrophy or their atrophy; an undue determination of blood may stimulate the osteoblastic layer of the cemental portion of the alveolo-dental membrane, and so produce hypertrophy of the cementum. On the other hand, stimulation of the osteoblastic layer of the alveolar portion of the same membrane may induce growth of the alveolus inwards. The result of this latter may be pressure upon the osteoblastic layer of the cemental portion of the membrane, and in consequence induce the osteoblasts to take on an absorptive action, in fact to become osteoclasts, and effect more or less the destruction of the fangs of the teeth. The absorption of bone brought about by the pressure of an aneurism is no doubt effected by the same agency.

The condition of absorption may attack teeth singly, or several at a time, and we have seen a case where the whole of the upper six front teeth were thus lost, one after another. In the way of treatment we fear we can suggest but little that will prove of benefit. To endeavour to preserve the mucous membrane of the gums as free from hyperæmia as possible, is of course indicated; but, when the teeth become loose and troublesome, we can only suggest their removal and substitution by artificial ones. In cases in which it results from the pressure of an unerupted tooth, and is usually accompanied by considerable pain, the same treatment is the only one which presents itself.

Exostosis.—This is the reverse of the condition which we have last described, and consists in an augmentation to the cemental layer covering the fangs. When it is pretty evenly distributed over the surface of the fang or fangs we may with advantage adopt the term hyperostosis, and confine the former

term to cases where the deposit is circumscribed and nodulated. It occurs most frequently in the case of teeth which have suffered by wear upon their masticating surfaces, and this, no doubt. has determined an irritation with increased flow of blood and consequent augmented supply of nutrition to the region of their roots. By this means an abnormal energy is given to the odontoblastic layer of the cementum, causing an increase in the latter, sometimes to a very considerable extent. Such structure, when examined, will be found to approach ordinary bone in its character; thus we often have Haversian canals, and irregularly formed Haversian systems, which are

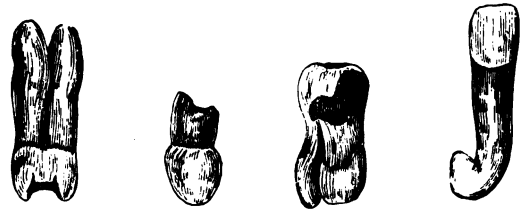


Fig. 154 shows cases of hyperostosis and exostosis in the fangs of teeth. Copied from specimens in our own possession.

rare but not impossible to meet with in ordinary cementum. The conditions of dental hyperostosis have been examined and ably described by Hubert Shelley, but we think that his descriptions apply rather to cases where more inflammatory action accompanies the process than to the more gradual and more characteristic ones. In most cases, but not in all,—nor even in marked ones,—there is more or less of pain attendant on the process, attributable, no doubt, to a want of due correspondence between the enlargement of the cementum and a complementary enlargement of the alveolus, with consequent pressure upon the nerves of the intermediate tissue. If this be the right explanation, it is not difficult to account for the process occurring at times without pain, at other times with moderate pain of even and persistent character, and again at times with pain of an excruciating character. The pain also is

not unfrequently referred to other parts than the ones affected, occurring in the head and face, about the ear, indeed, at any of the terminal branches of the fifth pair. Many supposed cases of neuralgia have their origin in this cause, which is often, before the removal of teeth so affected, very obscure. Such teeth may be free from tenderness when percussed or bitten on. The margin of the gum around teeth which are the subjects of hyperostosis may present, but not invariably, a line of congestion said to be characteristic of this condition. In such cases the electric mouth-illuminator of Hart might prove valuable, as the roots of teeth are distinctly seen when the apparatus is placed within the mouth.

As may well be expected, the removal of such teeth is often attended with much difficulty, especially where the deposition has been greatest towards the extremity of the root or roots. We shall infer this to be the condition, when, after separating a tooth from its membranous attachments, we find it loose, yet having a strong impediment to its removal: a curved fang would likewise offer the same resistance. We must here very cautiously and patiently continue the loosening movements, until we have so dilated the upper portion of the alveolus as to permit the enlarged or twisted root to come out. From this cause, lower bicuspid teeth or roots are not uncommonly very difficult to remove, even when not so considerably enlarged at their radical apices. Our museums show to what an extent the cementum may increase in rare cases, at times even uniting together the roots of contiguous teeth, but cases of a moderate amount of increase are extremely common.

With regard to treatment, we again fear that little more can be offered than the radical one of extraction; but, before we resort to this extremity, iodide of potassium, in somewhat large doses, should have a trial.

It is not a very uncommon occurrence to meet with the two conditions just spoken of existing together, and to find the fang of a tooth in one portion hyperostosed and in another more or less absorbed.

CHAPTER XI.

EXTRACTION OF TEETH.

THE operation of extraction bears an analogy to that of amputation, inasmuch as it is the removal of a useless or obnoxious member for the welfare of the rest. As no conscientious surgeon would ever think of resorting to the latter so long as any well-grounded hope existed of a limb or member being again restored to a state of usefulness, so no intelligent dentist will ever think of extracting a tooth as long as there remains a fair prospect of its also being restored to a state of usefulness. On the other hand, the surgeon knows that an artificial limb, however limited its capabilities, is yet infinitely better than a painful and useless one; and the dentist likewise knows that an artificial tooth is infinitely better than a useless and painful one. In another point of view, however, the two operations widely differ, viz. :—in their effects upon the individual, the one being comparatively safe and almost momentary in point of duration, the other being severe in character, and highly dangerous in its results; at the same time, this ought in no way to lessen a due consideration before sacrificing so useful though humble a member as a tooth, and this consideration becomes of still more importance when the tooth or teeth to be removed happen to be sound ones.

The teeth about the removal of which we hesitate the least are those which have become so loose from absorption of their alveoli as to be quite useless, indeed impediments to mastication; those long affected with chronic periodontitis, whose tartar-crusted crowns evidence their long season of uselessness,

as well as that of their immediate neighbours; teeth erupted in abnormal positions, incapable of being brought into position, and interfering with movements of the tongue or lips; also the roots of teeth causing unhealthy gums or secreting offensive fluids.

Having convinced ourselves of the expediency of resorting to extraction, we must in its performance carefully observe three conditions: first, to carry it out completely, in other words, to remove the tooth in its entirety; secondly, to accomplish it with the least possible injury to surrounding parts; and thirdly, to inflict as little pain as possible. Usually carefully pursuing the second condition, we fulfil the third. The form of articulation of the teeth to the jaws has been classically termed gomphosis, but this gives an erroneous idea of the exact attachment: the teeth are not retained in their sockets as are nails in wood, by their elastic surroundings. In a dried skull the teeth will be felt loose in their alveoli; some will indeed drop out by their own weight; the rest are retained by the dovetailing of their fangs in their sockets. It is a strong periosteum, the alveolo-dental membrane, which is the true medium of attachment of the teeth and maxillæ, and it is the sundering of this which, in normal cases, necessitates the amount of force that must be employed, and which should occupy our chief attention, the thin alveolar walls in the moist condition yielding more readily.

In proceeding to consider the operation of extraction, it is desirable that we should first describe the instruments employed, and in thus doing we shall merely allude to one, which, though serviceable in its day, should now possess only an historical interest. The key (Fig. 155) so largely employed for many years is now, or at least should be, entirely superseded by other and more efficient instruments.

It formed, when in action, a most powerful lever of the first order, and therefore became, especially in less experienced hands, a dangerous instrument; moreover, when it was once applied to a tooth, the force exerted could be in only one given

direction, and this might happen to be that in which the greatest resistance was offered; and lastly, as the fulcrum of the instrument was applied upon a soft tissue,—the gum,—this, although it might be relieved by padding, had to bear the force necessary for removing the tooth, mostly bruising it, sometimes lacerating it. To the great improvements in the forceps is due the retirement of the key, which was not an improper instrument so long as the forceps employed was not adapted to be

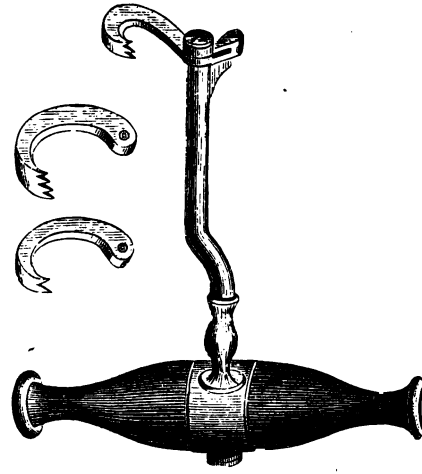


Fig. 155 shows a key instrument for extracting teeth. The upper portion represents, on the right hand, the bolster or fulcrum, and on the left hand a claw which revolves upon a screw shown at quite the extremity. The steel bar, which connects this portion with the handle, is bent, so as to permit it to clear the front teeth. The detached claws represent different widths for application to larger or smaller teeth.

accurately applied to each tooth, and, therefore, touching only at a few points, acted mostly like a cutting instrument, either slipping off from, or fracturing, the crown. The point is well illustrated in the case of the fitters of gas and water pipes, whose pincers or tongs, being segments of circles at their grasping points, securely hold the circular pipes, which ordinary pincers would only slide upon or crush. Changes in appliances, as in ideas, are mostly gradual: many practitioners, knowing the disadvantages of the key, endeavoured to remedy the evil by adapt-

ing the existing forceps as far as possible to certain teeth, but the key received its death-blow when J. Tomes took in hand not only the construction of forceps adaptable to every tooth, but conferred the greater benefit of enabling practitioners to obtain the same, a privilege of which every dentist of the present day should not be unmindful; and the public may also rejoice that from the time he did so the excruciating 'key note' has gradually faded from the surgeries of dentists.

The forceps is a modified pair of pincers (Fig. 156), and consists essentially of the same parts, viz., a pair of blades, or

Fig. 156 shows forceps for extracting upper incisor and cuspidati teeth. The blades at the upper portion of the instrument are connected with the handles at the lower portion by the round hinge.

jaws, with handles which meet and cross each other at the hinge: each half becomes a lever of the first order, having its common fulcrum at the hinge, and this fact should always be remembered in grasping a tooth, which is a tube, and often a very fragile one.

The instrument, it need hardly be mentioned, should be of excellent steel, and the blades, or grasping portion, so tempered as to slightly bend rather than break if any very unusual force be encountered. Besides being made to fit accurately to the neck of the tooth, for which the instrument is constructed, they should be thin and sharp at their edges, so as to detach the gum from the neck of the tooth, and even, if desired, enter between the root of the tooth and its alveolus. When closed upon a tooth, the blades should rest parallel with its neck for some short distance, and not merely touch it with their edges, and be quite free from impinging upon the crown, a fault sometimes overlooked at the present day; and, giving sufficient room for the crown, they should be no longer than is absolutely necessary, as power is thereby lost, the long blades often bending upon the

neck of a very firm tooth instead of moving it. In the construction of the hinge, care should be exercised, not only that it is strong, but that it is not liable when closed to include portions of the lips, tongue, or cheek. The round form devised by D. George, now generally seen, has the latter advantage to perfection, but it fails, we think, in not affording a little lateral movement. In constructing the adapted forceps, it is usual, after forging and filing the blades as nearly to the required shape as possible, to fit them still more perfectly by applying them to the neck of a normally formed tooth, coloured with pigment; the spots marked by the pigment are cut away, and the process continued until an almost perfect adaptation is attained, after which the blades are tempered. Thus constructed the blades should accurately fit upon the external and internal surfaces about the neck of the tooth; but, as these do not always bear the same relative position to each other; it is well to have a little play at the hinge, which will allow of the blades accommodating themselves to this departure. The handles should be strong, broad, and roughened, long enough to afford a firm grasp, but no more, for, although length in the handles gives greater leverage, they make the instrument cumbrous, and interfere with delicacy of movement.

In employing the forceps, the student cannot do better than follow the excellent directions laid down by J. Tomes,[1] who divides the process into three stages, insisting most properly upon each being perfectly accomplished before the succeeding one is attempted. The stages are—'first, the seizure of the tooth; second, the destruction of its membranous connection with the socket; third, the removal of the tooth from the socket.'

In *the first stage* the instrument should be taken lightly in the palm of the hand, the blades pointing upwards or downwards, according to the jaw operated on, the thumb being employed as a stop or regulator, to govern the amount of separation of the handles and consequently of the blades. In applying it to the tooth, it is well first to adapt one blade to the side

[1] *Lectures*, &c., p. 326.

most obscured from the view of the operator, and then to close the other upon the opposite side, but only so lightly as just to touch the tooth at the point of its connection with the gum. This done, the thumb is now gradually withdrawn, and steady but forcible pressure made in the direction of the root of the tooth. The force employed should be regulated by the amount of resistance experienced, commencing gently and increasing as the case demands, and often accompanied to advantage by a very slight rotatory movement at the same time. Experience will enable the operator to tell when this has been accomplished to the proper extent, but we fear that some have read too literally the injunction, to 'push the jaws of your forceps into the sockets, as though you intended they should come out at the top of the head or under the chin,' as we have seen it fulfilled on teeth which needed no such roughness, causing unnecessary pain. The operator must judge, as he progresses, how much force is required, commencing gently, but continuing to increase the force until the object in view, viz., a firm grasp of the tooth at or above its neck, as the state or diseased condition may indicate, is obtained. Perhaps more judgment is required in this portion of the operation than in any other; and it must be admitted that, if it be unskilful to use unnecessary force in it, it will prove more unfortunate to err on the other side, and cause the fracture of a tooth by employing too little. The tooth being grasped at the right spot, it must be retained by a force sufficient to prevent the instrument from slipping, but not so great as to endanger the somewhat fragile object; and then *the second stage* of the operation, the severing of it more or less from its membranous attachment, is commenced. This will consist in either a slightly rotatory movement in the long axis of the tooth, as in the case of one having a conical fang, or an inward and outward one, *i.e.* between the adjoining teeth to and from the mesial line of the dental arch, when the fang is not conical, or there are more fangs than one. In making these movements, we should follow certain general directions to be presently mentioned; but, if we fail

with moderate force to cause the tooth to yield, we may employ it in others, gradually increasing it as we find our efforts availing. The yielding of the alveolo-dental membrane gives a sensation which we can readily perceive, and, when it is

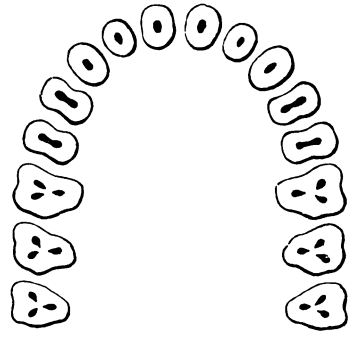


Fig. 157 shows transverse sections of the teeth of the upper jaw made at their necks.

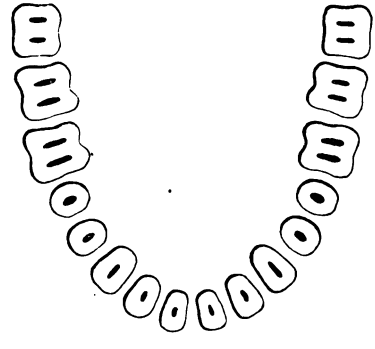


Fig. 158 shows transverse sections of the teeth of the lower jaw made at their necks.

These figures will be frequently referred to in the present chapter.

sufficiently severed, we may connect with our movements of detachment those more truly extractive, *the third stage* of the operation. Judgment must be exercised here too; for, if the extractive force be put on too soon, fracture, or too great a

resistance, will be experienced; if put on too late, much unnecessary pain is inflicted: error in the former alternative is likely to be attended with the unwelcome exhibition of portions of alveolar process. The extractive force should, as a rule, be exerted chiefly in the direction of the long axis of the tooth; but it is a rule with many exceptions. The skilful operator will judge in which direction the loosened tooth is coming most readily, and in the *direction of least resistance* he should exert the traction. It is in this respect that the forceps is so superior to the key or other instruments, viz., in its enabling the operator to vary the direction of the force that he employs.

Having described the mode of applying the forceps in general, we now proceed to explain its application in the case of individual teeth, and must, in so doing, take it for granted that the reader is conversant with dental anatomy, and fully acquainted with the forms which the teeth in man present. He must know that horizontal sections of upper incisors and cuspidati (Fig. 157), made at or a little below their necks, present at the divided surfaces an almost circular form, the anterior and posterior aspects of which will be arcs of a circle, —the anterior a rather larger one than the posterior. The blades of the forceps must be constructed to correspond to such

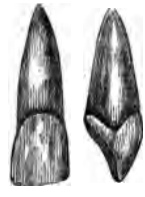


Fig. 159.—Central incisor of upper jaw, front and side views.

Fig. 160.—Lateral incisor of upper jaw, front and side views.

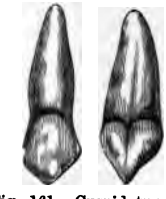


Fig. 161.—Cuspidatus of upper jaw, front and side views.

forms, and to cover, when applied, rather more than a third of the surface of the tooth grasped. In the perfect instrument the inner blade should represent a less obtuse angle with the inner handle than the outer blade does with the outer handle, in accordance with the form presented by the roots of these teeth

(Figs. 159, 160, 161). Whilst the same instrument may be employed for all the above-mentioned teeth, a pair with narrower blades (Fig. 162) may be desirable when very small lateral incisors have to be dealt with. The operation of extracting these teeth is thus performed: the patient should be seated and facing a good light, and, if a proper dental chair be not at hand, an old-fashioned easy one, provided with a cushion, to raise the body so that the head may recline steadily on the top of it, will

Fig. 162.—Forceps for the extraction of upper lateral incisors.

answer sufficiently well. If such a chair be not procurable,—for these operations have often to be performed at patients' houses,—the following may be adopted:—The patient is seated upon an ordinary chair, whilst a second chair is placed at the back; on this latter the operator firmly places his left foot, and covering his knee with a towel, makes it a soft but firm support for the patient's head. The foregoing suggestions are, of course, available also with all the teeth of the upper jaw. In applying the forceps to the teeth in question,—upper incisors or cuspidati,—the operator should stand rather in front, and on the patient's right side; with the thumb of the left hand the lip should be raised, whilst the fingers of the same resting upon the patient's forehead afford steadiness to both patient and operator: if preferred, the operator may apply the finger and thumb of the left hand to each side of the alveolar process adjoining the tooth; this latter has the advantage of affording some knowledge of the yielding of the tooth to the force applied. The forceps, held as before directed, should be applied to the neck of the tooth, to its posterior surface first, and then closed gently upon it by the thumb being withdrawn: the instrument is now forced upwards in the direction of the long axis of the tooth,

until the edge of the alveolus, or, if the tooth be much decayed, a point beyond, is reached. The tooth being firmly grasped, a slight rotation in one direction is attempted; but, if much resistance be encountered, the rotary movement is reversed, and, if still resisted, it may be exchanged for an inward and outward one, *i.e.* to and from the centre of the palate, coupled with a return to the rotary. As the tooth begins to yield from its attachments, the force may be gradually changed to a downward one in the direction of the long axis of the tooth, but it should be steady and guarded, inclining to the direction in which the tooth seems the most willing to yield. It is not elegant or agreeable to witness the tooth parting from its socket with a sudden jerk, although it not unfrequently shoots from it, owing

Fig. 163.—Upper first bicuspid, front and side views.

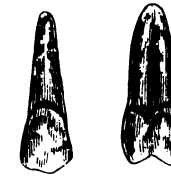


Fig. 164.—Upper second bicuspid, front and side views.

to its sliding along the double inclined plane formed by the blades of the forceps; an occurrence not always possible to avoid, but one which we should do our utmost to prevent, as the tooth may disappear into the throat or even larynx under such circumstances. More force will be necessary in the removal of the cuspidati than in that of the central incisors, and more in the case of the latter than in that of the lateral incisors. We now pass on to the bicuspids of the upper jaw, sections of which at their necks (Fig. 157) are of a less circular form than is that of the teeth just considered, which, instead of having an almost conical root, have a somewhat flattened one (Fig. 163), the teeth being broadest between their external and internal surfaces. In the place of one fang there may be two or very rarely three, this being more common in the first than in the second bicuspid (Figs.

163, 164), although some works on anatomy give the reverse. For these teeth we must have an instrument (Fig. 165) the blades of which must be segments of the circles presented by the external and internal surfaces of these teeth at their necks, and for all practical purposes segments of the same circle will suffice; otherwise we should require a pair for each side of the mouth, as the handles are bent at an angle with the blades, to prevent the former from pressing against the lower lip during the operation. The breadth of the blades should be about the same as in the instrument for the central incisors and cuspidati. The operator assuming much the same position as that just described, which is generally best suited to the removal of all the upper teeth, the instrument is applied and forced upwards,

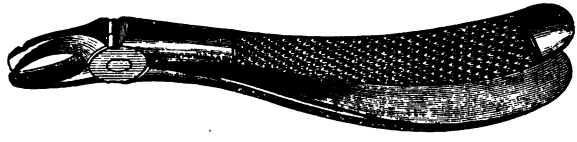


Fig. 165.—Forceps for extracting upper bicuspid teeth.

as before directed. The severing movements must be accomplished by force exerted to and from the palate—we prefer it in that order, *i.e.* first inwards towards the palate, followed by a more forcible one in the opposite direction, rotation in the case of the bicuspids being out of the question; their flattened fangs, and the circumstance of their having often two fangs, would offer great resistance to such movement. As the tooth yields the extractive force may be commenced, and in the line of the long axis of the tooth, or varied, as resistance may indicate; and with it at times a slight shaking movement of the wrist may be advantageously combined. We may observe that in removing these teeth to afford space a slower and more gentle action should, if possible, be adopted; for, while a small fractured portion of a healthy fang, when left, is seldom attended with unpleasant consequences, it would in these cases much retard, if not prevent, adjacent teeth from moving into the space thus made.

The molars of the upper jaw (Figs. 166, 167) present on section at their necks (see Fig. 157) a more varied figure than the foregoing, viz., in the external surface being segments of two circles united at one extremity, of which the anterior is

Fig. 166.—First molar of the upper jaw.

Fig. 167.—Second molar of the upper jaw,

rather the larger, whilst the internal surface represents the segment of a circle much larger than either. In conformity with these circles must be the blades of the instrument (Fig. 168), which must be broader and somewhat stronger than those already considered, as should be the instrument generally: it will also be desirable to have the blades at a greater angle with the handles than in that last described. In addition to this

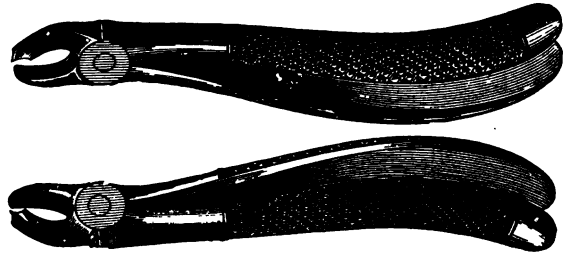


Fig. 168.—Forceps for extracting the first and second molars of the upper jaw of each side.

angle, some prefer also a curve in the handles, as shown in the figure, the bend being towards the roof of the mouth when the instrument is employed. It is a matter of little importance, but in our opinion rather a defect than otherwise, as in practice the straight handles afford a better grasp, and are quite as convenient as the curved.

In removing a tooth of such dimensions and resisting form

as an upper molar, we must be prepared to exert a larger amount of force than upon smaller teeth, and this especially in grasping them, and when a very slight lateral movement accompanying the forcing upwards of the instrument will often prove advantageous. From the direction of the fangs we at once see that only an inward and outward movement is feasible, and the rule generally given to commence with the inward one is, we believe, correct: it is not, however, to be persisted in until some movement is effected, for, should this not come pretty readily, then the outward movement is to be adopted, and with this a moderate amount of force, exerted also in the downward direction, often effects the complete removal of the tooth. Generally, however, the lateral movements may have to be repeated before the truly extractive ones can be attempted. It must here be remembered that we have, besides the strong membranous attachments, to overcome the dovetailing of the roots and alveolus; consequently the latter must be dilated in most cases: fortunately they are, in the recent state, soft and moderately yielding. The second molar may be removed precisely in the same manner, and with the same instrument as the first; generally more readily, as the tooth is not so large, nor its fangs so divergent. The third molar (Fig. 169) of the same jaw has the two external circles at its neck so feebly pronounced (Fig. 157), that an instrument (Fig. 170), both blades of which are segments of one large circle, will be found better

Fig. 169.—Third molar, or wisdom tooth, of the upper jaw.

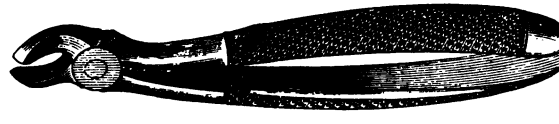


Fig. 170.—Forceps for extracting third molars of the upper jaw. The angle between the blades and the handles is not represented in the cut sufficiently acute.

adapted than the form suitable for the first and second molars; consequently such an instrument may be employed for either side,

whereas for the latter instruments for the right and left side are necessary. The handles ought to form a considerable angle with the blades, otherwise it will be impossible to adjust them accurately, and in the direction of the vertical axis of the tooth. Except from the inaccessibility due to their position the third upper molars are not, as a rule, very difficult to remove; their roots, if not agglutinated, are generally but slightly divergent; and the bone in which they are placed is soft and spongy. From the direction of their long axes, the movements of detachment and removal may be combined in an outward and downward one from first to last, it often being necessary to make the latter considerable; indeed, a circle passing from the crown of the tooth, downwards, outwards, and upwards in the direction of the zygomatic process; an exaggerated curve corresponding to that which the fang of the tooth often assumes in its alveolus.

When we operate upon the teeth of the lower jaw, the patient may conveniently be seated in an ordinary easy chair, the head being in a line with the body, *i.e.*, in the usual sitting

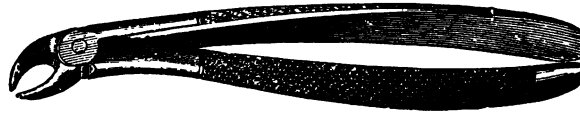


Fig. 171.—Forceps for extracting lower incisors and cuspidati.

posture, or nearly so. As horizontal sections of incisor teeth of the lower jaw at their necks represent an ovoid figure, flattened laterally (see Fig. 158), the anterior and posterior surfaces of which are segments of a circle much smaller than that presented by the upper incisor teeth, the blades of the instrument to be employed for their removal must be narrower, and arcs of a smaller circle, than in the case of the upper incisors, and in relation to the handles, so curved—somewhat resembling a hawk's bill—(Fig. 171) as to prevent the forceps from striking against the upper teeth while the tooth is removed. In employing the instrument, the operator may stand on the right and rather in

front of the patient, steadying the lower jaw with the fingers of the left hand, whilst the thumb depresses the lower lip, rendering clear to view the teeth upon which he is looking down. The instrument being well pressed down, the severing or detaching movements, which can only be inward and outward in direction, must be very cautiously performed, as the fangs of these teeth are very slight (Figs. 172, 173), and consequently easily

Fig. 172.—Central incisor of the lower jaw, front and side views.

Fig. 173.—Lateral incisor of the lower jaw, front and side views.

Fig. 174.—Cuspidatus of the lower jaw, front and side views.

fractured: they will be found to yield most readily in the outward direction, in which, combined with an upward direction also, the final extractive force should be exerted.

For the lower cuspidati not only should the blades of the instrument be somewhat broader, but they should represent

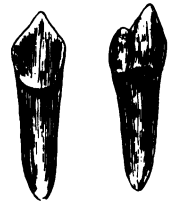


Fig. 175.—First bicuspid of the lower jaw, front and side views.

Fig. 176.—Second bicuspid of the lower jaw, front and side views.

segments of a larger circle; still in practice the same as that suitable for the incisors is found to answer very well. The severing movements, as suggested from a lateral view of their roots (Fig. 174), must be in the same directions, viz., to and from the centre of the dental arch, but they will require more force in their removal than the incisors usually do. In removing the

tooth of the left side, the operator should stand almost in front of the patient, or the patient's head should be turned towards the operator.

For the bicuspids of the lower jaw (Figs. 175, 176) we shall best employ an instrument differing little from that last

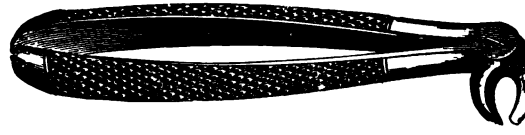


Fig. 177.—Forceps for extracting lower bicuspids, applied from the sides of the mouth.

described, except that the angle between the blades and the handles should be a more acute one (Figs. 177, 178), even to a

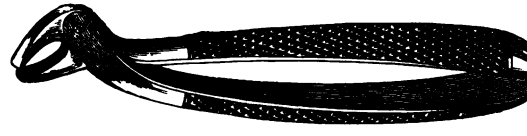


Fig. 178.—Forceps for extracting lower bicuspids. This pattern presents a different form of hinge, found very useful when the mouth can only be opened a short distance, but has the disadvantage of the handles opening too wide to afford a firm grasp upon them.

right angle; but it must be borne in mind, that with the more acute angle the uplifting power is diminished. Forceps may be employed which, having the blades at a right angle to the handles, have them also parallel with the latter (Fig. 179);

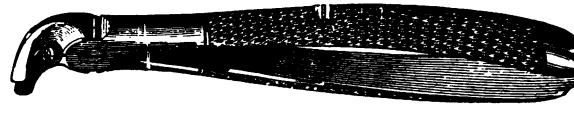


Fig. 179. –Forceps for extracting lower bicuspids, applied from the front of the mouth.

these must be employed more from the front of the mouth, and have the disadvantage of obscuring from view the work to be accomplished, consequently they have been generally superseded by the former, which are applied from the sides of the mouth. In using those which we may term the side-forceps, the

operator may stand on the side of the patient on which the tooth is to be removed. It will be found awkward to lean across the patient when standing on his right in order to remove a left tooth; at the same time it is well to practise operating in this position, as it will save the operator from having to change it when removing teeth which would otherwise require both positions to be assumed. In operating with the straight forceps on the right side of the mouth, the best position is, to stand almost in front of the patient, whilst for the left side we should recommend a position at the back of the patient, bending over towards his head, but in both cases employing the finger and thumb of the left hand for separating the lips and tongue from the gums, in order to enable him to see clearly where to apply the instrument, and avoid including in it a fold of the loose mucous membrane which forms the floor of the mouth. It may be carefully noted, that sections of lower bicuspid teeth at their necks (see Fig. 158) present an almost circular form, and that their roots generally are conical. The forceps should be firmly pressed vertically downwards in the direction of the tooth, and the severing process attempted by a slight rotatory movement, first in one direction and then in the opposite; but it often happens that detachment is felt at the first movement, and then force applied in a direction upwards and a little outwards will remove the tooth. The lower bicuspids are, however, very uncertain teeth to deal with; occasionally parting from their surroundings with but little persuasion, yet at times presenting very great resistance: we must, therefore, apply our rotatory force with discretion, changing it for an inward and outward one, or even combining the two, rather than risk a force greater than that which holds the particles of a tooth to each other, viz., its cohesive attraction. The roots of these teeth, normally conical in form, and eminently suitable for the rotatory movement,[1] are very liable to be curved or twisted, or

[1] It should be distinctly borne in mind, that the bicuspids are the only teeth of the lower jaw to which a rotatory movement in extraction is admissible.

to have enlargements at their extremities, thus opposing obstacles to such and other movements for their detachment; and very often also, when they are detached from their immediate surroundings, they are yet dovetailed into their alveoli, from which they may, if care be not exercised, come away very suddenly, causing the instrument to strike against, and, perhaps,

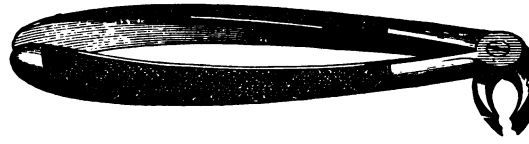


Fig. 180.—Forceps for extracting lower molars of either side, applied from the sides of the mouth.

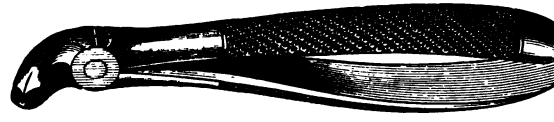


Fig. 181.—Forceps for extracting lower molars of either side, applied from the front of the mouth.

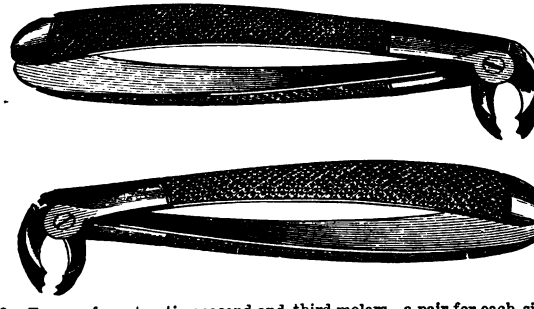


Fig. 182.—Forceps for extracting second and third molars—a pair for each side—applied from the sides of the mouth. The side curve in the blades admits of their being applied further back in the mouth than in Fig. 180.

damage the teeth of the upper jaw; but this is more liable to occur in the extraction of the teeth which we next consider—the lower molars. As in the case of the bicuspids so in that of the molars, two forms of instrument are employed, *i.e.*, those which are applied from the sides (Fig. 180), and those which are applied *from the* front (Fig. 181), of the mouth. For the first and second

molars we recommend the former, and, in order to make them more accessible to the second and applicable to the third molars, a curve in the blades themselves is necessary (Fig. 182). The position of the operator in regard to the patient will be much the same as in the case of the teeth last mentioned.

A horizontal section of a lower molar tooth at the neck (Fig. 158) shows both its external and internal surfaces, of much the same form as the external surface of the first upper molar, viz., two segments of circles touching each other at one extremity, of which the anterior segment is the larger. The blades of the instruments must, therefore, be made to correspond in like manner; and, in order to insure the greatest accuracy, there should be an instrument for each side of the mouth: practically, however, the difference between the sides of

Fig. 183.—First molar of the lower jaw.

Fig. 184.—Second molar of the lower jaw.

the tooth is so small that one instrument may suffice, (except in the case of the additional curve spoken of), provided the hinge possesses a little play. It is essential, too, that the angle between the blades and handles should be nearly a right angle. In using these forceps, the operator should stand in the same positions as those recommended in the case of the bicuspids, and employing the left hand in the same manner; but he may with advantage, in employing the instruments applied at the front of the mouth, after separating the lips and tongue from the gum, and placing the forceps on the tooth, place the fingers under the chin to support the jaw, and employ the thumb to press the forceps well down. Slight inward movement may first be attempted, but the tooth will generally yield most readily in the outward direction, where the alveolus is less thick

and, in raising the tooth, it will also be found to come most readily in the same direction. The two large and dense fangs (Fig. 183), anterior and posterior, especially of first lower molars, often occupy more space than does the tooth at its crown, where it is in contact with its neighbours. To raise it vertically, without injury to the latter, would be impossible; and, where the fangs spread to any extent, the tooth becomes locked, and then it is necessary to continue for some time the lateral movements in order to dilate the alveolus, varying them with extractive force in a direction considerably outwards, but taking every care that the instrument in coming upwards does not strike and injure the upper teeth: the left thumb, in such cases, may be well retained on the upper part of the forceps. A pinch of the thumb may result, but the operator will smart less from this than if he fractured his patient's sound tooth.

For a tooth which happens to be locked in the manner above mentioned, the lateral movements are no doubt best performed by the instruments which are applied from the front of the mouth, but they afford less power when the uplifting force is exerted, and are more liable to strike the teeth of the upper jaw when the tooth leaves its socket than those which are applied from the sides of the mouth, with which a greater leverage is afforded, and, what is more important, a better view of the process is obtained.

On comparing a horizontal section of a lower third molar, made at the neck (see Fig. 158), with a similar one in a first or

Fig. 185.—Forceps for extracting the third molars (wisdom teeth), of the lower jaw of either side, applied from the front of the mouth.

second molar, it will be observed that the depressions on each side marking the union of the two fangs are much less distinct: the blades must, therefore, be adapted to such forms. The instrument generally employed is one that is applied from the

front of the mouth (Fig. 185), and has its blades placed at a greater angle with the handles than for the other molars. In making the lateral severing movements, we shall generally experience great resistance, the cause of which will be evident, if we examine such a tooth *in situ*, by removing the external alveolar plate of the maxilla. When it is thus exposed, it will be noticed that the fangs incline backwards (Fig. 186), *i.e.*, towards the angle of the jaw, a curving which is seen to increase from the first to the third molar tooth : the greater such curve is, the greater obviously will be the resistance to lateral movement, as a larger surface is impinged upon. The form of the curve also indicates the direction in which such a tooth will most readily yield to force, viz., upwards and backwards, towards the coronoid processes. Such a movement it is almost impossible to effect with the forceps, but it is the precise one which an instrument, virtually one-half of a pair of forceps — the elevator — can readily effect ; and this instrument, which we shall presently describe, we recommend for removing third molars, especially when the second molars remain *in situ*.

Fig. 186.—Third molar of the lower jaw right side. It will be observed how much the fangs incline in the direction of the coronoid process of the jaw.

We have endeavoured to tabulate the foregoing instructions, as we hope by so doing to make them more available to the student.

Teeth of Upper Jaw.

Patient seated raised, and with head resting backwards.

Teeth	Fangs	Forceps	Detaching movements	Operator
Inc. and cusp.	1 conical	Figs. 156 and 162	Slight rotation	On right side and rather in front of P.
Bicuspids	1 or 2 flattened laterally	Fig. 165	Inwards and outwards	Do.
Molars, 1st and 2nd	3, 2 external and 1 internal	Fig. 168	Do.	Do.
Molars, 3rd	Do. often aglutinated	Fig. 170	Do.	Do.

Teeth of Lower Jaw.

Patient seated at ordinary height, head in vertical position.

Teeth	Fangs	Forceps	Detaching movements	Operator
Inc. and cusp.	1 flattened laterally	Fig. 171	Inwards and outwards	Almost in front of P.
Bicuspids	1 conical	Fig. 179	Slight rotation	Do. for right side, for left side behind P.
Or do.	Do.	Figs. 177 and 178	Do.	On side of P. corresponding to tooth, or on right of P. only
Molars, 1st and 2nd	2, 1 ant. and 1 post.	Fig. 181	Inwards and outwards	For right side in front of P.; for left side behind P.
Or do. do.	Do.	Figs. 180 and 182	Do.	On side of P. corresponding to tooth, or on right of P. only
Molars, 3rd	Do. often agglutinated	Fig. 185	Do.	For right side in front of P.; for left side behind P.

CHAPTER XII.

EXTRACTION OF ROOTS OF TEETH.

THUS far we have taken it for granted that the teeth on which we have been operating are fairly strong ones, not diseased or injured much below the level of the gums. When teeth in the latter condition present themselves, our instruments, as well as our lines of operation, must be somewhat modified. The instruments must for such conditions have their blades slighter, also more pointed and sharper at their extremities, to enable them to obtain a secure hold, and to readily divide much of the membranous attachments, and penetrate into the alveoli, often to a considerable distance. As regards the remainder of the instruments, handles, hinges, &c., they may be of much the same construction as those for sound teeth, and the directions already given in regard to position of patient, operator, &c., are also applicable to them; but in making the severing movements we shall do well to exert the force more gently and more cautiously, preferring to lessen the danger of fracture by occupying a longer time: in the extractive movements also the same considerations should influence us.

For the roots of upper incisors and cuspidati, instruments like those described for those teeth, but having thinner, sharper, and more pointed blades, are used (Figs. 187, 188). In pressing them up, care must be exercised that they are neither too widely open nor too closely shut: the latter is the error generally made by a beginner, especially when there is no portion of the tooth visible above the gum, or only a portion of one side of it left to guide him, when the instrument becomes forced upon the root

itself. The right direction being ascertained or allowed for,—and, if a knowledge of dental anatomy be essential to ensure a good extractor of teeth, it becomes of imperative necessity when hidden roots are operated upon,—the instrument is forced upwards in the direction of the long axis of the root, this being often much assisted by a slight rotatory movement of the wrist as well: the amount of pressure necessary will be determined by the resistance to it, and the extent to which the disease has advanced. At times we find the roots of these teeth so hollowed out, that but little more than their cemental covering remains; and, as such fragile tubes must of necessity collapse upon the

Fig. 187.—Forceps for extracting the roots of upper incisors and cuspidati.

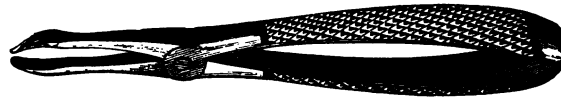


Fig. 188.—Forceps for extracting the roots of upper incisor teeth when decayed much below the surface of the gum.

slightest pressure, we shall do well to fill them previously with gutta-percha, or the oxychloride compound, which soon sets, and will render them somewhat solid; or we may employ the screw forceps (Fig. 189), which consists of a conical screw placed between the blades of the instrument. The screw is inserted into the hollow cavity in the fang, and then the blades are closed upon the root thus supported in its interior. Having secured a good hold, with very cautious grasp, we must proceed gently to make the same rotatory or other severing movements, followed by extractive ones.

The roots of upper bicuspids require blades possessing the same characters as for those of incisors and cuspidati (Fig. 190), and the operation of their removal will be performed with

the same precautions. It must be borne in mind that these teeth have often two slender roots, especially the first bicuspids, and their divergence affords a less perfect grasp than in the case of a single and more conical one; also that, when the tooth is grasped, the two roots often become detached, and, moving one upon the other, cause the instrument to slide off them. A fine, long-pointed pair of forceps (Fig. 191) may here successfully remove each root separately.

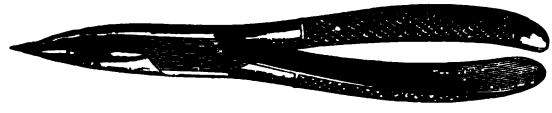


Fig. 189.—A combination of screw and forceps for extracting very hollow roots of upper incisors and cuspidati.

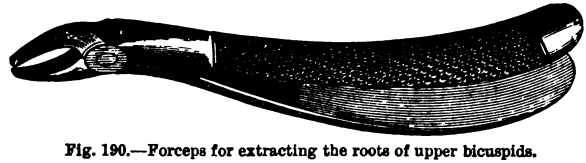


Fig. 190.—Forceps for extracting the roots of upper bicuspids.

Fig. 191.—Forceps for extracting the roots of upper bicuspids when separated.

Our greatest difficulties will perhaps be encountered in attempting the removal of upper molar roots, when the teeth are broken to the neck, but have the fangs still firmly united to the remains of the crown. Such a root roughly represents an inverted truncated cone, and the root-forceps which we have as yet described represent, when applied, another truncated cone, but not inverted. These can never be adapted to each other, they will only touch at points, and the forceps will be found incapable of moving the tooth. With the exception of instruments which cut bodily through the external alveolar wall

(Fig. 192), and thus admitted a grasp of the tooth above its neck, those represented by Fig. 190 were the only forceps employed for the removal of such roots at or near the period when we entered upon practice; and, to supply this want, we constructed

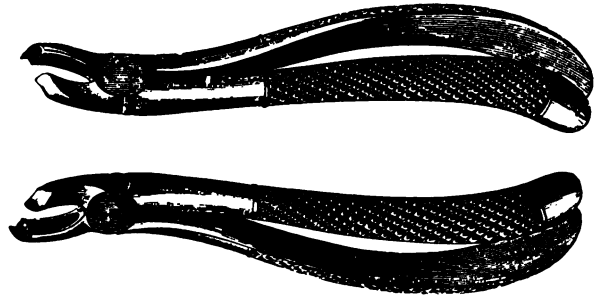


Fig. 192.—Forceps for the removal of upper first and second molar roots, not separated from the crown, in which the outer blade passes through the outer alveolar wall.

some specially adapted to the conditions in question. The outer blade (Figs. 193, 194) is made like that for an ordinary molar tooth, but narrower, rather longer, and with the inter-circle point more pronounced and sharper: the inner blade is also narrower,

Fig. 193.—Forceps which we designed for the removal of upper first and second molar roots when not separated from the crown.

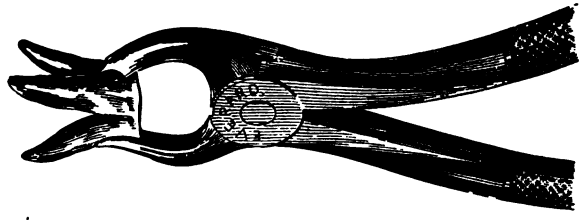


Fig. 194 represents the forceps described in Fig. 193 applied to a molar root.

thinner, longer, and sharper, and, near its extremity, bent outward in the direction which the palatine fang takes. Such an instrument can be pressed up parallel with such a root, and,

when closed upon it, will insure a firm grasp at or between the two external fangs, as well as upon the palatine fang. In operating, the force should be perhaps most inclined inwards, as there is some liability of the instrument slipping off the tooth when it is moved in the opposite direction. If the fangs be not firmly united to the crown, the instrument will then divide them, generally bringing away one or more of them, and doing the work of cutting-forceps designed especially for the separation of such roots. These latter forceps have their inner or palatine blade of much the same form as in those last described, whilst the

Fig. 195.—Forceps for separating the fangs of upper molar teeth. The cutting-edge blade is applied between the two external fangs, the opposite blade to the palatine fang.

outer or buccal blade terminates in a vertical cutting edge (Fig. 195), which, when closed, approaches within a short distance of the former. In the application of them, the palatine blade is first adjusted and then the outer closed upon it; generally, but not always, in such application, dividing a portion of the mucous membrane and the thin outer edge of the alveolar process. Increased pressure cuts through the two external roots, the sharp blade penetrating into the palatine root, which is generally brought away in the forceps, and the operation concluded by removing the separated external roots with fine fang-forceps.

That such roots have proved a difficulty to practitioners is evidenced by the variety of instruments that have been devised for their removal (Figs. 196, 197). When, however, the disease

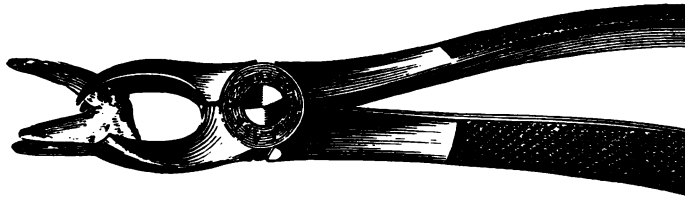


Fig. 196.—Forceps (Stevens') for extracting the roots of upper molars. The palatine blade is divided into two points which grasp the palatine root on either side and prevent the instrument from slipping off the tooth.

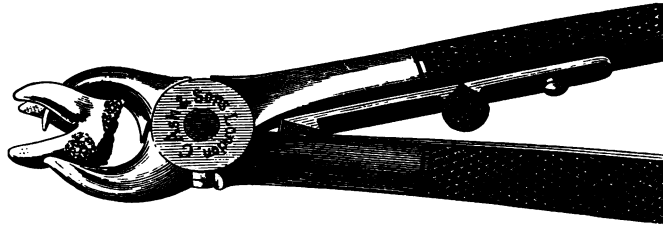


Fig. 197.—Forceps (Baly's) for extracting the roots of upper molars. This is very similar in construction to the dividing forceps, but by means of the stop can be employed for removing the fang *en masse*.

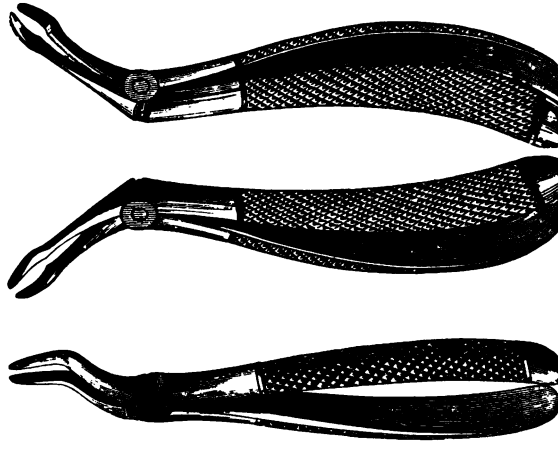


Fig. 198.—Forceps for extracting the roots of upper molar teeth when separated from the crown.

has advanced so far as to have destroyed the whole of the crown, and to leave the several roots detached from each other, the operation is generally a simple one, and readily accomplished with the fine root-forceps (Fig. 198), and by giving to the instrument a rotatory movement, as each fang separately is of a conical form. The roots of upper third molars, not generally divergent to the extent of first or second molars, are not, except from their position, very difficult to remove. Root forceps, the blades of which when open are nearly parallel with each other, and wider than for bicuspids, and are at a much greater angle with the handles (Fig. 199), the latter inclining

Fig. 199.—Forceps devised by us for extracting the roots of upper third molars.

backwards at about 1 inch from the hinge, have been constructed for us, and have proved of great service for many years.

The same forceps may often be employed with advantage for other molars when the tooth is softened to the bifurcation of its fangs; for, when firmly thrust up the alveolus, it seldom fails to bring away one, two, or sometimes all, the roots at once.

Roots of lower incisors and cuspidati may be advantageously operated upon with forceps having the form described for removing the bicuspids from the side (Fig. 177), but provided with slighter and sharper pointed blades (Fig. 200). For the

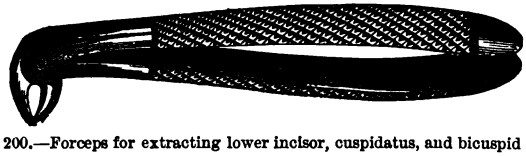


Fig. 200.—Forceps for extracting lower incisor, cuspidatus, and bicuspid roots.

incisors they must not be so broad as to impinge upon adjoining teeth; for the bicuspids we may use the same; the movements

will be the same for the roots as for the teeth themselves, with the precautions given with regard to roots generally. For

Fig. 201.—Forceps for extracting roots in the lower jaw generally.

either of the foregoing we may also employ the instrument figured above (Fig. 201). Roots of lower may, like those of upper molars, be found detached or united to their crowns;

Fig. 202.—Forceps for dividing the fangs of lower molar teeth when attached to the crowns.

and forceps have been constructed for dividing them, or specially acting upon them (Fig. 202, 203) in this condition.

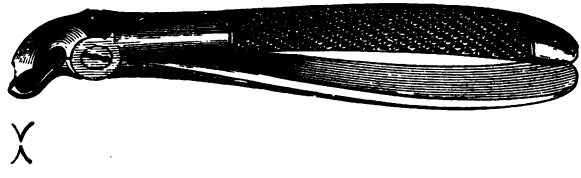


Fig. 203.—Forceps for extracting the roots of lower molar teeth when attached to the crowns.

These we have found unnecessary, because, according to our experience, those just described accomplished the object more perfectly. If we take the case where the roots are connected with the crown, we prefer root-forceps used from the side of the mouth, as just described, and apply them in the direction of one of the two fangs, the most visible being by preference selected. The ordinary movements for these teeth will generally bring away the two fangs, but it may be one only, and then the other

is in like manner removed. Care, however, must be taken to apply the instrument directly to the fang and not to the space between the two fangs. When these are separated, the matter is generally simple enough.

For the roots of a lower wisdom-tooth, we should rely almost solely on the elevator; but, when it has lost its neighbour, or is very carious on its anterior surface, we may use root-forceps applied from the side of the mouth, but having the blades curved backwards to reach them (Fig. 204), or root-

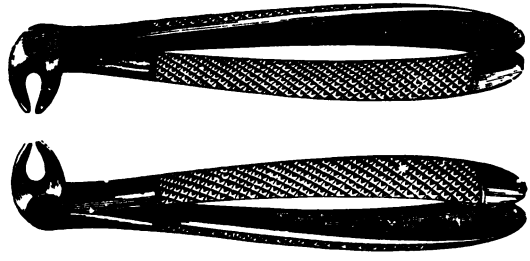


Fig. 204.—Forceps for extracting the roots of lower second and third molars. As the blades are curved backwards, a pair for each side is essential.

forceps with blades parallel with the handles, and applied from the front of the mouth (Fig. 201). The elevator will, however, be our main resort; the forms and modes of application of which we must now describe.

The elevator we have already compared to one-half of a forceps, but perhaps it would be more correct to call the latter a double elevator, as the obstetric forceps is a double vectis; and no doubt many practitioners employed one blade of the forceps in the manner of an elevator, and some even employed the single blade detached, previously to the introduction of the instrument described and figured by Bell in his work, to whom must be accredited its parentage.

The elevator, for the term punch can in no way be considered as applicable to it, consists essentially of two portions (Fig. 205), viz., the blade and the handle, yet in all forms

of it a portion exists which is intermediate between the two, and may be either straight or curved. The blade is that portion

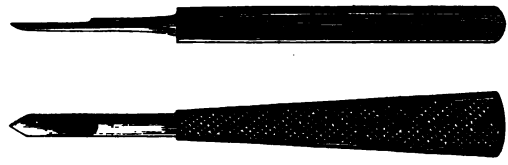


Fig. 205 shows an elevator, front and side view (George's), which we consider one of the best, if not the best, for general purposes.

which, as in the case of the forceps, is applied to the tooth, and some forms are constructed as if with the intention of fitting a root in its long diameter (Fig. 206); but, as the elevator is

Fig. 206 shows an elevator (Tomes') with a spoon-shaped blade, which we think rather objectionable than otherwise.

rarely, if ever, applied in such a direction, the cup-like form which it sometimes presents is only a barrier to its effective employment. The blade should be thin, about $\frac{1}{5}$th of an inch in breadth (though smaller sizes will be very serviceable), flat, or but slightly concave on its anterior surface, and convexly rounded on its posterior surface, and from the latter to the former bevelled off, and sharpened to a V-shaped point: the anterior surface may with advantage be finely grooved in its long axis,[1] the posterior quite smooth, and the extremity kept quite sharp.

The handle should be fully four inches in length, roughened, and of sufficient width to afford a very firm grasp. It may be either of metal, wood, or ivory; the latter two are preferable, as being lighter.

In explaining its action we shall, not to mince matters, call a 'spade a spade,' and, as roots of plants are dug out of the

[1] We believe that this was first suggested by Salter.

ground by that instrument, so precisely are teeth raised from their sockets by the elevator, notwithstanding that the process in the latter has been dignified by a higher title.

It is not so easy an instrument to employ as the forceps, and certainly requires much more care and precaution; it may easily slip, and cases of punctured cheeks and tongues are unfortunately on record. Such accidents, however, can hardly occur in the hands of the experienced and well-trained. Certain members of the profession have for many years been celebrated for their skill in the use of the elevator, and amongst these the name of Cartwright has in the mouths of practitioners been a household word. It was our privilege to be associated for many years with a member of that family, and we cannot feel too grateful for having so often witnessed this most valuable instrument employed with consummate skill.

When the elevator is applied, it should be firmly grasped at the handle, and held much like the knife at dinner, the forefinger of the right hand resting upon it about half an inch from the extremity of the blade: this not only gives steadiness, but also acts as a stop or guard should the instrument happen to slip. The forefinger should as a rule be applied to the back of the elevator in an operation on teeth of the upper jaw and right side of the lower jaw, but to the front of it in an operation on teeth of the left side of the lower jaw: this is on the assumption that in each case we are applying the elevator to the anterior surface of the tooth. For illustration, let us suppose that we are about to operate on a third molar of the right side of the lower jaw, extensively decayed upon its buccal surface. The elevator being held as before described, the operator, standing somewhat behind and leaning over the patient's head, and separating, with the finger and thumb of the left hand, the tongue and cheek from the jaw, should introduce the point of the instrument at the margin of the gum and at the interstice between the necks of the second and third molars; and the point should incline towards the root of the latter rather than the former, and in relation to its alveolus the handle should point upwards,

forwards, and a little outwards. The gum must be penetrated in inserting the blade, and its introduction into the alveolus will be facilitated by giving to the instrument a very slight rotatory movement, an increased amount of which will doubtless have the effect to some extent of loosening the tooth: this movement, combined with an upward one, effected by depressing the handle, will generally raise the tooth from its socket, and in the curve before mentioned, viz., that of which its crown and fangs form a segment. In the final stage of the operation the force must be exerted almost directly upwards, and here every care must be taken to prevent the instrument from darting backwards, when resistance is no longer offered. In the case of

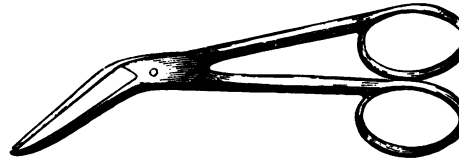


Fig. 207 shows a pair of scissors with the blades at an angle to the handles, suitable for separating a lower wisdom-tooth from mucous attachments after extraction.

lower third molars, it not unfrequently happens, that, when elevated from their sockets, they remain attached to the mucous membrane which is firmly adherent to their necks at their posterior surfaces, from which they must afterwards be detached by a sickle or hoe-shaped lancet, or scissors having curved blades (Fig. 207). The elevator is employed in much the same manner for the other teeth, except that in the upper jaw, and especially for the roots of single-fang teeth, it must be introduced in a more vertical direction.

For detached roots of both jaws, elevators having the blades at an angle to the handles may often be employed with great advantage (Fig. 208, 209). The form devised by Thompson (Fig. 210) has a very suitable angle, but possesses the objectionable spoon-shaped blade. This latter, reduced to about half its thickness, as we have altered it, forms a very serviceable instru-

ment; it must, however, be borne in mind, that with a curved instrument there is a sacrifice of power.

For upper wisdom-teeth, or their roots, the use of the elevator may be attended with such disastrous consequences, that it is well, as a rule, to forbid its employment. The force being exerted in the direction of the tuberosity of the upper jaw, this portion of the bone may be readily detached, and with it, perhaps, which is more important, the hamular process of the internal pterygoid

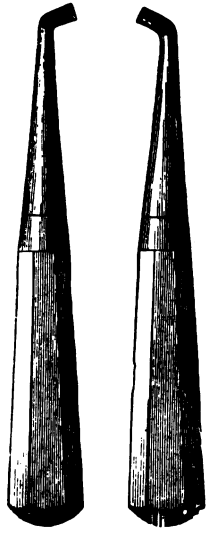


Fig. 208 shows elevators with the blades at an angle to the handles, right and left instruments.

Fig. 209 an elevator the blade of which can be set at any angle.

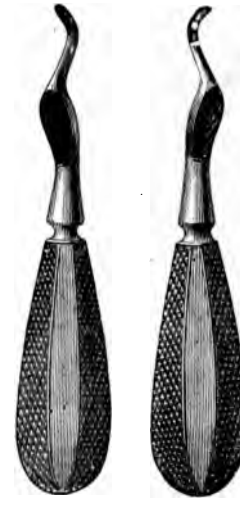


Fig. 210 shows the elevator of Thompson, right and left instruments.

plate, causing deafness on that side, and thus unpleasantly demonstrating, practically, the function recently attributed to the circumflexus-palati muscles: nevertheless we have witnessed recently the same complication occurring in the employment of the forceps, and in the hands of one who could only be characterised as a most careful and successful operator. This process of bone is at times so slightly attached to its surroundings, as in the cases just noticed, that interference with the latter must

almost of necessity cause its separation. An instrument even more likely to produce this result than the elevator, is one designed for the removal of wisdom-teeth, and resembling a pair of bone-cutting forceps, with the blades bent at rather more than a right angle to the handles: when closed, the blades form a smooth inclined plane along which the tooth glides. In its employment, say for an upper wisdom-tooth, the open blades are closed forcibly between that tooth and the second molar,—very much in the manner that one would adopt if it were desired to

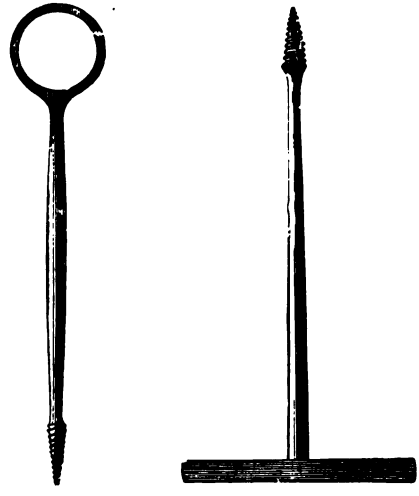


Fig. 211 shows two forms of screw instrument for extracting roots of teeth.

cut away the wisdom-tooth with the tuberosity,—with the intention of causing the tooth to slide along the smooth inclined plane formed by the blades when thus closed.

The elevator may be used in a manner different from the foregoing, especially in the case of loose and temporary roots, viz., by applying its point firmly against them, and then pushing upwards, downwards, or laterally, as the case may demand.

For very fragile roots, of single-fanged teeth more especially, an instrument having at one termination a conical screw has at

times been employed (Fig. 211). The root must be cleared of softened dentine, and the screw is then inserted into its interior. We are amongst the very few who, in this country at least, have experienced its application upon ourselves. The process was somewhat tedious but the results quite satisfactory. Other instruments for the removal of roots of teeth have been devised and employed, but, as they are seldom used, we think a description of them will only tend to complicate the subject.

Extraction of the temporary teeth will be conducted upon precisely the same principles as in the case of the permanent ones, except that instruments on a smaller scale will be required and fewer will be necessary: a small straight pair for the upper incisors and cuspidati (Fig. 212), and a small curved—

Fig. 212.—Forceps for extracting upper temporary incisors and cuspidati.

Fig. 213.—Forceps for extracting lower temporary incisors and cuspidati.

hawk's-bill—pair for the same in the lower jaw (Fig. 213). For the upper molars a small pair (Fig. 214) with blades

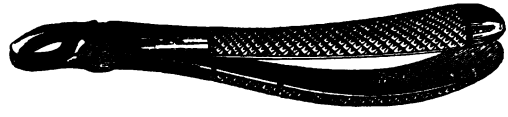


Fig. 214.—Forceps for extracting upper temporary molars.

constructed, though on a smaller scale, similar to the instrument described for the upper third molars, will do for either side; as also for the lower molars will one pair, a smaller instrument (Fig. 215) than, but similar to, that used for the per-

manent molars: the blades may be parallel with the handles, or the reverse. The movements of seizing, separating, and removing will be the same as in the case of similar permanent teeth, but less force in every way will be necessary.

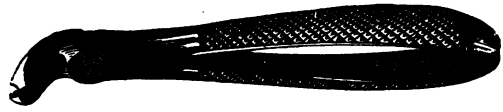


Fig. 215.—Forceps for extracting lower temporary molars.

The roots of the temporary molars are more divergent in proportion to their crowns than those of the permanent ones, and are consequently more liable to fracture in their removal; they are generally, however, very readily removed with a small elevator. Cases do, though rarely, occur, in which the roots of a lower temporary molar so envelop its permanent successor, that both come away together; but a more than casual occurrence of this would reflect the reverse of credit on the operator. Temporary teeth during the stage of absorption are at times in actual union at spots with the surrounding bone, and in their removal yield with a snap, strongly suggestive of fracture; membranous union yielding may also give the same sound, and so characteristic, that a bystander often exclaims, 'It is broken!' To one unacquainted with the appearances a tooth undergoing absorption presents, the conviction is that a portion is left; and, as both sight and touch often reveal the presence of tooth-substance, the instrument is again applied, and an undeveloped bicuspid is disinterred.

To the medical student who may have patiently followed us thus far through the present chapter, we can well imagine the feelings of dismay with which, after our condemnation of the key as an instrument unjustifiable in the present day, he has had instrument after instrument heaped upon him to supply its place; and he will probably exclaim, 'This is a methodical way of shutting me out from ever undertaking an extraction through the costliness of the instruments necessary.' To such an one we would reply, that we have only been attempting to describe the

very best manner in which the operation of extraction can be performed, and we may now for his satisfaction inform him, that a set consisting of seven forceps and an elevator will, with a moderate amount of experience, and the faculty for adaptation, serve him well for all but quite extraordinary cases.

He will require the following instruments:—viz. 1. One that will do for upper incisors, cuspidati, and bicuspids, also for the temporary molars: for these we recommend the upper bicuspid forceps (see Fig. 165), as above described, the slight curve in the handles being of little impediment when it is employed for the six front teeth. 2. One that will do for the lower incisors, cuspidati, and bicuspids, also for the temporary molars: for these we recommend that above described for lower bicuspids (see Fig. 177), and applied from the side of the mouth. 3 and 4. For the upper permanent molars, the forceps above described for them (see Fig. 168), viz., a pair for each side, and with the curve in the handles suitable for the wisdom-teeth. 5. For the lower molars, the instrument suitable for these (see Fig. 181), applied from the front of the mouth. 6 and 7. A pair of upper and a pair of lower root-forceps (see Figs. 190, 201), which, besides serving for roots, will be found satisfactory for upper and lower temporary incisors and cuspidati. 8. An elevator (see Fig. 205).

CHAPTER XIII.

DIFFICULTIES AND COMPLICATIONS OCCURRING IN EXTRACTION.

We must now consider some of the difficulties and complications that may be expected in the operation of extraction. A very common difficulty is great resistance to our efforts on the part of the tooth, and our judgment as well as our skill will be taxed in deciding how much we may lawfully employ. We may expect to find teeth of a yellowish shade, and somewhat worn on their crowns, especially about middle age and in persons of wiry constitution, more difficult to remove than large light-coloured ones in younger persons. The size of the crown will be no criterion, as the fangs or their firmness may be out of all proportion to them. A tooth, especially a first or second molar standing alone, will often prove unusually hard to remove. Our judgment will often be sorely taxed in such cases, but we may well lay down as a rule, that the practitioner, especially if a strong man, should never expend the whole of the strength he can summon on any tooth; the amount necessary to be exerted may be great, but must be restricted within limits; happily with the forceps it is hardly possible to do the damage formerly witnessed with the key. It is extremely unpleasant to send a patient away with an aching tooth *in situ*, but in most cases we have found a temporary cessation of pain in a tooth the removal of which has been attempted, whilst we may almost for certain give the assurance, that, should the tooth again become tender, it will also become somewhat loose. In hospital practice we have had, on many occasions, patients come to us for the removal of teeth which had resisted efforts that we should consider dangerous and unwarrantable, but in whom, in

most cases, the teeth yielded to a moderate amount of force. Some days, however, had elapsed since those efforts, the result of which was inflammation, with softening about the alveolus and the alveolo-dental membrane. Young practitioners are apt to attribute success in such cases to their superior skill; time and experience will, however, set them right in such matters. A tooth may be fractured when only a moderate amount of force is employed, and that skilfully; and we are convinced that some teeth are more liable to this than others. We have had patients whose statement has been that they have never had a tooth removed in its entirety. A tooth, the attachments of which are of greater strength than its own cohesive force, must of necessity yield in the latter, as will a rotten carrot when attempted to be pulled from the ground. In such cases, should the remaining portion prove very firm, we may have to employ judgment as to the length of time for which we are to persevere in our efforts to remove it: it might turn out that we are attempting an impossibility, as evidenced at times by the

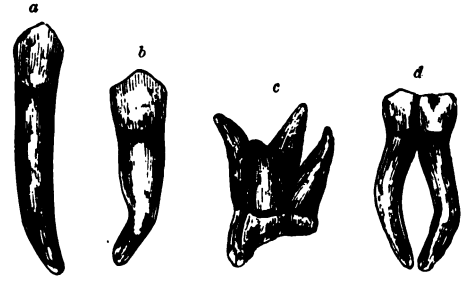


Fig. 216 shows teeth which from the form and direction of their fangs would present a considerable resistance in their removal: *a*, lower canine with excessively long fang; *b*, lower bicuspid, fang curved; *c*, upper molar with four very divergent fangs; *d*, lower molar with long and convergent fangs. Copied from specimens in our possession and drawn actual size.

abnormal form of its roots or growths upon them. Should a living pulp be left attached to the remaining portion, our efforts should be more persistent than if it had come away from it; but in the latter cases repeated applications of carbolic acid will be of much service.

The form and direction of the fangs are a common source of difficulty; the single-fanged teeth may have the roots spirally twisted or bent at almost any angle. The molars may have their fangs so divergent or convergent (Fig. 216 *c*, *d*) that their removal, except singly, would be almost an impossibility; and here the dividing forceps will prove of good service (see Figs. 195, 202). In the case of enlarged or twisted single roots they may, as a last resource, have their alveoli trephined over, and thus

Fig. 217 shows a trephine for removing the alveolar process in front of a tooth.

be got out (Fig. 217), but this should only be done in case of great pain being set up by them.

Teeth may, owing to abnormal forms in their crowns (Fig. 218), be rendered more difficult of removal, no ordinary instru-

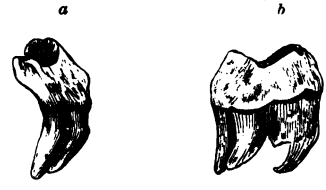


Fig. 218 shows a front and lateral view of a malformed upper third molar, to which the forceps of ordinary construction (Fig. 170) could not be properly adjusted: *a*, front or buccal aspect; *b*, side or approximal aspect.

ment being capable of adaptation to them; and the positions assumed by teeth in regard to their neighbours may wholly prevent the employment of the ordinary instruments, or at all events in the usual directions. This condition, the result of crowding, is not unfrequently met with in the lower incisors: an incisor may be placed so directly before or behind other teeth that there will be no space in the former for the posterior blade, or in the latter for the anterior blade, to be applied. To meet such cases, forceps having a very narrow posterior or a very narrow anterior blade are constructed (Fig. 219); but, as these narrow blades are very apt to nip off the crown, we, as a rule,

prefer employing one of the ordinary forms of root-forceps, grasping the tooth laterally, and pressing the blades towards the alveolus at an angle to the crown. For the teeth of the upper jaw

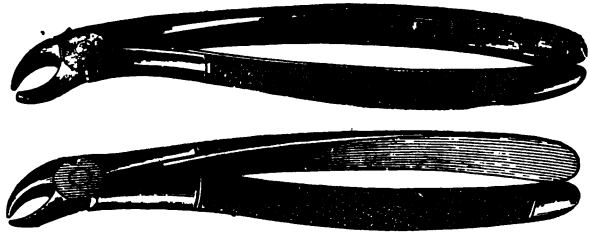


Fig. 219.—Forceps for extracting lower incisors and cuspidati when crowded internally or externally. In one instrument the inner, and in the other instrument the outer, blade is made very narrow.

similar forceps to those before mentioned are constructed (Fig. 220), but to these we apply the same remarks as in the case of the teeth of the lower jaw.

Fig. 220.—Forceps for extracting upper incisors and cuspidati when crowded internally or externally.

The dental surgeon may be called upon to remove teeth which are only partially erupted, or even not erupted. Mis-

Fig. 221.—Alveolar forceps (Cattlin's) with saw-edged blades for cutting through alveolar process, to give a firm grasp on teeth, otherwise not obtainable. They are provided with a stop to keep the blades at a fixed distance apart.

placed or supernumerary teeth appearing in the palate are at times almost impossible to remove without cutting away some

of the overhanging alveolus:[1] it is best in such cases to wait until these are more fully erupted. The lower third molars are often a source of considerable trouble before they are fully erupted, setting up abscesses of considerable extent in their immediate neighbourhood, or at some distance from them.

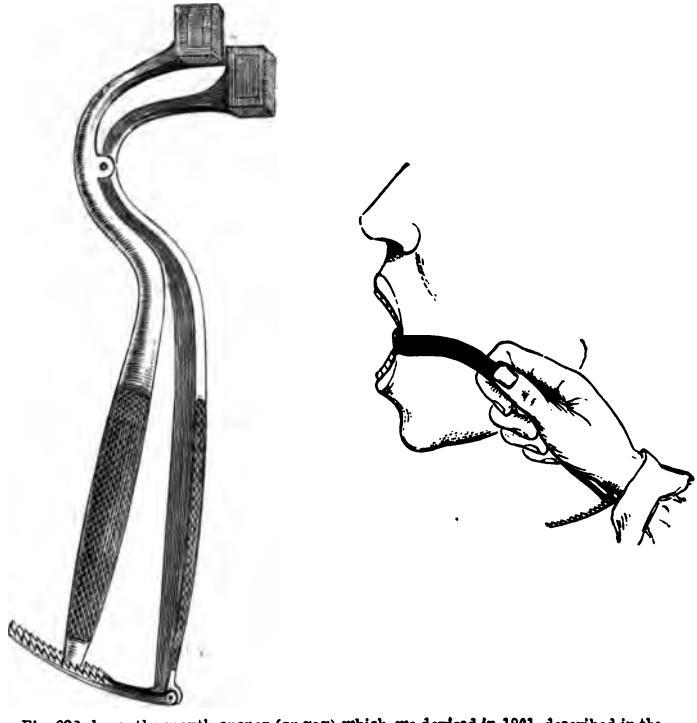


Fig. 222 shows the mouth-opener (or gag) which we devised in 1861, described in the text. The cut on the right side shows the instrument as applied.

From their position when much crowded it is almost impossible to remove them, their crowns being partially covered by the second molars in front, and the coronoid processes behind; and it

[1] This object can be most effectually attained by Cattlin's forceps (Fig. 221), which are provided with serrated blades and a stop which keeps them open at a given distance.

is therefore necessary at times in such cases to sacrifice the second molar. We should have naturally expected that under these conditions the third molar would have lost its vitality, and have still continued to be some source of trouble; but cases have occurred, in which all trouble and discharge disappeared soon after the removal of the second molar. In many of these cases, a further complication exists, from the contraction of the muscles which close the mouth: this, however, may be generally overcome by very gradually introducing between the teeth wedges of soft deal of increasing size, until sufficient room is obtained, which for the elevator will only be that sufficient to raise the tooth out of its socket. Under an anæsthetic the mouth may be forcibly opened either by the screw-dilator, or by an instrument that we devised several years ago for such cases (Fig. 222), constructed somewhat like a pair of forceps, but reversed at the hinge, so that by compressing the handles we can open the blades: the latter, protected by some soft substance, are, when closed, pressed between the teeth or, if there be none, the gums; and, the handles being forcibly pressed towards each other, the muscular resistance is overcome and the mouth opened.[1]

Teeth which are impacted, or from other causes unerupted, often become a source of serious trouble, and in attempting to treat such cases we may overlook the actual condition. Of three such instances we will give a brief account. The first was that of a lady, rather past middle age, who had suffered for a considerable time from abscesses in the right side of the neck: in looking for a cause we discovered a small opening in the gum over the spot at which a wisdom-tooth would be developed. A

[1] Much more recently an instrument on precisely the same principle was devised by our friend F. Mason, who was unaware of the existence of ours. We are bound to say that his form is in most respects superior to ours, and has been strongly recommended by the late Sir W. Fergusson for employment in the operation of Staphyloraphy. In one particular, however, it is less serviceable, viz., in the greater space occupied by the blades when closed, making it difficult to introduce them between the teeth with the mouth closed or nearly closed.

steel probe (Fig. 223), introduced fully half an inch below the surface, struck against a hard substance, and conveyed a strong impression that that substance was enamel. Chloroform was administered, a free incision made, and after a time, for the bleeding was very copious and much interfered throughout, a portion of the crown of a tooth was rendered visible; bone was cut away round it, and eventually it was prised out in two

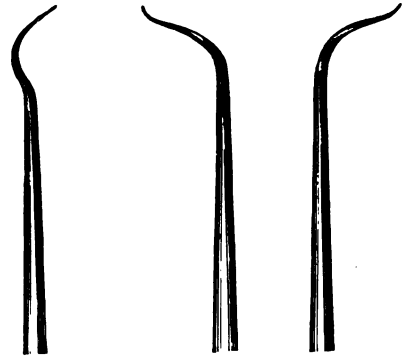


Fig. 223 shows steel probes of various curves useful for detecting unerupted teeth.

pieces. The patient was more or less under chloroform for the space of two hours. The troublesome symptoms subsided soon after the operation.

The second case was that of a gentleman, past middle-life, who had suffered for twenty-four years from what had been regarded as disease of the inferior maxilla on the right side: as in the former case, a hard substance presented itself, which was detected at some distance, about $\frac{2}{3}$ inch, from the surface. When struck by a probe it likewise gave the impression of being tooth-substance. To avoid the trouble from hæmorrhage as in the former case, this patient was first subjected to nitrous oxide, when a free incision was made into the swollen tissues, and the opening well dilated with the finger. He was then allowed to recover consciousness, and the position of the tooth, which could not be seen, was ascertained as nearly as possible.

When bleeding had ceased, chloroform was administered, and the tooth, first loosened with an elevator, was without much difficulty removed by a pair of long-bladed root-forceps. This case was rendered interesting by the length of time during which its true cause had remained overlooked; especially as the jaw had on one occasion been trephined in the hope of opening up an abscess.

The third case was that of a gentleman aged seventy-two, who had suffered for some few months from a tumour in the neck, also upon the right side. As it was increasing rapidly, an operation had been advised by an eminent provincial practitioner. The friends, however, desired first the opinion of a London surgeon specially eminent in such cases. The result of his examination was the conclusion that the tumour was most probably a lymphatic gland, enlarged by the irritation set up by an unerupted lower wisdom-tooth of that side. Nitrous oxide first, and then chloroform, as in the last case, were administered, and, after much difficulty, and the free use of the gouge, the whole of a three-fanged tooth in several fragments was removed. Within forty-eight hours the growth, which was about the size of a fig, had diminished by one half, and in a fortnight had, with the exception of a little thickening, wholly disappeared. The reader may well understand the difficulties to be encountered in such cases; happily they are rare, yet they all occurred in the practice of one individual, Sir J. Paget, whose acumen, in at once discovering their true causes, cannot but excite our admiration.

In the removal of a tooth in a young subject, it would not be at all an unlikely thing for a neighbour to come out with it, if care and precaution were not exercised; in such cases, the adjoining tooth will be seen generally to move with the one operated on. We believe that in such cases no bony septum exists between the two teeth, and the periosteum is common to both. When this occurs, the operator should firmly press with the left thumb upon the crown of the tooth so seen to move, and should, in using the forceps or elevator, not apply more

force than can be controlled by the thumb; until a severance is felt, when the removal may be safely accomplished. Should an adjoining tooth be partially or wholly removed from its socket, it should be immediately reinstated, and firmly pressed into its place, when it will most probably again become united to its membranes, and as serviceable as if nothing had occurred. In removing teeth of young persons with the elevator, especially where an adjoining tooth has not been erupted, great care must be exercised, or the unerupted tooth may be disinterred also; it is best therefore, if possible, always to employ the forceps in such cases.

Teeth, as previously stated, are sometimes found united to each other at their roots; the resistance to removal which such will offer can well be imagined. It is almost impossible to diagnose such condition or the existence of extensive exostosis beforehand; yet, as before noticed, an application of the electric light such as we once witnessed at the Odontological Society might materially aid us in such matters. The appliance was the invention of Hart, electrician of Edinburgh, and so perfectly illuminated the mouth that the fangs of the teeth could be seen through the structures which enveloped them.

Whilst exercising every care, we find it at times impossible to avoid removing with the tooth small portions of the alveolar

Fig. 224 shows an upper first molar tooth with a portion of the external alveolar plate attached to it. From the form that the portion of bone presents and its absence at the extremity of the fangs, it would have been almost impossible to remove the tooth without removing it as well.

Fig. 225 shows an upper third molar with the tuberosity of the superior maxilla attached to it. In this case also the form of the bone rendered its removal with the tooth a matter of necessity. This case is alluded to at p. 231.

process attached to it. Thus, especially with the upper first molars, the outer alveolar wall is often extremely thin and slight,

and these thin portions yield more readily than does the alveolo-dental membrane to which they are united. We need not distress our patients by an exposition of the same, or lead them to imagine that something untoward has occurred, but mentally congratulate them, as these sharp portions, if left, are often a source of worry and inconvenience until they either separate or are absorbed. Where the alveolar process is abnormally high, and becomes, as it frequently does, conspicuous above the surface when several contiguous teeth have been removed, we may with advantage pare off the prominent

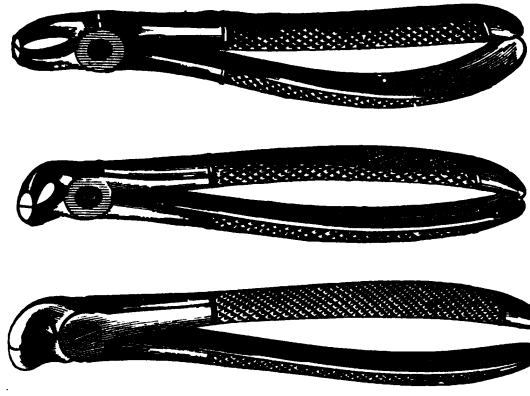


Fig. 226 shows three forms of forceps suitable for cutting away projecting portions of alveolar process, &c.

portions with suitable bone-cutting forceps (Fig. 226) : the process of healing will be thereby much accelerated.

Should larger portions of alveolar process be fractured, their removal or retention will depend upon their dimensions : if they at all involve the stability of adjoining teeth, our efforts should be directed to their retention. Cases of direct transverse fracture of the lower jaw have occurred, the result of attempting to remove a tooth; and under the hands, we believe, of those whose skilfulness as operators has never been questioned. We can understand this most unfortunate complication occur-

ring when only a very moderate amount of force has been employed: preparations of the lower jaw are to be met with, where more than one half of the thickness of the bone has been lost by alveolar abscess. Where extensive alveolar abscess has occurred, it will be well for us to bear this fact in mind; and should such accident occur, the dental surgeon ought to be the best person to rectify it.

A more common accident attendant upon extraction of teeth than the foregoing will be dislocation, partial or complete, of the inferior maxilla; it most frequently occurs during the administration of an anæsthetic, doubtless in consequence of the relaxed condition of the muscles. To reduce it, the two thumbs of the operator, well protected by a napkin or folds of lint, should be placed upon the back-teeth, and, whilst the jaw is thus depressed at its posterior portions, its anterior portion should be elevated by the pressure of the fingers under the chin. In adopting this, the ordinary process, we have never met with any difficulty in accomplishing our object.

Cases have occurred in which the lower teeth, especially the third molars, by embracing the inferior dental nerve with their fangs, have of necessity in their removal caused the severance of the latter, and we have known a case where paralysis of the same nerve followed the extraction of a third molar, which could only be accounted for as the result of shock. To the patient the result of this injury is distressing, as from loss of sensation the saliva trickles from that side of the mouth without his knowledge, and the consequent effort to retain it within the lips. The nerve usually more or less unites, and resumes its function after a time.

It will often be difficult to determine which tooth is actually the seat of pain when several contiguous ones are much diseased: percussion, or the application of cold to each, will generally reveal the true offender, but it will occasionally happen that the seat of pain is at some distance from the spot referred to by the patient,—actually in the opposing jaw. If we only followed patients' impressions, we should often remove teeth,

which, though undoubtedly bad, are not at the time of their visit the cause of their sufferings. We must bear in mind that pain, set up by a diseased tooth, does not always cease with its removal; and this is especially the case where inflammation has set up in, or extended to, its periosteum. The pain after the laceration of membranes in such a condition is, we can well comprehend, usually very acute, and may last for several hours, according to the stage of inflammation at which the tooth was removed. We have found the most serviceable application at the time to be a mixture of pure carbolic acid with a small quantity of chloroform, applied on cotton to the alveolus. If the pain continue for several days, soothing fomentations, especially poppy with chlorate of potash (see p. 31), will be found the most efficacious. A cold taken after extraction is often the explanation given, but we think that in many cases we see on the mucous membrane precisely what we should on an external surface describe as an erythematous inflammation, but of which cold may undoubtedly be the originator. The healing of a vacated alveolus, is chiefly, no doubt, effected by granulation; still in many cases the overhanging mucous membrane so nearly meets, that it may be regarded as partially by first intention; but all wounds on healthy mucous membranes heal more readily than on outer surfaces, as from their positions they partake more of the character of subcutaneous ones. In the above mentioned cases, we find the mucous membrane surrounding the alveolus swollen, congested, and everted, and the alveolus commonly occupied by a slough.

A not uncommon complication occurring after extraction is abnormal hæmorrhage: this may be primary or secondary. There is always more or less bleeding immediately after the removal of a tooth, greater and prolonged if there has been long standing inflammation, the vessels under such conditions having less tendency to contract. Should it continue to any unusual extent, we may employ cold by iced water, exposure to the air, tannic acid, or even perchloride of iron, or plugging; but the last is seldom necessary with the primary hæmorrhage. The

secondary hæmorrhage is much more difficult of control, and generally occurs under the following or similar circumstances. The patient who has undergone removal of a tooth in the day, and with no specially untoward circumstances, wakes up in the night with his mouth full of blood, and finds that a considerable quantity has been running from it during sleep. He probably feels somewhat faint from the loss, and, if he do not seek advice and assistance, it may go on until fatal syncope supervenes. Death from this cause, especially in remote country places, is not very rare, and even does occur at times in large towns. The cause of the secondary hæmorrhage is of a constitutional rather than a local character, and is stated to be more dependent upon a diseased condition of the muscular coats of the blood-vessels, than upon a want, in the blood, of the property of forming a firm coagulum or clot. Both, no doubt, may produce this condition, the former probably in those who are ever liable to it, i.e. persons suffering from hæmophilia or the hæmorrhagic diathesis, the latter in those who may have only been subject to it at particular times. Where such tendency is known to exist, we must exert all resources before extracting a tooth; and, if compelled to do so, must plug the alveolus in the manner which we shall now describe, and which, we are happy to say, has never failed in our hands, although we have been called to cases where other means proved of no avail, and where the patients appeared fast sinking. A piece of matico leaf, which has been immersed in water for a few minutes, should be rolled up, the under-surface of the leaf outwards, into as many little pellets, about the size of a pea, as the roots of the tooth removed: a narrow tent of lint, about $\frac{1}{3}$ inch wide, and about four or five inches in length, should be prepared, as also a pad of the same about the size of a chestnut. The mouth should be cleansed from blood, and the socket carefully cleared of coagula with cotton, and immediately after the removal of the cotton a pellet of matico introduced into each alveolus and pressed firmly down with a broad compressing plugger; upon the matico the tent of lint is with the same instrument to be firmly

packed layer upon layer, until the alveolus is filled a little above the surface of the gum, and upon this is placed the pad, which should extend above the crowns of the adjoining teeth, and becomes pressed upon when the mouth is closed. The mouth should be kept closed by a bandage passing round the head and under the chin.[1] The horizontal position, with the head and shoulders slightly raised, should be maintained, and the apartment kept cool, and hot and spirituous drinks avoided; but, should the patient appear sinking, some stimulant must be administered, and the patient kept warm; as a very little lowering of temperature, after great loss of blood, may suffice to extinguish the spark of life: the occurrence of convulsions will indicate for certain the latter treatment, if not, in addition to it, transfusion of blood. Strong beef jelly should also be given in small quantities, but at frequent intervals, the finger of a bystander being kept pressed upon the pad whilst the mouth of the patient is opened. Gallic acid, gr. v–x; Tinct. ferri perchlor. ♏ xv–xxx; or acetate of lead, gr. j–iv, may be administered Care should be taken to allow the plug to remain until it is pressed out of the alveolus by plastic formation beneath it; but in very severe cases we must be prepared for a return of the hæmorrhage when this takes place. Should, however, our efforts at controlling the bleeding, by pressure or other means, prove unavailing, even after we have substituted a gutta-percha or vulcanite plate for the lint pad, and this has been attended with success, we must, as a last resource, be prepared to cut off the supply of blood from the part, although this would probably be worse than useless where the hæmorrhagic diathesis is well-marked. In other cases it may prove successful. Should this step be imperative, we are disposed not to recommend the course which is generally adopted, viz., diligation of the common carotid artery, but rather to advise diligation of the external carotid (Fig. 227), and for the reason that most disastrous consequences are very likely to result from shutting off one of the four principal

[1] We have known several cases where the application of B. W. Richardson's styptic colloid has proved most successful.

supplies of blood to the brain. Anatomical considerations would also lead us to fear secondary hæmorrhage when a collateral circulation has been established through the free inosculation of vessels at the base of the brain—Willis's circle—but experience points to the fact that this is not the case. The

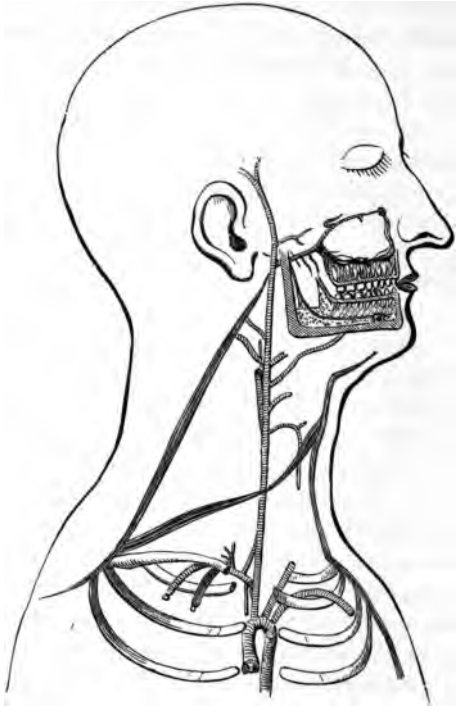


Fig. 227 represents a diagram of the arteries of the right side of the neck.

operation of tying the external carotid in the living subject is not as simple as the same operation on the common trunk,[1] but

[1] If the case be one in which the hæmorrhagic diathesis exists, there may be less danger, on the whole, in tying the common carotid artery, as fewer vessels will be interfered with than in the operation of tying the external carotid.

this is a minor consideration when compared with the greater danger to life from the latter. Before proceeding to this extreme resort, we should naturally try the effects of pressure on the vessels, and this might be kept up for a moderate time, but, owing to the nature of the structures pressed upon, could not be tolerated for any lengthened period. In the case of hæmorrhage from a tooth of the lower jaw, the inferior dental artery could be readily got at, and obliterated in its passage through the bone.

CHAPTER XIV.

ANÆSTHESIA.

WHEN performing the operation of extraction under an anæsthetic, we may have to modify to a considerable extent the rules that we have laid down for the process in general; and, as this has in the present day become a very important branch of the practice of dental surgery, we feel that we may with advantage devote a chapter to its consideration.

The history of anæsthetics is so intimately connected with Dental Surgery, that we think that a brief outline of it may not be out of place in this volume.

While we bear in mind that the ancients had made attempts, more or less successful, to alleviate or wholly obliterate the pain attendant upon surgical operations, the history of anæsthetics must really date from the hour when a dental practitioner had, at his own suggestion, a tooth removed with a total absence of sensation.

Nitrous oxide, or protoxide of nitrogen, was discovered by Priestley, and its properties investigated by Sir H. Davy, who actually suggested that it might be used as an anæsthetic; but this suggestion probably never met the eye or reached the ear of Horace Wells, and, so far as we are cognisant, was not, as such, ever acted upon. Wells's inspiration came from witnessing a slight accident occur without pain being felt, at a popular lecture by one Colton, who was illustrating upon one of his audience the exhilarating properties and ludicrous effects of nitrous oxide gas—a very common practice some years ago. The failure of Wells when attempting to employ the agent for long

surgical operations, owing no doubt to defective apparatus, led him to discontinue his investigations, and to embark in unsuccessful speculation resulting in an early premature death. Fortunately for humanity, a former associate of Wells took up the matter and with more successful results. With Morton, to whom we are alluding, must be associated the name of Jackson: the latter supplied, while the former administered, ether, and for the extraction of a tooth. The result was a perfect success, and ether, being more easy of administration than nitrous oxide, soon proved available also in extensive surgical operations.

The news of the great discovery soon crossed the Atlantic, and Robinson, a dentist, had the honour of first administering ether in this country. The pungency of ether, together with a degree of difficulty in its administration, led to the investigation of the properties of bodies of the same class, and amongst these chloric ether was administered by Jacob Bell. As often happens in such experiments, the cases selected proved unfortunate ones; the after-effects were unsatisfactory, and this discouragement led to the abandonment of that which under other circumstances would no doubt have anticipated the brilliant discovery of Sir J. Simpson. Chloric ether we now know to be a mixture of chloroform and alcohol, but its composition was not at that time understood, because chloroform, as such, had not been isolated. It was not long, however, before Waddy, of Liverpool, obtained this fluid pure, and sent some of it to Sir James Simpson, who established the value of its anæsthetic properties; and in a little time chloroform, owing to its more agreeable flavour and easier administration than ether, almost entirely superseded the latter, at least in this country. The agent soon became employed almost whenever requested, and administered with probably even less precaution than is nitrous oxide in the present day; when lo! a patient died suddenly under its influence: 'because they do not know how to give it,' remarked one whose great experience had led him to a rash confidence in himself; but a few days had scarcely passed when the like sad event occurred under his own hands. A reaction now set in, and, as might be expected,

stronger than was warranted; some medical authorities refusing almost entirely to sanction its use in any case. Other compounds were carefully investigated, mixtures of chloroform and ether, chloroform and alcohol, or the three together, were tried, but with little better results, while some few reverted to ether, which had never been wholly discarded. The idea of producing local anæsthesia naturally occupied the mind of many. A frozen part is painless, and Arnott froze small tumours with

Fig. 228 shows the ether-spray apparatus of B. W. Richardson. By means of a hand or foot bellows air is forced into a graduated jar containing very highly rectified ether, and, in its passage through it, takes up a portion of the fluid, which is projected from a fine jet in the form of a spray, and this evaporating rapidly produces intense cold. In the drawing above is shown (Welsh's) tongue or cheek holder attached to the jet-piece.

a mixture of ice and salt. Teeth were frozen in their sockets by an ingenious apparatus devised by W. Blundell, a dentist, and removed without painful sensation. Frost-bitten wounds do not generally heal up satisfactorily, and the sensation of freezing structures (especially inflamed ones) is not the most agreeable, otherwise no doubt the ingenious instrument for producing cold through evaporation,—the ether-spray devised by B. W. Richardson, (Fig. 228) the discoverer of bi-chloride of methylene and many other anæsthetics—would be very generally employed.

Electricity also had a trial, on the supposition that a nerve could only convey one species of sensation at a time, and that, whilst it was occupied in conducting that of electric shock, it would fail to convey that of pain. The more recent discovery of Brown-Séquard,—that for various sensations special channels of conduction are essential—did not enter into the calculation. Patients who parted with teeth whilst under the influence of electric shock were puzzled to realize how much of what they felt was shock, and how much was pain: but their general conclusions were, that it was as pleasant without the electricity as with it.

Nineteen years had elapsed since the short-lived triumph of Horace Wells, and little had been done in the meantime to further investigate the anæsthetic properties of nitrous oxide; still from time to time we in this country heard of our brethren in the New World speaking cautiously, yet on the whole favourably, of it for dental purposes.

Colton had not forgotten how well people took the gas, and, in comparison with other anæsthetics, how much better they recovered from it, and was led to introduce its employment upon a large scale in New York. Armed with such credentials as the record of some 20,000 successful administrations, Colton visited Paris in the Exhibition year of 1876, and there exhibited this agent. The faculty in France did not appear to espouse it warmly, but it was otherwise with some American practitioners resident there, especially T. W. Evans, a dentist, and Marion Sims, a surgeon-accoucheur. In the spring of the following year, the former visited London, and administered the gas before the staff of the Dental Hospital. The value of an agent evidently so safe, and so well suited for dental purposes, was only too apparent, and within a week of witnessing Evans's administration we had arranged an apparatus, prepared the gas, and given it successfully to four patients. Our readers, acquainted with the present modes of and appliances for administering nitrous oxide, would smile at the cumbrous and rough apparatus at first employed. A large india-rubber bag or balloon contained the gas, connected by a long tube with a wooden mouth-

piece with inlet and outlet valves. The mouth-piece was placed between the patient's teeth, and the lips compressed over it by the fingers, whilst the finger and thumb of a bystander unceremoniously closed the patient's nostrils. To the liberal donations of Evans, who contributed a fund for investigating the merits of nitrous oxide, must be attributed in a great degree the rapidity with which our knowledge of the properties of the gas, and the improved modes of its administration, have come about.[1]

The greatest of these improvements has been the vending of the gas, first in a compressed and finally in a liquid form; otherwise its bulk, or the inconvenience of the practitioner's having to prepare it on his own premises, would ever have been a serious drawback to its general use.

Of the anæsthetics generally employed in Dental Surgery we will first speak of that last mentioned, the earliest introduced, as we have shown, and, under our present state of knowledge, the most suitable by far for the majority of such short operations as the extraction of teeth. A very safe and rapidly acting anæsthetic is the desideratum for such cases, and this we have in nitrous oxide. That it is the safest anæsthetic of any that we possess, there can be little doubt; but this may arise rather from the method of employing it than from anything peculiar to its composition. To fairly compare it with other anæsthetics, it would be necessary to administer it for the same periods of time. Still it must not be regarded as perfectly safe, for, although out of several hundreds of thousands of administrations in this country only two deaths have been recorded, and it is very doubtful whether one of these, that which occurred at Exeter,[2] was attributable directly to the gas, it is yet by no means a difficult matter to destroy life with it: only let the administration be pressed a little too far, and death

[1] *Vide* report of a committee to inquire into the 'Value &c. of Protoxide of Nitrogen as an Anæsthetic, &c.' *Trans. Odont. Soc.*, vol. i. (new series) p. 31, and vol. v. (do.) p. 11.

[2] 'Report on a death from Nitrous Oxide,' *Trans. Odont. Soc.*, vol. v. (new series) p. 83.

must result as a consequence; therefore we would insist that it should be administered only by competent and experienced persons, and, as a rule, never single-handed; departure from this rule is the assumption of an unwarrantable responsibility.

It cannot be stated for certain how nitrous oxide produces its anæsthetic effects; there can, however, be little doubt but that it is not owing to its decomposition in the lungs: the experiments of Hermann, Frankland,[1] the writer,[2] and others have set that question at rest; and the probability is, that its action is due rather to the absence of oxygen in the blood. Nitrogen, it might then be supposed, would answer the purpose as well; but nitrogen, although it may be for a short time readily respired, is not, like nitrous oxide, soluble in the blood, and therefore is not capable of replacing its oxygen. In addition to the results of chemical determination, the following facts are, as we have elsewhere pointed out,[3] conclusive ones to negative the notion that nitrous oxide is decomposed in the blood. Nitrous oxide consists of two volumes of nitrogen and one volume of oxygen, occupying the space of two volumes: if a quart of the gas be respired to and from a bladder, after the lungs have been emptied of air as far as possible, the contents of the bag will nearly disappear. What has become of it? it has not been decomposed in the lungs, as the same bulk, *i.e.* two volumes, would have been returned to the bag: it must, therefore, have entered the blood, and, if decomposed in the latter, what becomes of the nitrogen, set free, as every chemist must admit it would be, and which would at once prove fatal to life? We suspect that those constituents of the blood which have an affinity for oxygen have the like for nitrous oxide, and thus travel with it in the circuit, but without its being decomposed. The appearances of the patient inhaling it are those which are manifested when the blood in the arteries and capillaries assumes a venous character.

Nitrogen when respired, if it can enter the circulation at all,

[1] Report on Nitrous Oxide. *Trans. Odont. Soc.*, vol. v. (new series) p. 13.

[2] *Ibid.* p. 21.

[3] *St. Bartholomew's Hospital Reports*, vol. v. p. 153.

can do so only in very infinitesimal quantities, and hence the oxygen in the blood, following a general law, is yielded up to the tissues the more slowly as its quantity is diminished; in

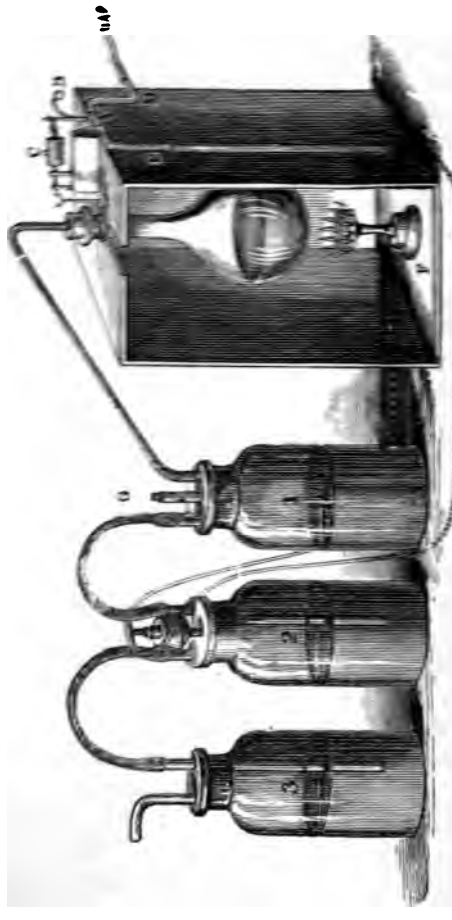


Fig. 229 shows a complete apparatus for generating nitrous oxide gas. *A*, box for supporting the flask containing one, two, or more lbs. of nitrate of ammonia, and also for protecting the gas flame P from currents of air. The gas when generated first passes through water in bottle No. 1, it next passes through a solution of proto-sulphate of iron (3oz. to 1½ pt.) contained in bottle No. 2, and finally through a solution of caustic potash (1 oz. to 1½ pt.) contained in bottle No. 3. The other letters apply to Ash's and Kirby's ingenious apparatus for regulating the supply of gas to the burner, and extinguishing the flame at the proper period.

other words, it is retained in the circulation much longer than when it is replaced at the lungs by another gas: hence the anæsthesia produced by nitrogen is slow and imperfect as com-

pared with that produced by nitrous oxide, which, by replacing the oxygen, more readily abstracts it from the blood.

Nitrous oxide gas may be readily prepared by heating nitrate of ammonia in a glass flask (Fig. 229) and collecting the

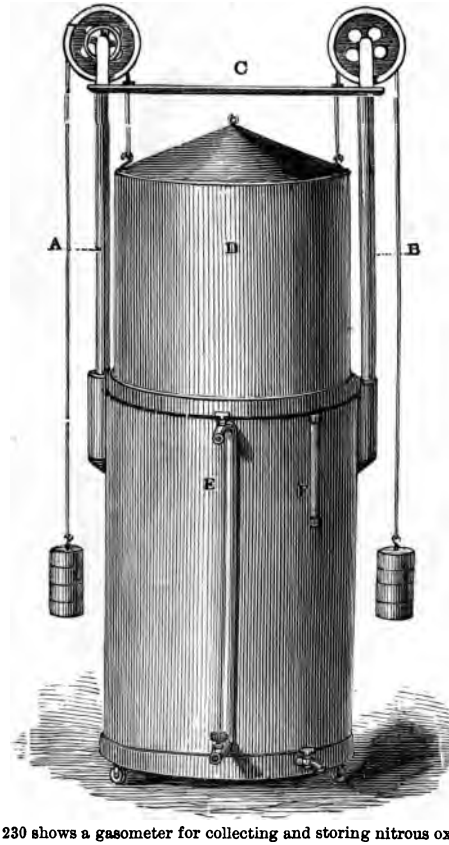


Fig. 230 shows a gasometer for collecting and storing nitrous oxide gas.

products over water, which may be stored in a gasometer (Fig. 230), or by pressure in wrought-iron vessels (see Fig. 231). The salt undergoes a double decomposition, resulting in nitrous oxide and water. As thus prepared the gas will contain im-

purities, viz., some of the higher combinations of nitrogen with oxygen, and often carbonic acid from the presence of carbonate of ammonia in the nitrate. It should, therefore, before being collected in a gasometer, pass through a series of Woulffe's bottles, containing respectively: 1, water; 2, solution of protosulphate of iron; and 3, solution of caustic potash. The chief

Fig. 231 shows a simple form of apparatus for administering nitrous oxide. It consists of a box to hold the apparatus, in which a clamp securely fixes a bottle of liquid gas: this latter is connected with an india-rubber bag by a flexible tube: a flexible tube of larger dimensions connects the bag with a Clover's two-way stopcock which is attached to the face-piece.

precaution necessary is, to see that the heat is gradually applied and evenly maintained.

Fortunately, however, practitioners are saved the trouble of preparing their gas, it being supplied to them in the liquid form by several firms, who guarantee—a most important matter—the safety of the wrought-iron vessels which contain it.

With regard to the mode of administration, &c., we may first describe the apparatus, which, in a simple form, may consist of a wrought-iron bottle of liquid gas supported in a box or

Fig. 232 shows a nitrous oxide apparatus which we have devised. It consists of an iron stand with drawer to hold necessary appliances. The stand supports two bottles of gas so arranged that in case of one failing the other can be employed (Barth's plan, we believe). The gas passes from either bottle to a sausage-shaped bag, and directly from this to the face-piece, a two-way stopcock only intervening. This arrangement (Clover's) possesses great advantages, as the gas comes to the patient more readily than when its progress is impeded by the friction of a tube. Above the gas-bottles is shown an arrangement for administering ether with the gas. It consists of a vessel to receive the ether, under the surface of which a tube dips: by turning a two-way stopcock the current of gas is made to pass through the ether. An outer vessel for holding hot water is also shown, but we have not found it necessary even in the coldest weather.

strong firm frame, so that it can readily be opened by the hand or foot of the administrator (Fig. 231). A more perfect arrange-

ment is when two bottles (Fig. 232) are so connected that, on one failing, the other may be brought into use. By a small flexible tube communication is made between the bottle or bottles and a bag constructed of sheet india-rubber, of oval or sausage form, and capable of containing about one gallon, connected at its opposite extremity almost directly with the face-piece, it being important that there should be the least possible impediment to the passage of the gas from or to the bag. A two-way stopcock of large dimensions serves to close the bag, and at the same time to admit air to the face-piece (Fig. 233)

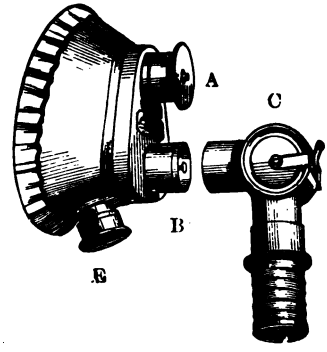


Fig. 233 shows Clover's face-piece and two-way stopcock. The face-piece is constructed of thin sheet lead or composition metal, capable of being bent to the form of the face, and covered with leather. As the metal is apt to break away, we prefer a thin but unyielding metal. The face-piece as now supplied has an air or water-pad where it meets the patient's face, which makes it fit airtight: A, represents the outlet or expiratory valve; B, the inlet or inspiratory valve. In the apparatus which we employ there is only the expiratory valve, the plan now adopted by Clover. E, shows where a supplemental bag for economising the gas can be attached, but this on the plan which we pursue is unnecessary; C, shows the two-way stopcock.

which is attached to it: the latter we prefer constructed of thin but unyielding metal, provided with an outlet-valve only, capable of being closed, whilst the edges which approximate to the face are surrounded with an india-rubber water-pad. The object of having an outlet-valve only, capable of being closed, is to enable the administrator, at a certain stage of the proceeding, when the product of respiration is almost entirely pure nitrous oxide, to permit the gas to be breathed over again, and thus greatly economise it, without in any way impairing the

results, a condition entirely dependent upon the fact that the gas is not decomposed in the system.

Before applying the anæsthetic, the operator should most thoroughly decide in his own mind what he intends to effect, and should also take into consideration the fact that he may not be able to accomplish all he desires, and therefore what under the conditions had best be attempted first. Thus a patient may be desirous of having, say, three teeth removed: one has been causing pain, the other two, though diseased, perhaps not: in such a case the one giving pain should, even though the least convenient to the operator for so doing, be first removed, for it would be distressing for the patient on becoming conscious to find his enemy still in permanence, and circumstances might contra-indicate his taking the gas a second time. If no one tooth has been especially painful, we should as a rule remove lower teeth or roots before upper ones, to avoid the blood interfering with our view; roots before whole teeth, and back teeth before front ones, for the same reason; and it is generally best, where much has to be done and on more than one occasion, to confine the operation to one side of the mouth before proceeding to the opposite. In the preliminary examination of the mouth, every care should be taken to avoid making the gums bleed, or causing the patient pain or any unnecessary fear; yet the inspection should be conducted most thoroughly, so that the position of the teeth or roots to be removed may be well pictured on the mind of the operator when the face is obscured from view. He should next quietly select his instruments, taking care to have not only those most handy which he is sure to use, but also any which he may chance to require, and these should be arranged in the order for use on a small table or bracket close at hand. We strongly recommend, in operations with anæsthetics, the employment of as few instruments as possible. Time is a very important element, especially in the case of nitrous oxide, and a few seconds wasted often render further administration necessary; but this does not mean that we are to attempt at any time to use an unsuitable instrument. Those

which we most frequently employ in such operations are the upper root-forceps suitable for wisdom teeth (Fig. 199), and the lower root-forceps which are applied from the sides of the mouth (Fig. 200), the form of hinge figured in Fig. 178 occupying the least amount of bulk. The curved elevators are also very serviceable; with one of these we can often, proceeding from the back of the mouth forwards, remove in an incredibly short space of time ten or more roots from the lower jaw. In addition to ordinary instruments there should always be ready at hand a few small sponges attached to handles, a Clover's spoon for depressing the tongue and preventing roots from falling into the throat, a pair of œsophagus-forceps, a tracheotomy-tube, &c. Care should be exercised to prevent the patient's garments from being soiled.

These preliminaries being arranged, it is well, after calmly telling the patient that you are ready, to assure him that he has

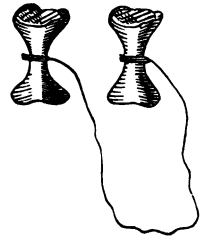


Fig. 234 shows a simple form of mouth-prop or gag, constructed of hard wood or vulcanite, for keeping the mouth open in nitrous oxide administration. When coupled in pairs, as shown above, the one not in use prevents the possibility of the other falling into the throat.

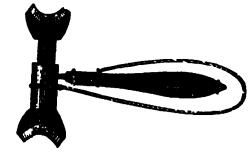


Fig. 235 shows another form of mouth-prop (McAdam's). Between the upper and lower portions is a spring, so that the gag will rise if the patient opens his mouth. The extremities touching the teeth are covered with soft vulcanite. The pin shown in the cut is for securing the spring when compressed, and also for placing the prop *in situ*.

nothing to do, it will all be done for him, he need not even try to breathe or to think about breathing, that 'all will be completed in a minute or two if he will only try and remain quite passive.' We are convinced that the complicated instructions often given to patients about breathing are a mistake, tending only to make them nervous and confused. There is almost

invariably some sensation of suffocation in inhaling nitrous oxide, and this, we are sure, is increased by commencing with very deep respirations. In the next proceeding, that of inserting the prop or gag (Fig. 234) to keep the mouth open, the patient being informed of its object, care should be taken to stretch the mouth as little as possible—but yet sufficiently to afford ample room for the instruments being applied—and to see that the prop is secure from slipping. Spring-props (Fig. 235) are in this respect most to be depended on, but all complications render the fracture of an appliance more likely to occur, and this has been attended with a fatal result in one, if not two instances. Props made of hard wood or vulcanite, roughened to meet the cusps of antagonising teeth, and secured by strong cord from entering the throat, are probably the most useful and simple. We recommend the operator, especially the less experienced, after inserting the prop, to take a view of the mouth, in order to enable him to see the exact relationship of the teeth to the tongue, &c., from the position in which he will have to operate. The patient should then be requested to close the lips as much as possible, which, not only by likewise closing the jaws, renders the position of the prop more secure, but also permits the face-piece, now to be applied, to more perfectly include the mouth and nares. Upon applying the face-piece it is desirable to allow the patient for a few seconds to breathe air through the two-way stopcock before turning on the gas; it is also well not to commence with the bag fully distended with gas, as the sudden pressure is startling and unpleasant. A nervous patient may soon commence movements of the extremities, or resist breathing: a kind but firm appeal will often have the best effect, even when the patient is nearly unconscious, which may occur from within ten seconds to two minutes of the inhalation: should it be longer than the latter period, we may infer that some air is inhaled with the gas. Time then affords us little criterion as to the anæsthetic condition having arrived, and this knowledge can only be attained by experience. The state of the conjunctiva, or the more sensitive palpebræ, is also no sure test; a patient

may be unconscious of pain, but still capable of such reflex action; or be conscious of pain, and yet have lost it. Respiration will best guide us in the matter, and an experienced anæsthetist could, from the vibrations conveyed to the inhaler, tell in the dark when he ought to discontinue the administration. He should warn the operator as the moment approaches, and when the face-piece is removed the latter should at once commence. Such operations are probably more roughly, because more rapidly, performed under nitrous oxide, but still it will be best to do little, and that thoroughly, than to attempt too much and fail. It is never well for the student to attempt extractions under gas until he has acquired considerable dexterity in operating without it; otherwise, we predict, he will never become a safe, cautious, and dexterous operator. All teeth and fragments when detached should be at once removed from the mouth, and here Clover's spoon will be of much assistance; but, where teeth raised from their alveoli are firmly attached to the gum, the operator may at once pass on to other teeth; time would be uselessly expended in removing them, or the gum would be unduly lacerated. They can be best separated after recovery, and this is especially the case with lower wisdom teeth when detached by the elevator. In removing teeth from the lower jaw, the finger that protects the tongue from injury may perchance press back that organ, and so close the glottis.

The operation being completed, the patient's head should be pressed gently forwards, especially if there be much hæmorrhage, and a suitable basin held under the chin. This position it is well to continue for some half-minute or so, without rousing the patient or attempting forcibly the removal of the prop, the latter often leading the half-conscious patient to imagine that the operation is still in progress. It is a good proceeding to remove the patient after a few minutes from the chair to a sofa or couch, and let him assume the semi-recumbent posture for at least a quarter of an hour, or much longer if desirable; the patient should also be counselled to keep quiet if possible, *i.e.* without exciting or fatiguing occupation, for the remainder of the day.

We have so frequently found, where unpleasant after-effects have been complained of, that an opposite course has been followed. Administrations of nitrous oxide may in most cases be repeated at least once, but should, if possible, be avoided on the following grounds. Bleeding of the mouth may be a cause of inconvenience, if not of danger, and the patient usually suffers much more from prostration after a second than after one administration; and it will probably be better to emply nitrous-oxide with ether in lengthy cases than to repeat nitrous oxide administrations.

In describing the symptoms or appearances indicative of danger, we must bear in mind that happily fatal cases have been so rare that no one can speak from large experience. The ordinary appearance of a patient inhaling nitrous oxide is in most cases decidedly alarming; we well remember the first impressions made upon us and upon bystanders. We have become accustomed to such appearances, but yet we may, if careless of them, overlook the real indications of danger which they to some extent mask. In some cases not only is the asphyxiated appearance strongly marked, but convulsive movements suggestive of an epileptic attack are also present, and for the reason, no doubt, that we have in these cases some of the conditions which exist in epileptic seizure. Provided that the patient be breathing freely, we have only in such cases to supply fresh air, gently slap the face with a wet towel, and protect the patient from self-injury. The symptom which should most impress itself upon us, as indicating danger, is a cessation of respiration during the administration, and still more so if the inhalation be completed. Sometimes the breathing is shallow, rapid, and puffing, very commonly so with nervous females, and commencing soon after the inhalation is commenced: in such cases the air in the lungs is but slowly exchanged, the patient is longer in becoming unconscious, and more exhausted subsequently. It is here that a firm request to breathe more slowly will generally be of avail. A little later in the administration we often find the patient forcibly resist-

ing respiration, in which case the breath may be held for eight or ten seconds without cause for alarm, but if for a longer period the face-piece should be withdrawn, and, if that produce no effect, the thorax should be firmly pressed upon, and after a respiration or two of pure air the process may be continued.

The truly dangerous condition is when respiration has ceased, the lungs being nearly empty, the face perfectly immoveable, as in death, or as when a patient is breathing through a tracheotomy-tube, and the countenance being livid, the eyeballs congested and turned upwards, and the temperature of the body reduced. Under such conditions, which on one or two occasions we have witnessed, the tongue should be immediately drawn forward and the thorax firmly pressed upon; and, if this course should not, after one or two efforts, be followed by natural respiration, resort should be had at once to artificial respiration. In carrying this out we believe no plan can be more effective, at least to commence with, than mouth to mouth inflation of the lungs. It is a most disagreeable process, but in such emergencies a good deal may be sacrificed. The mere pulling forward of the tongue may, by opening the larynx, often suffice, as the nitrous oxide in the lungs would soon be exchanged for air by the law of diffusion of gases; but the respiratory movement also no doubt conduces to the continuance of the heart's movements. The experiments made by the committee appointed to investigate the merits of nitrous oxide,[1] showed that in the case of healthy animals death took place in the following order of symptoms:—the inhalation having been continued about two minutes after complete unconsciousness was attained, the respirations became slower and slower, with an increased interval between every succeeding one, until they entirely ceased; during the same time the pulse became gradually weaker, but the heart's action could be felt for some time, generally about 30″ or rather longer, after respiration had terminated. In these experiments the committee invariably found that, if they discontinued the administration before respira-

[1] *Op. cit.*

tion had ended, the animal recovered without assistance; when respiration had ceased, but the heart's action had not done so, artificial respiration resuscitated the animal, but not otherwise; whilst after cessation of the heart's action no means that are known to us could restore animation. It should be borne in mind that the animals operated upon in these experiments were, or most probably were, healthy ones, otherwise such experiments would teach us without hesitation that, so long as the patient is breathing, he is safe, and, so long as the heart continues its action, artificial respiration may, we should almost feel con-

Fig. 236 shows an electro-magnetic apparatus which may be employed for stimulating the heart's action when arrested during the administration of an anæsthetic.

fident, resuscitate him. Unfortunately our dangers will probably not occur with the healthy but with the unhealthy, and, if we have to deal with one suffering from a weak and fatty heart, how can we expect the action of such an organ to continue any time after respiration has ended? Whilst the pulse must not be neglected, there can be no doubt that the respiration should occupy our chief attention, and this failing, we rush immediately to our sheet anchor, artificial respiration: other restoratives, if at hand,—galvanism applied at the phrenic nerve and diaphragm, ammonia to the nostrils, slapping the

chest with a wet towel,—may be also employed, but these should be used as auxiliaries to, not as substitutes for, the efforts of those who are engaged in the aërating process.

The question which may next occupy our attention is, whether there are any known conditions of the system in which nitrous oxide is contra-indicated.

Pregnancy, our experience informs us, is no barrier to its employment; it appears in no way prejudicial to either mother or fœtus.

Phthisical patients take nitrous oxide fairly well, becoming anæsthetised with less gas than ordinary patients, as we should have anticipated: anæmic patients do the same.

Patients who have suffered from acute rheumatism, resulting in damaged valves of the heart, &c., appear to take nitrous oxide as well as ordinary patients, but the appearance of a lady affected with cyanosis was such that we should in future decline to administer it in similar cases. Those with weak and fatty hearts must ever be unsafe subjects for the gas or other anæsthetics, though probably they have been given to many thousands of such unknowingly. Should we have a knowledge or suspicion that we have to deal with a patient so circumstanced, not from the patient's assertion, for nearly half of the patients to whom we administer nitrous oxide tell us that they believe there is something the matter with their hearts, we should, besides redoubling our precautions with regard to careful observation of all symptoms, pay especial attention to the conditions of the pulse. We also strongly recommend operating only whilst the patient is fully anæsthetised, for the reason that there will be less chance of arresting the heart's action through shock. In the case of the death which occurred at Exeter, closely following the administration of nitrous oxide, an upper molar tooth had been split into fragments by a powerful instrument forced into its pulp-cavity. We do not say that this was the cause of death, yet we may well bear in mind the views of Brunton with regard to shock occurring under chloroform administration.[1]

[1] Through the kindness of our colleague, L. Brunton, we are

Of all the conditions in which, according to our opinion, nitrous oxide may be hurtful, there are none more likely to

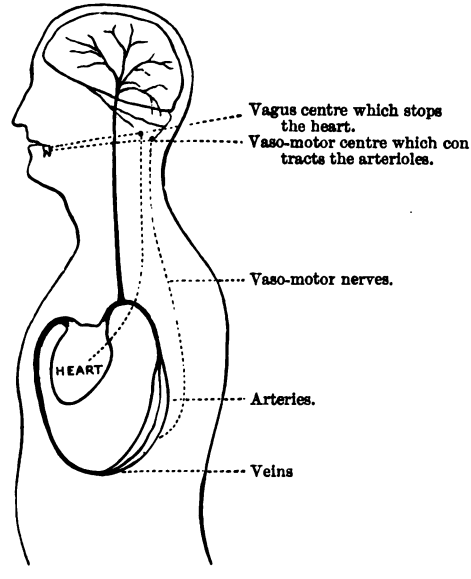


Fig. 237 is a diagram illustrating Lauder Brunton's views of the cause of arrest of the heart's action under chloroform administration.

enabled to present the reader with the views of that gentleman, illustrated by a diagram that he has prepared for us (Fig. 237).

'The blood when it reaches the veins is useless for the nutrition of the tissues, as we see in a corpse, when the whole of the blood in the body is contained in the veins, the arteries being empty: only so long as it is in the arteries can it maintain the vitality of the tissues. The blood is kept in the arteries, 1, by fresh supplies being pumped out of the venous system into the arterial by the heart; 2, by the contraction of the arterioles, which prevent it from running back too quickly into the veins.

'When a tooth is drawn without chloroform, the irritation is carried by the fifth nerve to the nerve-centres: it irritates the vagus roots, and also the vaso-motor centre. The irritation of the vagus may depress or arrest the heart's action so that no blood is sent into the arterial system for several seconds; but this is counterbalanced by the irritation of the vaso-motor centre, which causes contraction of the arterioles, and

prove so than where a patient is affected with atheromatous disease of the cerebral vessels, upon which any additional strain, such as most probably occurs during its inhalation, would be dangerous; and we think that as a rule it would be well to refuse it in such conditions.

Independently of danger, nitrous oxide may be attended with very disagreeable after-conditions: of these we may have vomiting, and vomiting combined with syncope, more commonly, as we have observed, in hot weather. In one or two cases, a little brandy administered previously has apparently prevented these unpleasant results in some who on former occasions had so suffered. A prolonged sleepy condition, much as if the patient had taken a powerful narcotic, is occasionally manifested; in our opinion it is best to let the patient sleep this off, under guarded observation. Headache, often severe and lasting longer than the day of administration, is not uncommon: we do not know that we can suggest better remedies than rest, quiet, and patience. Hysterical females will, if permitted, often give much trouble, and the patients met with at hospitals being as a rule a less cultured class, and therefore less under intellectual control, will be found the worst; we need hardly say that the operator will by sympathy only encourage such exhibitions. Strange sensations, and perversion or even absence of ordinary sensations, are sometimes complained of for days succeeding an administration, the result, no doubt, of changes from which

thus correspondingly diminishes the outflow. In a person thoroughly under chloroform *both* nerve-centres have their reflex sensibility abolished, and so the irritation has no effect on either; but with partial anæsthesia the vaso-motor centre may be rendered insensible before the vagus centre, and consequently, when the irritation is applied to the fifth nerve, the vagus centre only is excited, the heart is depressed or stopped, and the inflow of blood into the arterial system is diminished or arrested, while there is no contraction of the arterioles, and therefore no corresponding diminution of the outflow. The arterial system therefore becomes more or less empty, *i.e.* it approaches more or less to the condition of death, and fatal syncope may result.'

With nitrous oxide, however, by which the blood in the arteries is brought into a venous condition, and thus acts as a stimulus to the vaso-motor centre, the danger from syncope is reduced to a minimum.

the nervous centres have suffered owing to the abnormal condition of the blood during the inhalation. One patient has informed us that he has detected sugar in his urine after each inhalation of nitrous oxide,—an interesting fact, if it be at all general, and pointing, of course, to cerebral irritation.

Before we quit the subject of nitrous oxide, we would give a warning with respect to patients inhaling it, especially those pregnant with other than moderately empty bladders; otherwise there is risk of a catastrophe distressing to the patient and detrimental to an elegantly covered chair.

Ether, although, no doubt, a much safer anæsthetic than chloroform, is yet probably less safe than nitrous oxide. Owing to its pungent and irritating nature, it is less agreeable to inhale than either nitrous oxide or chloroform; but this may be overcome by employing it, as Clover was the first to do, viz. in combination with nitrous oxide. It requires some little practice and dexterity to administer it with his admirable apparatus, but with that which we have described (Fig. 232, p. 261) it only needs a little care in turning the ether on at the right period: if this be done too soon, there will be struggling, and suspension of respiration; if too late, there will be little or no benefit from the ether in prolonging the anæsthesia. In this matter experience alone can guide.

Ether with nitrous oxide is most suitable for cases in which several teeth are to be removed at one sitting: we think it also well calculated for those in which severe after-pain may be anticipated, as in a tooth giving rise to alveolar abscess in any of its stages, recovery being less sudden than with nitrous oxide alone.

With regard to symptoms indicating danger, these will be much the same as with nitrous-oxide alone, though perhaps less apparent, and consequently requiring greater watchfulness, as with ether there is usually less lividity. Whilst the respiration is carefully watched, the pulse should be more regarded than with nitrous-oxide. In employing the ether-combination we must look for more tendency to vomiting. This is a most

unpleasant drawback to the use of anæsthetics, and therefore one of the greatest merits of nitrous oxide is that it is the most free from it. With regard to ether *versus* chloroform, the latter has been reckoned by Jonathan Hutchinson as the safer for very old people, there being less violent struggling, and consequently less exhaustion; but this must apply to ether administered alone, as, with the nitrous oxide combination, when carefully administered, there is probably less struggling than under any other method. Chloroform is preferable to ether in the case of patients suffering from bronchitis.

The administration of chloroform in dental operations has now, and most properly, become so exceptional a matter that we need devote but a short space to its consideration; there are, however, a few rare cases in which it is preferable to other anæsthetics. Thus we find instances of patients who recover so rapidly from nitrous oxide, or its combination with ether, that it is hardly possible to remove one tooth or root without pain being felt, and such patients may require the removal of a large number of either.

In cases when great muscular contraction has to be overcome, as with impacted wisdom teeth, chloroform will be generally preferred; although our colleague J. Mills, of St. Bartholomew's, informs us that in the reduction of dislocations he has found ether almost if not quite as efficacious as chloroform. In the cases bordering on the limits between dental and general surgery, such as the removal of epulis and kindred tumours, the dissecting out of cicatrices, and other operations which must occupy some time in their performance, and where the anæsthesia has to be kept up during the period, chloroform will no doubt be generally preferred.

As to the modes of administration, we doubt whether there is any one vastly superior to another. The Scotch school have as a rule performed it in the simplest manner and without apparatus, and with, we believe, as much if not more success than in England, where apparatus has been more generally employed. Our conclusion has long been, that safety depends far

more upon the experience and judgment of the administrator than upon the mode of administration; and we need here hardly remark, that, if it be an unwarrantable assumption of responsibility to administer single-handed nitrous oxide for a dental operation, it is absolutely criminal to do so with chloroform. Practitioners are often pressed by patients to give it to

Fig. 238 shows a form of chloroform apparatus which we designed some years ago. It consists of a graduated drop-bottle which contains the chloroform, and which can be, by turning it, inverted so that the fluid drops on to a piece of sponge. The expanded portion has in front of it a piece of fine wire gauze, which has the object of thoroughly mixing the chloroform-vapour and air together, rendering the vapour less pungent.

them, with such assurances as 'I take chloroform so well,' 'My maid often gives it to me,' &c. A wise practitioner, some little time since, saved himself from an awful responsibility, as the patient who so requested him subsequently died under the hands of an experienced anæsthetist. With regard to chloroform-inhalers, and their name is legion, we must undoubtedly pronounce the most perfect to be that devised so ingeniously by Clover, on the suggestion of Snow, in which definite proportions of the vapour and air are previously mixed together;

its only objection is its somewhat formidable appearance, which may terrify some very nervous persons or children, a condition always to be avoided, as adding another element of danger, viz., the depression consequent on fear; but it must be remembered that the process can always be commenced with the lint and the drop-bottle, and maintained afterwards by the apparatus. An inhaler which we devised some years ago (Figs. 238, 239) combines the drop-bottle with a very simple apparatus, like the smaller one of Snow, but having an arrangement for more thoroughly mixing the vapour with air, which renders a deep inspiration free from the otherwise disagreeably

Fig. 239 shows the apparatus figured in 238 with a nose-piece for keeping up the anæsthesia whilst the mouth is open.

irritating sensation so conspicuously absent in the Clover apparatus. For keeping up the anæsthesia we have employed an india-rubber air-propeller (Fig. 240) attached to an apparatus, by which means air impregnated with chloroform is forced into the nares; but, unpleasant symptoms having occurred under our own hands, and those of others, when employing similar arrangements, we suggest that it should be used with the greatest caution. With regard to the symptoms of danger and the best methods of averting or counteracting them,—the latter of which are, unfortunately, by no means generally decided upon at present,—we must refer the reader to works specially devoted to the subject.[1]

[1] In operating upon patients under the influence of chloroform it is

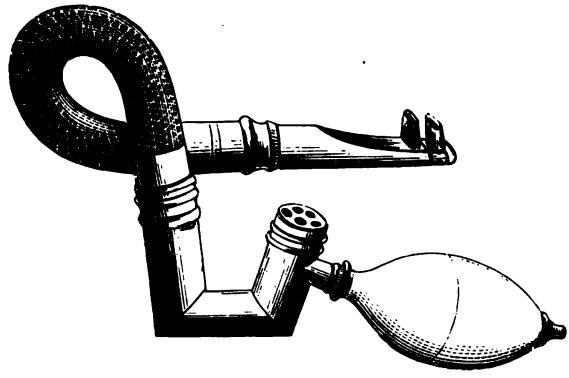


Fig. 240 shows an apparatus which we designed many years ago for administering chloroform through the nose. The small tubes are inserted into the nares, and air is pumped through the inhaler by means of the india-rubber syringe, the small holes opening into the inhaler being closed by the thumb.

Fig. 241 shows a form of chair-couch very suitable for operations upon the mouth under chloroform.

very desirable that they should be, as far as possible, placed in the recumbent posture, and, were it much employed in dental surgery, the chair above figured (Fig. 241), which permits this, would be found of much service.

We have refrained from alluding to other and less generally employed anæsthetics than those mentioned above, such as bichloride of mythelene, bromide of ethyl, ethidene-dichloride, &c., on the ground of their not having been employed extensively or often enough to enable us to speak of their comparative safety. The last-mentioned agent appears, from the experiments performed by a committee of the British Medical Association, to hold a position as regards safety between chloroform and ether. In flavour it is much more pleasant than the latter, and our experience in it leads us to think that it may become a favourite and useful anæsthetic in dental surgery.

CHAPTER XV.

THE REPLANTATION AND TRANSPLANTATION OF TEETH.

REPLANTATION.—The operation, either of restoring dislocated teeth to their sockets, or of extracting them on account of pain and then replacing them, appears to have been practised several centuries ago.

We find, in an excellent paper on this subject and that of transplantation, by A. Mitscherlich,[1] that Dupont, in 1633, extracted and replanted a tooth on account of violent pain, and that it became firmly attached; subsequently Dion Pomaret states that he had witnessed a successful result of the same process; and about a century later Fauchard speaks of it as a fact quite well-known, and wonders that anyone can still doubt of its practicability, and mentions cases in his own practice, five in all, in two of which he filled the teeth some time afterwards, in order to make them durable.

In Germany, replantation was practised at the commencement of the eighteenth century, especially for cases where teeth could not be properly filled in the mouth; they were extracted, filled, and replaced.

In France, L'Ecluse and Bourdet were, about the middle of the same century, great promoters of replantation for the same object, and the latter extracted a fang, fastened to it a pivot-tooth, and reinserted it, and after five and a half years it was still firm.

[1] Langenbeck's *Archiv für Chirurgie*, vol. iv. Translated into English in the *Archives of Dentistry*, by Edwin Truman, vol. i. p. 169.

In England, Hunter about the same period interested himself in the subject, but never appears to have given the same attention to it as he did to transplantation.

From Hunter's time to the present, the operation of replantation, for teeth which have been knocked out of their sockets, or extracted by mistake, has been continuously performed; and, exceptionally, in cases where intense pain has existed, and also where a filling could not without great difficulty be performed in the mouth.

In speaking of the operation, almost all, if not all, who have written upon the subject lay down the rule that it is never to be attempted with teeth the roots of which are diseased. Hunter, whilst strongly enforcing this opinion, yet admits, 'to extract the tooth and then to file off any diseased part of it, and immediately to replace it, has been practised, but often without the desired success; for it has often happened that a tooth has been introduced into a diseased jaw. This practice, however, has now and then succeeded.'

Hunter certainly does not advocate it, and Mitscherlich, evidently summing up the opinions of those who have gone before him, as well as expressing his own, says, 'Teeth whose roots are diseased are always to be removed, and must not be inserted, as they cannot, from grounds to be given later, again become united.' [1]

It can scarcely, we think, be stated that replantation, as a systematic treatment for chronic periodontitis, was ever advocated until the appearance of two papers which we read before the Odontological Society in 1869 and 1870. In speaking therein of that most intractable of diseases, and its almost

[1] In *A System of Dental Surgery*, by John Tomes, F.R.S., and C. S. Tomes, M.A., p. 658, the following is stated:—'It should have been mentioned in the section relating to alveolar abscess that experiments have lately been performed by Mr. Coleman, *following in the steps of Mitscherlich and others*, in which carious teeth were extracted and replaced, after scraping off the thickened and diseased periosteum.' We think that the words which we have put in italics should more properly have been rendered 'in opposition to the views of Mitscherlich and others.'

universal treatment by extraction, we pointed out, that by the removal of a tooth so affected, the careful scraping from its fangs of diseased membranes, the clearing out, purifying, and then filling of its pulp and fang cavities, and then, after washing it as well as its alveolus with an antiseptic fluid, returning it to its socket, we might hope to preserve it as a useful member, and we gave a statement of fourteen cases in which this treatment had been adopted, but upon its ultimate success it was at that period too early to offer any opinion.

Since the publication of our papers, the subject has excited much interest and attention both on the Continent and in America. Magitot has brought it under the attention of the Academy of Sciences of Paris, and his papers upon it have been published in the 'Comptes Rendus,' and the 'Bulletins et Mémoires de la Société de Chirurgie.' In the latter the treatment of sixty-three cases is recorded, out of which only five, at the time when the paper was written, had turned out failures. Magitot's success, so much greater than our own in a more limited number of cases, may be due to his method of procedure, which consists in simply excising the denuded portion of the fang,—filling the tooth, of course, if necessary,—and returning it without application of antiseptic to either the root or the alveolus. As in our own recommendations, he has seldom found it necessary to retain the tooth in its socket either by ligature to adjacent teeth or by mechanical appliance. He also deems it most important to maintain a free drainage from the alveolus, especially in the severer cases. The success of the operation he considers to be entirely dependent upon the existence of a complete ring of healthy periodontium on the tooth to be replanted.

We have preferred alluding, though in general terms, to the methods adopted by Magitot rather than to our own, as both his experience and success have been greater; also because we must go over much the same ground in treating upon our second head, viz., Transplantation.

TRANSPLANTATION.—This operation appears to have been

performed at an earlier period than that which we have just considered. Some have attributed its origin to Abulcasis (died 1122), but the passage quoted in favour of this supposition refers more probably to the fixing of an artificial tooth. Ambrose Paré, however, records a case where a young princess had a sound tooth of her waiting-maid inserted in the place of a carious one extracted, and with a successful result. Nothing, however, appears to have been done in this direction for some 150 years, until the operation was resuscitated by Fauchard, and with much greater zeal by Bourdet, who appears to have obtained his teeth for transplanting from Savoyard boys, whose great poverty induced them to be thus victimised.

The operation of transplantation found considerable favour in the eyes of Hunter, Pffaf, Graebner, Richter, Jourdain, and some others; but it had many strong opponents, even more so than in the case of replantation. The chief arguments employed against the operation were, as we pointed out some years ago,[1] the three following, viz., 1. Liability to failure; 2. Chance of inoculation of disease; 3. The moral objection.

1. *Liability to failure.*—This is considerable, and may arise from the so-called scion-tooth not being, from its size, form of fang, or injury occurring to it in its removal, &c., adaptable to the socket of the tooth which it is intended to supplant. Also, when the above-mentioned conditions are not unfavourable, it often happens that the scion-tooth is implanted in an alveolus more or less diseased from the long existence of a necrosed tooth. Pain and tenderness are for some days a common sequence to the operation, and even under favourable circumstances are often severe; and, the tooth being very loose, the patient is tempted to obtain relief by removing it. The method also commonly employed of attempting to secure the transplanted tooth to adjacent ones by means of ligature was, as we think we shall be able to show, another very probable cause of failure.

[1] '*On the Transplantation of Teeth*,' by Alfred Coleman, *St. Bartholomew's Hospital Reports*, vol. xiv. p. 101.

2. *Chance of inoculation of disease.*—This we believe to have been much more imaginary than real, although it cannot be denied that there might be a chance of transferring, with a tooth removed from a person at a certain stage of the disease, such affections as syphilis, small-pox, scarlatina, measles, &c.; and the same objection would apply in an equal degree to skin-grafting from one person to another, as well as to several other surgical proceedings. We are inclined, however, to believe that this argument was employed rather to deter and dissuade persons from undergoing an operation so properly discontinued on the ground of—

3. *The moral objection.*—That the poor and generally degraded should have been induced by a pecuniary temptation to part with organs as essential, or probably even more essential, to their well-being than to the wealthy coveters who could purchase them, became, and rightly so, to be regarded as an injustice and a wrong. A much greater skill and success in saving defective teeth, and in supplying artificially their place when lost, no doubt also, to a very great extent, diverted attention from the operation of transplantation.

The success that attended our experiments in replantation, though not very encouraging, determined us nevertheless to attempt that of transplantation, but under conditions wholly free from the moral objection above stated.

It has been pointed out in previous pages (see Chapter IV.), that amongst civilised nations the maxillæ of the present generation are of smaller size than they were in people who lived some centuries ago; whilst the teeth, if they have diminished in size, have not done so in the same proportion, and thus occurs crowding and irregularity in position of the latter. The dental surgeon is often called upon to correct this by the removal of sound teeth, and that these young and healthy teeth should be cast away as useless, whilst there were so many for whom the operation of transplantation, if successfully performed, would be the greatest boon, appeared to us a sad misfortune.

We have, therefore, from time to time during the last six years performed the operation of transplanting teeth from the mouths of those who had to part with them through overcrowding to the mouths of those from whom they were removed on account of disease, and with a much greater proportionate success than in the operation of replantation for the cure of periodontitis. We have performed it on at least twelve occasions, and we believe with only two failures, both resulting from the tooth not being adaptable to its new habitation. Besides these cases, it has been performed by others under our observation some fifteen times, not, we believe, with quite the same success, as the cases were probably not so carefully selected. Our first case, that of a medical student, in 1875, for whom a right lateral incisor was thus supplied, was, when last heard of, about a year ago, perfectly satisfactory. In two of the cases we transplanted misplaced laterals to alveoli on the opposite side in the same patients, and were successful. In another case, that of a youth aged sixteen, two upper laterals were transplanted from another subject with perfect success.

The operation, which we always conducted under an anæsthetic, was thus performed. The individual to receive was operated upon first, every care being taken in the removal of the tooth or root to injure the alveolus as little as possible: the mouth was washed out with tepid water until bleeding had nearly ceased. The patient to contribute was then operated on, and, his tooth being also carefully extracted, it was carried directly to the former, and firmly pressed into the vacant alveolus, after clearing out the same, first with cotton wool and then with the syringe, the finger and thumb only being employed. In no instance was any ligature employed, this being in our opinion more likely to prove mischievous than beneficial, and for the following reason. The tooth, however firmly pressed into the socket, soon becomes slightly raised from it by effusion into the latter, which causes it also to be more or less loose. Now this effusion has no doubt much to do with the future union of the tooth and alveolus, through the

medium of the alveolo-dental membrane; and to prevent this effusion, as must be the case to a great extent when the tooth is firmly tied into the socket, is to interfere with the process of attachment. Moreover, we are strongly inclined to attribute to this procedure those untoward results, viz., severe inflammation, abscess, necrosis of alveoli, &c., which have been spoken of by former writers as not unfrequently following this operation, but which we have never met with. After having implanted the tooth, we have simply directed the patient to carefully avoid masticating upon, or touching it with the opposing ones for some days, and to employ soothing fomentation to relieve any tenderness. There could be no objection to construct, previously to the operation, a plate that would protect the tooth from any violence or pressure.

In some cases a week only has sufficed to allow the tooth to become moderately firm, free from tenderness, and even capable of bearing a certain amount of pressure; but a fortnight has more commonly been required. A point of no small importance is, to select for transplantation, if possible, teeth the fangs of which are rather less in dimensions than those for which they are to be substituted. When transplanted they may not appear so firm as larger ones, but in the end they become so. In our practice, lateral incisors inserted into the alveoli of centrals and cuspidati have turned out very successful. In speaking of the transplantation of teeth, which, under the conditions spoken of, may, we consider, from our experience of it, be recommended as a useful and perfectly legitimate operation, we may repeat what we have elsewhere written.[1] 'I am in hopes that having called attention to the operation and its merits, it may be the means of conferring much benefit, especially upon a class whose pecuniary circumstances prevent them from attaining comforts which their more affluent neighbours can well afford. I cannot but believe that with our dental departments and dental hospitals, at which so many thousands of young and healthy teeth are annually sacrificed,

[1] *Op. Cit.*

these might be turned to profitable account, and by selection of suitable cases out of large numbers, the operation of transplantation might be again regarded as legitimate and useful.'

Before concluding this chapter, we must say a few words upon the transplantation of dead, or rather dried, teeth, such as have usually been obtained from the corpse. This operation has, like the same process with living teeth, had its advocates and its opponents. The former evidently, as shown by the contradictory nature of their statements, have been prejudiced and partial with regard to it. Hunter, who describes the process at some length, says, 'the insertion of a dead tooth has been recommended, and I have known them to continue many years;' whereas in another place he says, 'A tooth which has been extracted for some time, so as to lose the whole of its life, will never become firm or fixed.' Hirsch, another advocate, in like manner contradicts himself.

That such an operation should, as a rule, prove unsuccessful, is what we could but anticipate. A tooth long removed from the mouth, and dried, would not only be entirely devoid of vitality in all its structures, but would have lost all medium for uniting those devitalised tissues to adjacent living ones. The fact that some of the dental structures, for instance, the dentine, pulp, and enamel,—*i.e.* if it possess any,—had lost their vitality, would not, as we have elsewhere shown, if they be free from putridity and septicity, be a barrier to a tooth being transplanted, provided that the cementum and remains of the alveolo-dental membrane retained theirs, as they frequently do under such conditions. Where all the structures are devoid of vitality, we should expect such teeth, if at all retained, to be so simply mechanically, and never to become firm, or more probably to share the same fate as do ivory pegs when inserted into bone, viz., to be absorbed. But that such teeth when inserted have in rare instances undoubtedly become perfectly firm, indeed so much so as to present the greatest resistance to their removal, needs some further explanation, and this is satisfactorily furnished in the experiments of

Mitscherlich, recorded in the excellent paper before referred to.

He took an upper incisor from a dog's skull, and inserted it into the corresponding alveolus of a living dog, which he killed after six weeks, and then he immediately injected the carotids. A longitudinal section, made through the tooth and jaw, showed the periosteum to be discoverable in only a few places: where this was absent, the tooth was eaten away. In some of the cavities thus formed, osseous tissue directly connected with the 'alveolar processes existed, and so held the tooth with such extraordinary firmness;' and into this the injection had readily passed. He says, 'It was so fully developed, that the process had to be looked upon as fully accomplished, and therefore a later exfoliation of the tooth was not to be expected.' We think the latter sentence expressed in too confident terms. The researches of J. Tomes, already referred to, with regard to the absorption of temporary teeth, show a very similar condition prevailing at times, viz., where the dentine in such teeth is directly connected at certain parts with osseous tissue which again becomes absorbed. On the other hand, we may point out that in our examination of the teeth found in ovarian tumours some have been met with directly united to surrounding bone without any intermediate tissue.

Finally, attempts have been made to insert porcelain teeth, and even teeth having fangs composed of gold, into alveoli, and with the success that we should naturally have expected; and we may conclude our remarks upon the process of transplantation by observing, that to insure a fair amount of success the operation must be conducted with living teeth, obtained from individuals under middle age, and inserted into the mouths of those not past middle age, which must be fairly healthy, and free from the existence, to any extent, of alveolar mischief.

CHAPTER XVI.

CONGESTION OF THE GUMS—SALIVARY CALCULUS—ULCERATIONS OF THE GUM—NECROSIS OF THE JAWS.

CONGESTION OF THE GUMS.—The mucous membrane covering, and included in, the structures called the gums should in the healthy subject be of a pale rose colour, marbled by minute vessels of a rather darker tint, presenting around the teeth a festooned edge as thin as ordinary writing paper, and appearing to be firmly attached to the necks of the teeth, but in reality attached a little distance off, being folded down to the cementum, where it becomes intimately blended with the alveolo-dental membrane. The interstices between the teeth, at and near to their necks, should also in the healthy subject be fully occupied by the same structures, rendering it scarcely possible for food to become lodged there. In highly civilised communities, and especially amongst the denizens of large cities, we not uncommonly find the structures in question, without actually exhibiting disease, of a darker colour, thicker texture, and not fully occupying the spaces between the necks of the teeth. Amongst dyspeptic persons such conditions are generally seen in an exaggerated form, whilst many of the worst cases are those met with in the subjects of glandular struma: from the constant tendency of the gums to bleed, this has been termed false scurvy, or scurvy of the gums. Under the latter conditions the mucous membrane, especially that adjacent to the teeth, appears deeply congested with venous blood, tumid and thickened, but not filling up the interstices at their necks, and detached, for some distance from the surface, from the fangs. A thick fetid dis-

charge may often be pressed up between the teeth and mucous membrane, which gives to the breath a very repulsive odour. This condition of things continuing, the alveoli become absorbed and at times more or less denuded, whilst the fangs of the teeth become coated with a layer of thin hard greenish-brown tartar. Ultimately, the disease progressing, the teeth one after another drop out. The loss of the teeth by alveolar absorption, if not a natural order of things, is, at least in very old age, an event generally looked for, as much so as is the loss of hair from the head. When occurring prematurely, and in connection with the condition of mucous membrane above described, it certainly constitutes a disease, and a very refractory one to deal with. Authorities differ much as to both its cause and its nature: some attribute it wholly to local causes, notably to neglect in cleansing the teeth and permitting tartar to accumulate about their necks; others believe that it has its origin in the alveolo-dental membrane; and some, C. S. Tomes in particular, that the structure first affected is the alveolar process at its free edges. Our own views accord most with those who maintain that it arises from an unhealthy condition in the mucous membrane in the neighbourhood of the necks of the teeth. This may be the result of constitutional conditions before alluded to, or it may and probably does arise from the want of a due stimulus to the mucous membrane supplied in the form of harder food than that which civilised nations as a rule consume. The presence of tartar may no doubt increase and aggravate it, but we see cases where this deposit has existed for many years without producing such results. The very conditions of its existence tend to increase and perpetuate it; friction by brushing, rubbing, &c., being avoided on account of the pain experienced. The congestion and separation of the gum at the necks of the teeth permit the access of the fluids of the mouth, and the formation of tartar, modified in character probably by the acid mucus furnished by the gum, and adhering most firmly to the roots of the teeth. As the separation extends, the free edges of the alveoli become denuded, and consequently suffer a slight

necrosis, perhaps most comparable to caries, but on a very small scale.

In this, which may be deemed its acute form, it is most common about the middle period of life, yet we have met with it in individuals under twenty. It must not be confounded with a premature loss of the teeth, as occasionally witnessed in individuals who have suffered severely from debilitating illnesses; when they thus come out, they are free, or almost wholly free, from deposition of tartar; and here, no doubt, the cause is absorption of the alveolar process without any exposure.

The treatment of this disease is very uncertain and somewhat severe; indeed, it is only during the last few years that any real treatment has been attempted. Rigg, to whom we owe the introduction of the only known methods at all likely to be of service, and who, by calling our attention so prominently to the affection, has led many to associate his name with it, recommends in the first place a most careful removal of all salivary deposition from the exposed fangs of the teeth. This can only be effected by very narrow sharp scalers, and, as it causes both pain and bleeding, will generally necessitate many sittings. Considerable mitigation is, however, obtained by a frequent employment of carbolic acid conveyed to the space between the gum and the necks of the teeth, on a pointed piece of soft wood. Together with the removal of the tartar, must be that of the exposed edges of the alveoli, and this must be done until it is concluded that all diseased portions are removed. To ensure the removal of both, it is advisable, after the scraping process, to apply to the parts a strong or diluted solution of aromatic sulphuric acid. Not having been able to procure the original account of Rigg's treatment, we may perhaps not have done him full justice; but we believe that the statement given above accords in the main with what he has recommended. After the operation has been performed, the patient must be instructed to pay particular attention to the gums, brushing them frequently with a soft brush, and counteracting any tendency to congestion by the application of Tinct. Iodinii Comp,

tannin, or alum or borax solution. We can hardly venture to hope that teeth so treated will ever at the parts scraped become united to the surrounding mucous membrane, but this, if healthy, may come into such close contact with them as to prevent the access of fluids and the consequent deposition of tartar. With regard to tartar or salivary calculus, which is deposited upon the teeth in much the same manner as are the lime-salts upon the sides of a steam-boiler, we may say a few words. Analyses have shown it to be chiefly composed of earthy phosphates and animal matter.[1] It is the latter doubtless that gives to most varieties its repulsive odour. The organic matter is, of course, furnished by the mucus and epithelia, also by the leptothrix and micrococci found in abundance in many mouths, and doubtless occasionally by minute portions of food: the lime-salts from the saliva in which they are held in solution. Some observers have described the existence of minute crustacea in salivary calculus; but this is probably an error arising from the appearance presented by the precipitation of lime-salts in a colloid fluid.

Tartar varies in character, owing, no doubt, to the conditions under which it is deposited; thus, where very rapid and in large quantities, it is of a whitish-yellow colour, and comparatively soft. It is surprising to what an extent it can accumulate in a little time; we have under observation a young lady who has for some years visited us annually, and on every occasion we have removed quite as much tartar as represents in bulk the crowns of the teeth on which it has collected. Most of her teeth have become very loose, but are for their condition remarkably free from tenderness, and in no respect resemble the condition to which Rigg has called our attention. There is in

[1] Analysis of tartar (Berzelius).

Earthy phosphates	79·0
Mucus	12·5
Ptyaline	1·0
Animal matter sol. in hydrochloric acid	7·5
	100·0

her case almost as much deposit on the upper as on the lower teeth, which is unusual, especially with this variety; the part where it is most commonly met with being the depression formed by the inner surface of the body of the lower jaw in front, and the root of the tongue behind: it is here that the saliva collects in largest quantity, and by evaporation, and probably chemical changes, doubtless increased alkalinity, the lime-salts are precipitated, carrying down with them more or less of the insoluble and semi-soluble organic matter. A second variety is much harder in consistency than that last mentioned, and of almost a black colour; it is usually deposited in patches, or in the form of a ring around the teeth at their necks, and often just below the free margin of the gum; and it appears quite as common to the upper as to the lower teeth, to which it adheres with considerable tenacity. The third variety may be that which we have already described as in connection with Rigg's disease, so called. A fourth variety is that which appears most frequently upon the upper front teeth of young persons just above the margin of the gum, and is of a greenish-black colour: it is very thinly deposited, and so difficult to remove, that some have regarded it rather as a changed condition of the cemental covering to the enamel (Nasmyth's membrane) than as any deposition. It certainly, when removed, leaves the enamel roughened and minutely pitted; it is said never to return after removal, but of this we speak doubtfully.

Teeth coated with tartar appear less liable to caries than teeth upon which it never collects, and we invariably find that, when the front teeth of the lower jaw have a great tendency to decay, tartar is absent from them. If then it were not for the indirect injury that tartar occasions, as also for the discomfort and unpleasantness that its presence creates, we might consider its removal more than superfluous, especially as we occasionally meet with a carious cavity in which its deposition has made a fair filling. A small amount of yellow or brownish tartar at the backs of the lower front teeth is more a matter of general existence than not, and appears productive of little harm.

Very different is the presence of an equal quantity on the anterior aspect of a lower incisor, at the margin of the gum, which, by continual increase in the direction of the fang, causes its anterior surface to become exposed, occasionally almost up to its apex. When, therefore, we meet with it in such positions, and indeed in all except perhaps the very slight deposits at the backs of the lower front teeth, it certainly ought to be removed; and this is best accomplished by pressing upon it chiefly in the direction of the fangs of the teeth with suitable sharp-pointed

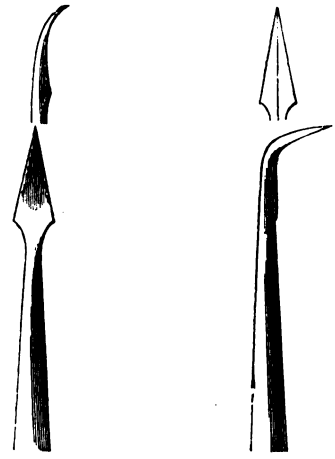


Fig. 242 shows the form of scaler which we have found the most serviceable in removing tartar.

steel instruments. The form which we have found most useful is that figured above (Fig. 242); but it is not to be employed in the manner that we have experienced upon ourselves, viz., hooked under the lower edge of the deposit and then pulled upwards, which lacerates the gum, jars the teeth considerably, and most imperfectly removes the mass. The thumb of the hand holding the instrument should rest upon the cutting edge or masticating surface of the tooth operated on, in order to steady it, and then, by the point of the instrument being pressed into the tartar, and in the direction of the root, or perhaps somewhat

towards either side of it, the mass flakes off in fragments of considerable size. In the process of scaling, great care should be exercised to remove all fragmentary portions from between the teeth, where they not unfrequently extend to some distance below the surface and are often overlooked. After removal of all visible portions of the concretion, for which a variety of shapes in the scalers may be necessary (Fig. 243), the more

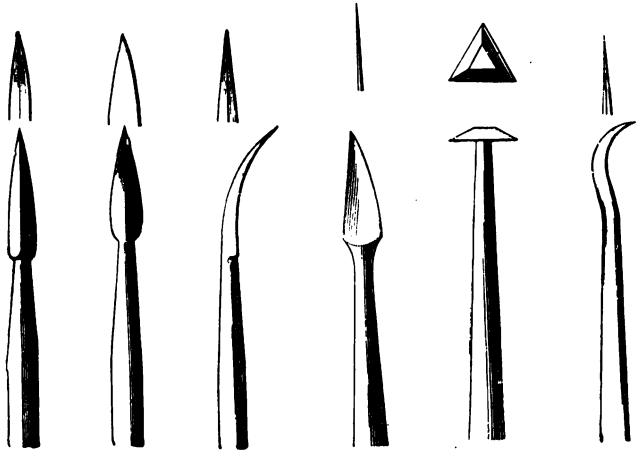


Fig. 243 shows a variety of forms of scaler for the removal of tartar.

minute remnants may be removed by brushing with moistened pumice-powder, applied on cane-roots, or by the little circular

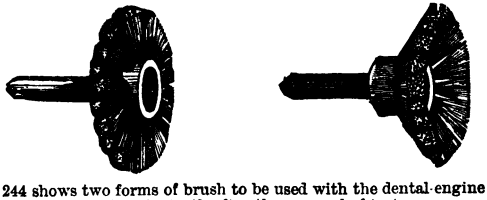


Fig. 244 shows two forms of brush to be used with the dental-engine for polishing the teeth after the removal of tartar.

brushes (Fig. 244) which are rotated by the burr-engine and are so serviceable for the general cleansing of the teeth. All tartar having been removed, and the surfaces of the teeth left smooth

and comfortable, the patient will find much benefit from an astringent lotion,[1] both to allay irritation caused to the gum by the process, and also to render the now more exposed necks of the teeth less sensitive to changes of temperature. A careful and frequent use of the tooth-brush must be insisted on, a soft one in preference to a very hard one, at least for a time; and a dentifrice composed of prepared chalk and pure soap, flavoured with a little orris-root, and scented with a minute quantity of oil of roses, may be employed with much advantage, and to this can be added, if necessary, a small quantity of tannin, borax, or alum.

By removal of the tartar we shall have got rid of a very common local cause of congestion of the gum, to which subject we now return. With regard to treatment, we may in the milder cases recommend some simple astringent lotion, of which we have found the tincture of tannin already mentioned to be the most serviceable: in the more severe cases, and those which are more of the character of chronic inflammation, we shall have to pay greater attention to the general health. In persons thus suffering we shall generally find the whole alimentary mucous track to be affected, and remedies acting directly on that membrane will be indicated: thus ipecacuanha in one to two grain doses often does much to relieve, but that which we have found most successful has been nux vomica,[2] but it is a remedy that must be carefully watched. In cases of more acute inflammation of the gums, there is generally pain, and of a burning character; and, as it is rare for it to exist without

[1] R. Acidi tannici ʒss.
(Eau de Cologne) ʒiv.
M. ft. applicatio.
about 10 or 12 drops of the above to a teaspoonful of tepid water, to be held in the mouth two or three times daily.

[2] R. Extr. nucis vom. gr. vj.
Mist. acaciæ
Tinct. Cardam. Co. an a ʒj.
Aquæ dist. ad. ʒvj.
one-sixth part for a dose.

or R. Tinct. nucis vom. ♏xv.
Ex aquâ
bis terve die.

some abrasion of the delicate epithelial surface, we get ulceration, under which head we may best consider the subject.

Ulcerations of the Gum.—Aphthous ulcerations of the mucous membrane covering the gums are by no means uncommon, especially in those who have long suffered from prostrating illness, and are frequently witnessed towards the termination of phthisical disease. Less common, but yet often met with in the comparatively healthy, they appear in connection with dyspeptic conditions, and usually present themselves, in the first place, as small detached vesicles, not unlike those in herpes, which soon burst, leaving a denuded surface. On the tongue, such ulcers, for they are most probably the same, although we cannot so often here witness their vesical stage, are very sensitive, giving a sharp pricking or stinging sensation when touched, and appearing like a small circle of lighter colour than the surrounding tissues, with a central dark spot as if drawn by a pair of compasses.

With the thrush of children some have associated ordinary aphthous ulceration, but the former has certainly a different origin and character. It is due to the presence of a cryptogamic growth, the oïdium albicans, which finds suitable conditions for growth and development in the mucous membrane of children fed under unfavourable conditions. Thrush appears at first in small patches of white flocculent matter, not unfrequently mistaken for small portions of milk-curd; but its true nature is seen when wiped off, as it then leaves a surface devoid of epithelium, studded with minute bloody spots.

In the treatment of ordinary aphthous ulceration we may with advantage apply locally mel-boracis on a camel-hair brush. If it occur in the moderately healthy, a course of alterative treatment, combined with mild purgation, may be desirable. When it affects the subjects of exhausting diseases, the local treatment above suggested is alone applicable. The painful ulcers of the tongue may generally be cured by touching them with a crystal of sulphate of copper, or with a mixture of strong carbolic acid and glycerine.

In the thrush of infants, attention must be directed first to the diet, which is most frequently at fault. In the next place, the mouth should be carefully wiped out after each meal with a soft piece of rag dipped in cold water, the rag not being used a second time; the denuded surfaces should be dabbed with a small piece of rag attached securely to a piece of wood, and moistened with a solution of alum or borax, about eight grains to the ounce of water; in intractable cases, a dilute solution of carbolic acid and glycerine may be used. The appearance of thrush about the anus will indicate a more general extension of the disease in the alimentary mucous track, and indicate a more serious condition.

Another variety of ulceration has received the somewhat indefinite appellation of ulcerative stomatitis: it is chiefly met with in children residing in the unhealthy districts of large cities, but we have met with it in cases where sanitary conditions could not be found fault with, except that green vegetable diet was almost wholly excluded from their bill of fare. The latter cases were those of children at a large public institution, who invariably suffered towards the end of a term. The least local irritation determined the ulceration, even regulation plates had to be abandoned on this account; yet on their return from vacation their mouths had resumed a perfectly healthy aspect. The disease usually presents itself during early childhood, from two to five or seven years of age being the commonest period. It is more common in the lower than in the upper jaw, and is generally seen upon the outer margin of the gum at the necks of the first and second temporary molars or the incisors, and most frequently but not always confined to one side of the mouth. Seen in the early stages the mucous membrane at the necks of the teeth will be found deeply congested with venous blood, swollen, and, from tension, somewhat shining, the conditions being much aggravated by the presence of necrosed teeth, denuded fangs, or tartar. As the disease progresses, ulceration of a grey ashy colour makes its appearance at the free margin of the gum, and is accompanied by a thin sanious discharge, of offensive odour.

This condition of things continuing, more of the mucous membrane becomes involved, while the opposing cheek, where it rests against the gum, suffers in like manner. At this stage there is some swelling observable on the outer surface of the cheek. Further extension leads to exposure and exfoliation of the alveoli, with loss of the temporary teeth, and occasionally also of the bone containing the crypts of the permanent ones. Whether the disease if left to itself would go on until life was involved, or undergo a spontaneous cure at an advanced stage, it is difficult to say: its having a constitutional cause would favour the former conclusion; but, no doubt, even the most neglected cases meet with treatment before such results could be likely to happen.

The disorder is happily so thoroughly under control, that, were we asked to mention a disease for which there was a certain specific, we should unhesitatingly pronounce ulcerative stomatitis to be the disease, and chlorate of potash the specific. The effect of the drug is visible in a few days, and all but the worst cases appear cured in ten days to a fortnight, and this without any local application whatever. The quantity of the salt that we employ is, in infants up to three years old, three to five grains; to four or five years old, ten grains; and to seven or nine years old, fifteen grains; in all three times daily, and diluted in water, varying in quantity from a teaspoonful to an ounce, to which a little sugar may be added if desired. In the very debilitated, quinine may be combined with advantage, and fresh vegetable diet should certainly be recommended. Besides the loss of some of the permanent teeth, troublesome cicatrices, binding the cheek to the gums, may result; but, unless they interfere to any extent with the opening of the mouth, they will not be of much consequence. The above-mentioned conditions appear in the most severe form when following the exanthemata, especially scarlatina, measles, and small-pox, and less frequently after continued fever; it is a question whether they are not then identical with the cases to which Salter was the first to draw attention, and for which he

offers an ingenious explanation. He points out that the extensive necrosis of the maxillary bones, occurring after the above-mentioned diseases, and in the order of frequency in which we have placed them, occurs usually at an age when the most active tooth-development and rapid nutritional changes are going on in the jaws, viz., between three and eight years, five years being the most common age. He believes that, as in the case of maxillary necrosis due to phosphorus fumes, so in that following the eruptive fevers, the cause is the application of a specific poison to the vascular parts of the teeth; but that in the latter the poison is generated within the individual. As the poison of the exanthemata,—scarlatina in particular,—affects especially the dermal tissues, the teeth, as a part of the dermal system, suffer with the rest, and in like manner affect their surroundings. The exfoliation here figured (Fig. 245) was the

Fig. 245 shows a necrosis of nearly the whole of the right superior maxilla of a child, the result of ulcerative stomatitis, occurring soon after measles.

result of a neglected case of undoubted ulcerative stomatitis occurring within a few weeks after measles. It yielded readily to chlorate of potash; that is, the ulcerative condition entirely disappeared; but the necrosis which comprises the greater portion of the right superior maxilla did not become evident until some two months afterwards. Salter, however, says,[1] 'it has seldom been preceded by swelling or pain, or accompanied by periosteal abscess,' and, moreover, 'its tendency is to be symmetrical.' The above-mentioned case is then probably one of ordinary ulcerative stomatitis intensified by the effects of measles. With ulcerative stomatitis has often been confounded another

[1] *Dental Pathology and Surgery*, by S. James A. Salter, M.B., F.R.S., p. 310.

form of ulceration, happily rare in its occurrence, because of a much more serious character, very often fatal in its results.

Cancrum oris, or gangrenous stomatitis, as it has been variously termed, is a disease most common in children aged from two to twelve years. It does not always appear to attack the most emaciated or unhealthy, although more frequently those residing with unhealthy surroundings, and especially those who have suffered from exhausting fevers and other diseases. It commonly appears upon the inner surface of the cheek, soon causing it to swell, and giving it on the outer surface a prominence, tense, red and glistening like an apple. To the touch it appears dense and unyielding. With the swelling of the cheek the neighbouring glands will be found more or less enlarged, and the salivary secretion increased, being of a thick ropy consistency. As the disease advances, there will, on inspection of the mouth, be seen—not without difficulty, owing to the tenseness of the cheek, unless the practitioner employs a small mouth-mirror—a ragged-edged brownish ulcer, whilst the gums opposite appear to share the same condition. As the disease progresses, the saliva becomes highly offensive, tinged with blood, and coloured by the disintegrated tissues separated from the ulcerated surface. The ulceration, which extends from the cheek to the adjacent mucous membrane, soon involves the alveolar process and the body of the bone itself. On the cheek the prominent red spot becomes black, and this is soon followed by sloughing, which exposes the interior of the mouth and reveals the frightful mischief which has occurred, and which is generally out of all proportion to the apparent spirits and the pain suffered by the patient, who, after this, soon sinks exhausted. This is but a very imperfect sketch of this frightful disease;[1] it is hardly likely to come under the attention of the dental surgeon in his ordinary vocation, yet it is well that he should be able to recognise it, as it is only in the earliest stages that the disease can be grappled with successfully.

[1] For an excellent account in the English language of Gangrenous Stomatitis, see West on *Diseases of Infancy and Childhood*, p. 562 *et seq.*

The treatment will be first and chiefly directed to the local conditions. The patient being placed under chloroform, strong nitric acid should be applied to the ulcerated surface on the interior of the cheek, which may be best accomplished by conveying it upon a piece of amadou held by dressing forceps: the amadou takes up a considerable quantity, and the acid is less likely to drop from it than from lint or cotton. The opposing surface of the gum must, if possible, be protected by a spoon or cheek-retractor, unless the ulceration has extended to it also; but the risk of touching healthy mucous membrane must not override the certainty of bringing the acid well into contact with the gangrenous parts. In severe cases the thermal cautery might, we suggest, be advantageously employed as well as the nitric acid. Soothing applications, combined with unirritating antiseptics, should follow the cauterisation, whilst the patient must be well supported by nourishing diet, especially strong extract of meat, stimulants, and tonics. Port wine, bark, and iron are strongly indicated; chlorate of potash, which in some hands has proved of great service, may also be tried in doses of 10–20 grains every four hours. From time to time the mouth must be examined, and the nitric acid re-applied to any spot showing extension of the disease. In some cases much milder treatment has proved successful, but for typical ones bold and severe measures can alone be relied on.

Ulcerations of the gum may arise from other causes and conditions than those mentioned; thus in syphilis, salivation, and strumous and malignant affections, they appear in connection with, sometimes as the forerunners of, necrosis of the maxillæ. Broken teeth, or even worn-down teeth, presenting sharp and irregular surfaces, are a very frequent cause of ulceration of the mucous membrane of the mouth. Those formed on the tongue are often considerable in size, intensely painful, and at times of very suspicious appearance; the filing smooth or removal of such teeth will, if the cause be purely local, soon effect a cure. We cannot, however, too strongly impress upon our patients the importance of having such sources of irritation

removed as soon as possible; for, should any tendency to malignant disease exist, they would be most likely to determine its appearance.

We frequently find ulceration arising in the neighbourhood of the outer and posterior aspects of a lower third molar which is carious at this spot, and irritates the mucous membrane moved over it when the mouth is opened or shut. Filling, filing, or extraction will remedy the evil, but at the same time we may employ with great advantage the combination of chlorate of potash with decoction of poppies spoken of at page 31.

We have already alluded to cases where the roots of temporary teeth become denuded of gum, and, owing to the advance of the permanent teeth, project, and often severely ulcerate the cheek. This occurs, though less commonly, in connection with permanent teeth, as their fangs when exposed are not pressed outwards in the same manner.

We have on more than one occasion, whilst considering the subject of ulcerations of the gum, alluded to necrosis of the jaws, upon which matter it is necessary to add a few words. Besides a death of portions of the maxillæ, the result of the ulcerative processes which we have described, necrosis may occur in what we term an idiopathic form, which term is little better than a disguise for our not being able to trace it to its true cause. When it thus appears, it is very desirable that the dental surgeon should not overlook the real trouble of his patient, who will very likely apply to him on account of pain which he refers to certain teeth. These may be found free from caries, but, perhaps, slightly loose and tender when percussed. The surrounding gum will often indicate by its puffy condition, and apparently loose attachment to the subjacent bone, what has occurred; and a fistulous opening in it, if such exist, will of course reveal to him the true state of matters. It is not that he will do much harm in removing teeth which most probably will be lost in the progress of the disease, but that he may get, as many most unjustly have done, the unmerited credit of having caused it. When the mischief has been correctly diagnosed, we shall do

well to warn our patient to prepare for what will be tedious and most disgusting to him; as, if we attempt to remove the diseased bone before nature has set the limit to its boundaries, and separated it from its healthy surroundings, we shall probably do more harm than good; at the same time we have found, that, by cutting away without violence exposed and projecting portions, we have lessened the discharge and rendered the mouth more comfortable. Support by good nourishment, a moderate amount of stimulant and tonics, with, if possible, a change of air, will be the best means of assisting nature to do her work; whilst frequent washing, or, if possible, syringing with Condy's fluid, weak solution of carbolic acid, or the lotio sodæ chlorinatæ, will reduce to a minimum the offensiveness of the discharges, which too often causes a susceptible patient to be constantly sick and to loathe his food. As soon as the sequestrum is found to be detached from the neighbouring bone it should be removed, to effect which it will often be found necessary to free it more or less by the knife from the surrounding mucous membrane. The portions of the maxillæ most liable to necrosis are undoubtedly the alveolar portions, which it is not difficult to account for when we consider their immediate relationship to organs so prone to disease as are the teeth. When we consider how much this portion of the bone suffers during alveolar abscess and chronic periodontitis, it is surprising that necrosis of more or less of it does not follow as a rule rather than an exception; indeed, we may to some extent overlook this cause of necrosis. Whilst we are now writing, this matter is undergoing investigation by our colleague, I. Lyons, who has already collected several cases of necrosis in which the history points to considerable pain and inflammation having existed long previously in teeth which have apparently recovered, but their injurious effects on the surrounding bone have become subsequently evident. Should this be proved to be other than exceptional, it may lead us to adopt a somewhat less conservative treatment with regard to teeth which are the subjects of severe periodontitis. The teeth which appear most frequently to

cause necrosis in their neighbourhood are the incisors of the upper jaw: whether this be due to any peculiarity in the structure or condition of the bone at such parts, or to the circumstance that we are more loth to remove these than any other teeth, even when much diseased, is a question that we will not venture to decide. The exfoliations are often not considerable, involving only a portion of the external alveolar plate.

The necroses which occur in connection with syphilis, mercurial salivation, phosphorus-poison, &c., form a portion of general surgery which the dental surgeon will have to study from works devoted to that subject: their consequences will more directly affect him as he will be called upon to supply the vacuities which those diseases have effected.

As regards the removal of teeth in cases where necrosis is going on, much judgment must be exercised. If they are unsound, and evidently a cause of irritation, they should be extracted; but, if sound and not apparently exciting irritation, they may be left, in the hope that new bone may, after the separation of the old, be developed around them, as has been recorded in a few rare instances. The new bone formed in the lower maxilla especially has been shown to have a strong tendency to become atrophied or absorbed: some have attributed this to a want of proper use or exercise, and it has been suggested—even attempted, we believe—to effect this object by supplying artificial dentures to rest and exert pressure upon it, but with what result we have never learned.

CHAPTER XVII.

CICATRICES CLOSING THE JAWS.

THESE may occur as the result of most of the forms of ulceration which we have considered. Those resulting from ulceration of the cheek, by irritation of the fang of a temporary tooth, or a mild attack of ulcerative stomatitis, although very common, are seldom of sufficient inconvenience to call for interference. Those following severe cases of ulcerative stomatitis, or the ulcerations which are the result of mercurial salivation, or following the exanthemata or gangrenous stomatitis, are much more serious and difficult to deal with. In these latter cases there is often not merely a loss of mucous structure, but likewise of muscular and bony tissue. This hiatus becomes in the first place supplied by connective tissue, but, as time advances, it contracts and becomes condensed, and in some cases even ossified;[1] thus holding, on that side of the mouth, the two jaws in firm apposition, nay, even drawing them unnaturally together, as seen in the displacement of the bicuspid and molar teeth. It is a question whether something might not be done to prevent these results by treatment at an early stage, *i.e.*, after the ulceration has terminated and the healing process commenced, and the treatment which we are about to suggest would, no doubt, be more effectual were it generally applied earlier. To those only who have undertaken the separation of webbed fingers or toes is known

[1] Perhaps we should rather say makes way for osseous tissue developed at the spots where the bone has been lost.

the difficulty of preventing the reunion of the severed tissues, and it is much the same with the mouth. The mere dissecting-out of the cicatrices is utterly useless, the same tissue appearing in its place soon afterwards, perhaps less elastic even than its predecessor. Dentists are familiar with deep sulci covered with healthy mucous membrane that are met with in the mouths of patient individuals who have worn gold plates, the outer edges of which were too deep, and formed ulcers, these healing over when the furrows thus formed were sufficiently deep. It occurred to one of that body, J. C. Clendon, to treat,—and we believe with the greatest success yet attained,—cases where the cicatrices had been freely divided at their attachments to the maxillæ, by means of metallic plates, the edges of which prevented reunion between the cheek and the opposing maxillæ. The proceeding is best accomplished by placing the patient under chloroform, freely dividing the attachments of the cicatrix from both maxillæ, and then forcing open the jaws and obtaining an impression of the defective side with Stent's material, taking care that some of it passes between the divided surfaces. Plates are then struck up adapted to the jaws of that side, and firmly attached to the teeth, if there be any; if not, they should be kept in place by a strong spiral spring, the outer side of such plates passing well between the divided surfaces. The plates should be introduced whilst the patient is again under an anæsthetic, when the knife may be further employed, if necessary. The plates must be worn continually for weeks or even months after their insertion, and, in addition to this, it may be necessary to retain between them some elastic material. In the more severe and complicated cases, where irregular masses of bone fuse together the two maxillæ, the only measure at all calculated to afford relief is the operation of Esmarch, which consists in removing a wedge-shaped section of the lower jaw anterior to the obstruction, and obtaining at that point a false joint. In a most interesting communication made to the Odontological Society

by Claude Rogers,[1] a case was narrated in which a lower gold plate bearing artificial teeth, and connected with an upper one by springs, had completely divided the jaw-bone on the right side, and had partially done so on the left side. 'The patient said he suffered little or no pain.' Surely, we are here offered a valuable suggestion for a perfect and efficient means of effecting the division of the jaw, with the certainty of preserving its mobility; indeed, the hint might prove valuable in many other surgical cases.

[1] *Trans. Odont. Soc.*, vol. xii. p. 53.

CHAPTER XVIII.

TUMOURS OF THE GUM AND UPON THE JAWS.

THESE can be most conveniently described in relation to the structures which form their essential part. Small mucous tumours of the gum are very common; the cause of their origin is, usually, the uneven edge of a carious tooth. The teeth move slightly in their sockets during mastication, as witnessed by the polished facets which they present where they touch each other laterally. This movement, under the above-mentioned conditions, no doubt greatly irritates the gum, producing a hypertrophy of the mucous membrane at the spot, and the growth, especially if there be an adjoining tooth, assumes a polypoid form. These mucous polypi are of a darker colour than the surrounding gum, and soft, but not very sensitive to the touch, and they bleed very readily when irritated: they seldom grow as far as, and hardly ever beyond, the level of the crowns of the adjacent teeth. When they occur in parts of the gum not occupied by teeth their origin is still, doubtless, due to some irritation. Their treatment will consist in removal: this will be readily effected by cutting them off close to, or a little below, the level of the gum with a scythe-shaped lancet (see Fig. 146), and touching with caustic the spots from which they have sprung. Those which have their origin in the irritation of the ragged edge of a carious tooth will, if that be not removed, soon appear again; hence, after their excision, the carious cavity must be filled. In such cases the wooden wedge placed between the teeth will be of much service, as it will not only press away the gum and arrest its bleeding, but

also enable the operator to have the stopping perfectly smooth at the cervical edge of the cavity. When these growths occur in connection with roots, the latter, as a rule, should be removed, and the polypi will soon disappear of themselves.

PAPILLARY TUMOUR OF THE GUM.—This growth, which was, we believe, first described by Salter,[1] and which consists almost entirely of hypertrophied epithelial tissue, is a rare form of tumour which occasionally invades the region of the jaws. We have met with but one instance of it, about the size of a bean, and situated at the junction of the alveolar process of the superior maxilla with the body of that bone, and resembling a bunch of spring onions in miniature. It had existed several years, and, as its presence was not the object of our patient's visit to us, we neither suggested interfering with it nor were desired to do so, but we inculcated the importance of carefully watching it, and of having attention paid to it, should it appear to increase in size, as, in a second case, occurring in Salter's practice, which was operated on by Cock, of Guy's, it recurred and proved fatal.

VASCULAR TUMOURS OF THE GUM.—In this form of growth, it is the vascular element that chiefly predominates. They do not in general extend to any great distance above the level of the surrounding gum, but may occupy no inconsiderable area upon it. Their colour is of a deep purple, and their origin is congenital. in fact, they are doubtless venous nævi upon the gums. In their removal,—the only treatment that presents itself,—care must be taken to thoroughly extirpate them, as, if any portion be left, they are almost certain to recur. In order to do this effectually, we recommend the operator, before employing the knife, to mark around the growth with nitrate of silver or strong carbolic acid, so that its limits may be seen during the process of removal; for, on its being cut into, it almost entirely disappears through the emptying of the vessels which give it distinctness. The process will be as much one of scraping as of cutting, and upon the surface of the bone, which,

[1] *Guy's Hospital Reports* (1866).

when laid bare, should be washed over with strong nitric acid, or, better still, be rubbed over with the extremity of a thermal cautery, which will destroy such portions of the growth as have their origin in the vessels of the periosteum. Tumours having their origin in the periosteum of the jaw, or the alveolo-dental membrane, are by no means unfrequent. They may be general or circumscribed; in the former they constitute what has been termed *hypertrophy of the gums.*

HYPERTROPHY OF THE GUMS.—This may be congenital, or appear long after birth. It seldom attracts much attention until after the first teeth are erupted, when the growth becomes more active. On examining such a case, we shall find the gums greatly enlarged, and nodulated like the surface of a mulberry;

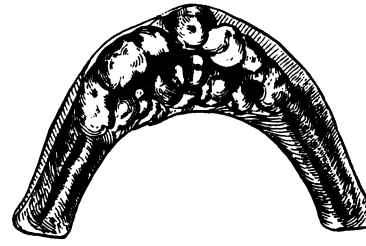


Fig. 246 shows a cast of hypertrophy of the gum—not congenital—which disappeared after the removal of some loose teeth.

in colour a little darker than normal, but still not unhealthy-looking in this respect. The teeth erupted appear moved by the growth to abnormal positions, and are enveloped by it up to, and at times beyond, the summits of their crowns. In the upper jaw the projections from the alveolar borders may meet and completely fill up the arch of the palate, as in a case which we met with at the London Dental Hospital, and which we referred to the consulting surgeon, C. Heath, who has published an account of the same.[1] The non-congenital cases, which never, or hardly ever, appear to increase to the dimensions assumed by the congenital ones, seem to have their origin in the irritation caused by teeth; for, when these, which have been generally

[1] *Trans. Odont.* Soc. vol. xi. p. 18.

loose for some time, are removed, the hypertrophy, as a rule, disappears (Fig. 246). It may, however, be, that in removal of the teeth the alveolar processes, from which they appear chiefly to spring,—as shown by C. S. Tomes in an examination of the case just referred to,—become absorbed, and thus the growth becomes atrophied. Complete removal is the treatment indicated in the congenital cases. It is an operation by no means easy to perform, especially in the case of young children, and must be done piecemeal. The knife must be employed as much as possible for incising at the margins of the growth, but the bulk of the process will have to be performed with bone-cutting forceps, which should include a considerable portion of the alveolar margins as well as the growth. In arresting the hæmorrhage and destroying small portions of the growth not included by the cutting-forceps, we shall find the thermal cautery of much service. In the non-congenital cases, removal of the teeth is the treatment; for, if an attempt were made to remove the growth and save the teeth, portions would be almost sure to be left to incite further growth; still, if the teeth appear sound, firm, and useful, such an attempt may be made.

Epulis.—The more circumscribed tumours, the chief constituents of which are fibrous tissue, and which usually come under the denomination of fibrous epulis, appear closely connected with those last-mentioned, as regards both their structure and their seat of origin. Their being so frequently found in connection with diseased teeth, or roots of teeth, would lead us to conclude that they resulted from irritation of the periosteum of the jaw, or alveoli of the teeth: they occasionally arise, however, in the proximity of perfectly sound ones. In colour their surfaces resemble that of healthy mucous membrane, except where they are from their size bitten upon by opposing teeth, or otherwise irritated, when they appear indented and superficially ulcerated. Upon pressure they feel either smooth or nodulated, firm, and slightly elastic: moderate pressure is not attended with pain; and it is probable, from their altogether painless nature, that prior to the days of anæsthetics, patients

allowed them to grow to enormous dimensions before resorting to medical advice: now they seek sooner to be relieved of their inconveniences, and we seldom see them of anything like the size described in the works of older surgical writers. The largest that we ever removed was about the size of a mandarin orange. As it arose from the outer border of the upper alveolus, and occupied a place between the cheek and the gums, it gave comparatively little inconvenience, which up to that time had been endured by the patient in preference to its removal: this latter we accomplished without much difficulty, as it was pedunculated. The most common period for their appearance is towards and about middle life. In structure they present chiefly a fibrous character intermingled with fibro-plastic cells. The fibres are collected in bundles arranged in a wavy form, springing up and radiating from the periosteum of the alveolar process, or from the alveolo-dental membrane, and containing the cells in their interstices. Spiculæ of bone, or small nuclei of bone-development, are frequently found in the more central and basal portions of the growth. They are moderately vascular, but more so than the ordinary type of fibrous tumour. The treatment will consist in their removal by excision; nevertheless we have met with some of small dimensions which have been more than kept in check by a continual application of tannin. We had these under observation for several years, and they certainly decreased in size; but of the ultimate results we have no history. In their removal by operation, the structure from which they have their origin must be borne in remembrance; for, to merely excise them to the surrounding level will be but to leave the foundation for a future growth of a more active character, and harder to deal with than its predecessor. The growth, including a small portion of surrounding healthy tissue, and quite to the surface of the bone, should be removed with the scalpel; the bare bone should then be scraped or superficially cut away with a gouge or bone-forceps; and finally we recommend the application of strong nitric acid, which will affect those portions of periosteum which superficially

enter the bone, and which the gouge cannot reach. Instead of scraping the bone, and applying the nitric acid, we may employ the actual cautery: the latter is best suited to cases where the exposed bone presents an even surface, the former to those where it presents an uneven and irregular one. It is better to be over-severe in our treatment than to err on the opposite side and subject our patient to the chance of a recurrence of the growth, causing him not only inconvenience but probably a wretched anxiety with regard to its true nature.

Myeloid Epulis.—This is considered by Heath as only a variety of that last-mentioned, differing in being more vascular and containing in much larger quantity the polynucleated cells or myelo-plaxies which led Paget to give them this descriptive name. Whether these elements,—the characteristic ones of marrow and bone in an active state of growth,—are to be found invariably in all fibrous epules, we will not venture to express an opinion, but we fully agree with those who consider these tumours as having a deeper origin than the fibrous variety, viz., below the periosteum. They occur, as a rule, at an earlier age, are of more rapid growth, and more readily become ulcerated than the former; while in appearance they are of a darker and more purple colour, and are softer to the touch. The presence of portions of bone in their substance is more frequent than in the fibrous variety. They appear upon the alveolar processes of both jaws, but are, we believe, more common to the lower than to the upper jaw. The treatment will consist in their removal; and, as they have a deeper origin than those last-described, we must sacrifice with them more of the subjacent bone. In a case where we removed a myeloid growth of considerable size from the right alveolus of the lower jaw, in a boy aged nine years, we contented ourselves with removing the bone only that covered the unerupted cuspidati and bicuspids, hoping thereby to be able to preserve those teeth; and, so far as we were able to follow the case, our object was attained, and no return of the growth ensued,

but the actual cautery was freely applied to the surface of the bone where it had been excised.

Osseous Growths.—These upon the alveolar surface are far from uncommon. Their most usual seat is upon the lower jaw, on its inner surface: here they somewhat interfere with the comfortable adjustment of an artificial denture, and are thus brought conspicuously under the notice of the practitioner, the patient being in many cases quite unaware of their existence. Our belief is that they correspond to splints as seen in the legs of horses,—an effort of Nature to strengthen a part somewhat unduly taxed. The teeth of these subjects are generally strong, and show evidences of having been well employed. The most

Fig. 247 shows considerable exostosis of the lower jaw.

marked cases that have come under our notice have been in individuals who lived largely on oatmeal. The illustration given (Fig. 247) was taken from a cast of the mouth of an eminent physician; and, although the prominent portions of bone projected considerably under the tongue, they never gave rise to inconvenience. From their density of structure they would be difficult to remove, as much perhaps as the so-called ivory exostoses of the cranium.

Malignant growths occur in the regions that fall under the province of the dental surgeon, as well as in other parts of the body. Their presence is no doubt sometimes determined by the

irritation of diseased and broken teeth; but, even when we bear in mind the amount of irritation which may be thus set up, it is very rare indeed to be able to assign this as a direct cause of cancerous growth. It is only right that every dental surgeon should be able to diagnose such tumours in the earliest stages of their existence, and in this he will hardly fail if he has paid due attention to that surgical portion of his course of study which rightly forms an important part of a dental curriculum.

CHAPTER XIX.

DENTIGEROUS CYSTS.

UNDER this designation are included two if not three varieties of cystic disease; first, the occurrence of cysts in the alveolo-dental membrane, or at some little distance from it; secondly, cysts which form in connection with teeth which have suffered impaction or otherwise delayed eruption; and perhaps thirdly, cysts found where a tooth or teeth should exist, and containing a number of very imperfect, irregularly formed, teeth attached to their walls. The first are much more frequent in occurrence than has been generally supposed, and, though not absolutely confined to the permanent teeth, much more common in connection with them than with the temporary teeth. Our attention was turned to the subject of their existence many years ago, and our interest awakened in it from watching the progress of two cases operated on by the late Sir W. Lawrence, whilst we were acting in the capacity of dresser to that gentleman.

The tumours were then called and treated as 'hydrops antri,' but we perceived in their structure, and more especially in their contents, clear evidence that they were cystic growths, and we shortly afterwards published our views to the effect that 'hydrops antri' as a disease had no real existence,[1] a view which had already, unknown to us, been advanced by Giraldes.

The situation in which this disease most frequently presents itself is directly above the apices of the fangs of upper first or

[1] *Trans. Odont. Soc.*, February 1862.

second bicuspids: we have seen it, but more rarely, over upper cuspidati, and, on one or two occasions only, in connection with upper lateral incisors and upper molars. In the lower jaw, on the contrary, a molar has been most frequently associated with it. It generally appears at first as a small painless swelling over a tooth on the outer alveolar wall, and is very frequently mistaken for an abscess. As it increases in size, it produces more or less discomfort and inconvenience, from food lodging between it and the cheek, and we have generally been told by patients that the swelling has increased and been somewhat tender when they have suffered from catarrh.

Fig. 248 shows the appearance of a cystic tumour of the upper jaw caused by a diseased bicuspid root.

To the touch the swelling will yield a semi-elastic feeling, with no distinct sensation of fluctuation; but that which is most characteristic is the crackling parchment-like sensation,—'craquement,'—felt on pressing it, and due to the yielding of the thin outer layer of bone distended by its growth (Fig. 248). This, however, is not always present; the bone may be too dense to permit movement, as is generally the case in the lower jaw. At times a distinct bony ridge is felt upon the surface of the swelling.

The cause of these growths is obscure. We may perhaps attribute their frequent occurrence in connection with teeth to

the liability of the latter to conditions producing irritation and hyperæmia about their roots. It may be observed that two classes of organs in the body especially liable to the occurrence of cysts in their surroundings, viz., the teeth and the testicles, are both of them developed in positions from which they afterwards migrate; but the liability of the ovary and its surroundings to the same conditions would preclude our laying much stress on this analogy. In most cases, we believe, it will be found that these dental cysts have their origin in the cellular tissue which forms the sheath to the nerves and blood-vessels in their course to the teeth; as, in the case of the bicuspids especially, these pass through the bone, forming the base and outer wall of the antrum: the development of a cyst distends the bone on the one side externally, and on the other internally into the antrum.

On the subject of the treatment of this class of cysts, extracts from a paper which we contributed to the 'St. Bartholomew's Hospital Reports'[1] will, we trust, as they include cases actually treated, prove acceptable to the reader.

'I have remarked that the treatment often adopted for this disease is not always so simple as is actually called for.

'The plans I have for several years carried out have in all cases in a very short time effectually cured the complaint, and have been, I imagine, far more acceptable to the patient than those directed by, at least, our older authorities upon the subject, such as removal of a considerable portion of the outer wall of the antrum; removal of a molar tooth and perforation of the floor of the antrum through its alveolus with a trocar; or even the slitting through of the cheek to facilitate the first operation, which process I have myself witnessed in the person of a female some years ago.

'The process of treatment I would recommend can, I think, be best illustrated by selecting three cases out of those I have met with during the present year.

[1] *St Bartholomew's Hospital Reports*, vol. vii.

'CASE I.

'M. T., male, æt. 27, out-patient at St. Bartholomew's Hospital. Bony prominence above left upper cuspidatus unyielding to pressure. Tooth carious, but too good to be sacrificed. Free incision through bony wall of tumour with strong scalpel, escape of serous fluid, introduction of tent of lint, about one inch of which moistened with carbolic acid to irritate and provoke suppuration of cyst—lint to be removed by patient at the end of twenty-four hours. Pain and swelling ensuing, the lint was removed after about eight hours, but suppuration set in and ceased in about ten days.

'CASE II.

'A female, æt. 19, in Lawrence Ward, under the care of Sir James Paget. Swelling on left side of mouth above upper bicuspid teeth, or rather their roots. These, with those of the first molar, were removed under the influence of nitrous oxide. On removal of the second bicuspid root, there was a gush of serous fluid. Through the alveolus of this tooth the lint, as in the former case, was introduced into the cyst, suppuration set in in the course of a few hours, and the patient was discharged in the course of a few days.

'CASE III.

'Mr. W., æt. 24, a private patient, sent to me by my friend Mr. Pocklington, of Wimbledon. This patient applied on account of what he believed to be a gum-boil, situated on the right side of the face, above the roots of the first and second upper bicuspid teeth. He informed me that he had never suffered pain from it, but he applied on account of the swelling, which was beginning to present deformity. The second bicuspid was carious to the level of the gum; the first bicuspid carious, but capable of being preserved by filling. Under the influence of nitrous oxide, the second bicuspid fang was forcibly grasped with a sharp pair of root-forceps, which were well pressed up. A large

quantity of serous fluid immediately escaped; and as the tooth was removed a membranous substance was likewise removed attached to it. This proved to be a cyst of almost the exact form and size, when distended, of a pigeon's egg (Fig. 249), which had been ruptured in the process of removal. The patient was congratulated upon having escaped a painful and troublesome portion of the treatment, previously explained to him, —viz., that of having to endure the tent of lint and the subsequent suppuration, in consequence of the cyst having been removed,— but too hastily, for secondary hæmorrhage set in the same evening, and Mr. Pocklington had to plug the cavity the tumour had left. Within about two months I operated upon the same patient for similar disease upon the left side of the mouth. This time it was connected with the first upper bicuspid, also a root. When this was removed, the cyst did not come away, so the tent was introduced, and somewhat forcibly, to prevent if possible the unpleasant complication which occurred in his former case. But of no avail. Hæmorrhage, to which this gentleman and several members of his family are liable, again took place; and Mr. Pocklington's services were again required to forcibly plug the cyst, through the aperture of the alveolus of the first bicuspid.

Fig. 249 shows a cyst removed with a bicuspid of the upper jaw.

'I need not comment further upon the treatment of these three typical cases than to observe that the following rules may be adopted. If the disease be traced to a tooth, and that tooth, though diseased, be capable of being saved, we should open the tumour above it, and by suitable means promote suppuration of the cyst, which will end in a cure. If the disease be connected with a useless tooth or root, we should remove either, and cause the tumour to suppurate through the alveolus. Should the cyst come away with the tooth, we may congratulate

ourselves and the patient that the best thing for the credit of the former, and the best thing for the comfort of the latter, has happened.

'I have laid much stress upon making the cyst, when left, suppurate, and upon this ground. I have seen cystic tumours, in which the cyst has been tapped several times, and in which stimulating injections have been employed, close up again, and continue to secrete the characteristic fluid; but when once suppuration has occurred, healing up and gradual disappearance of the swelling has been the result.'

In the second variety an unerupted tooth is the cause. There can be little doubt but that the serous fluid is secreted within the dental capsule, which thereby becomes distended. On cutting open such a cyst, and evacuating its contents,—a light straw-coloured or brownish fluid, which on settling becomes coated over with shining crystals of cholestearine, the product of fatty degeneration and common to cystic growths,—the crown of a tooth is found projecting into it, the fang being more or less attached to the surrounding bone; or it may happen that the cyst has so far encroached upon the bone which sustained the tooth,—its alveolus,—that the tooth has lost its hold and is found lying at its most dependent part.

The symptoms of this form of dentigerous cyst will be on the whole very similar to that first described, viz., a painless and unaccountable swelling in the maxilla at or near to the alveolar process, except that where it is situated a tooth will be wanting, unless, of course, its origin should have been from a supernumerary one.

Considerable difficulty exists in explaining the cause of these cysts. Thus, unerupted or impacted teeth often exist without any such condition manifesting itself. The most probable explanation to our mind is one that we have given in connection with the views which we have already expressed with regard to the eruption of teeth.[1] Teeth developed in abnormal

[1] '*On the Pathology of One Form of Dentigerous Cyst*,' *St. Bartholomew's Hospital Reports*, vol xii. p. 91.

positions become, when carried to the surface in the process of eruption, impacted amongst the dense and more stationary layers of bone which form the alveoli of other teeth: thus their progress is interrupted whilst the surrounding bone still pursues its course.

We must also bear in mind that these tumours most commonly manifest themselves at a period succeeding that when the alveolar portions of the maxillæ have been in a state of active development, in which they can readily furnish such an amount of bone as will perfectly envelop such teeth. By and by, as this activity lessens, such will not be the case, and there will be a tendency to the existence of a 'hiatus' at that portion of the tooth most distant from the nutrient or medullary portion of the bone. The capsule of the tooth, the remains of the so-called enamel-organ, has been shown by J. Tomes to be, after the calcification of the enamel, quite free and detached from that structure, but, being attached to its surroundings, it will be carried with these away from the crown of the tooth: a space will thus be left, into which, as a matter of course, serous fluid must, under atmospheric pressure, be effused, and thus a cyst be formed. The further progress of the disease will be the approach of the cyst to the surface, where, if not interfered with, it will eventually evacuate itself. Before this takes place it not uncommonly happens that it has so exposed the fang-portion of the tooth, that the tooth loses its hold, and falls into the cyst.

The third variety has probably more analogy to the dentigerous cysts found in ovarian tumours than to those above described: here we have evidently a cyst developing teeth on its internal mucous membrane. The teeth also in their irregular form and structure, such as appeared in Tellander's and Mathias's cases, before alluded to, resemble those often met with in ovarian cysts. In both we have found teeth destitute of any pulp-cavity.[1] This class, as representing a tooth, might also be regarded as odontomes.

[1] *Trans. Odont. Soc.*, Nov. 2, 1863.

In the treatment of the latter two classes we shall adopt much the same plan as in the first, except that in addition to opening the cyst we shall remove any tooth or teeth that it may contain. The third class have generally evacuated themselves spontaneously, as will be the case with each variety if not interfered with. After serous fluid has been discharged for some time, the secretion becomes changed in character, until finally it appears as pus. In this condition the case is not unfrequently mistaken for alveolar or antral abscess.

It has been said that alveolar abscesses are sometimes converted into cystic tumours, and a case of this kind is reported by Salter:[1] without denying the possibility of such conversion we cannot say that any case has come before us to support us in entertaining that view. We have met with two cases where abscesses arose in connection with roots of teeth with which cysts were connected (Fig. 250): the cysts had evidently from their condition, the results of inflammation, been the cause of the abscesses. Had these cysts been left, and had they increased to ordinary dimensions, the inference would have been that they had originated out of the abscesses. We doubt much whether a surface, even though a true serous membrane, which has once secreted pus, and which remains more or less damaged in consequence, can again secrete a serous fluid. Indeed, in attempting to destroy the serous secretions of these cysts, we do so by exciting that of pus.

Fig. 250 shows a small cyst in connection with a bicuspid root. The cyst had lost its vitality, and had given rise to an abscess in its immediate neighbourhood; otherwise the cyst had no connection with the abscess.

[1] *Dental Pathology and Surgery*, p. 241.

CHAPTER XX.

DISEASES OF THE ANTRUM.

THE cavity which exists in the superior maxillary bone, and has for many centuries been known as the antrum of Highmore, is lined with a thin covering of mucous membrane, continuous with that of the respiratory tract, through its small opening into the middle meatus nasi, which is liable to disease, as are also its bony surroundings. We have recently treated of cysts in connection with teeth which frequently occupy much or the whole of the antrum, and which were mistaken for a disease, 'hydrops antri,' presumed to have its origin in the occlusion of the meatus antri, which prevented the secretion of mucus from finding an outlet. The normal secretion from the lining membrane of the antrum probably never accumulates in sufficient quantity to flow out of the cavity, or, indeed, to do more than slightly moisten its surface. When congested or slightly inflamed, as in catarrh, it probably, like the frontal and sphenoidal cavities, contributes its abnormal share of mucus or muco-purulent fluids; but even on this point we have no direct evidence. When, however, it is the subject of chronic inflammation, the membrane secretes, and in abnormal quantity, a thin purulent fluid of very offensive smell, which is continually flowing into the nostril of that side. The origin of this condition is obscure, for, though in many cases it may be traced to the irritation of diseased teeth, the roots of which are in some instances in absolute contact with it, in many it cannot in any way be so connected. The symptoms too are not clearly marked: a dull continuous pain about the region of the maxilla affected, as also

the orbit of that side, and an offensive discharge from the same nostril, increased in quantity when the head is laid upon the opposite side, are the most reliable; but these may occur when one of the turbinated bones, or its covering, is affected, and the antrum of that side is perfectly healthy. With regard to treatment, there can be no difference of opinion upon one point, viz., that, when the distressing symptoms mentioned above are present, we should remove all roots or very faulty teeth from the superior maxilla of the affected side. Much may be learned as well as gained by this step, for, by examining with a silver probe the vacant alveoli we may find that with but slight pressure it will pass into the antrum, when an odour from the probe, or the reverse, will at once settle the question.

For abscess of the antrum, or suppuration in the antrum, as it is variously termed, may be mistaken cases where alveolar abscesses have opened into that cavity. The symptoms here are, probably, more severe pain at the outset, referred especially to an upper tooth; then more or less relief followed by a copious discharge of well-formed pus from the nostril of that side. The removal of such a tooth may be followed by a flow of pus from its alveolus, either immediately, or after the introduction of a probe through it into the antrum.

The treatment of true chronic inflammation of the membrane lining the antrum, although generally successful in the end, is very tedious, much depending upon the age and general health of the patient. Our first object will be, to secure a free communication between the cavity of the antrum and the mouth. If, on the removal of a tooth, a probe will pass through the alveolus into the antrum, the opening should be enlarged to fully $\frac{1}{3}$ inch. Should no communication be effected with the probe, or no tooth be removed the roots of which run to the floor of the antrum, then an opening should be made just above the first molar tooth on the outer surface of its walls: we do not recommend the removal of a sound tooth for perforation through its socket. The instrument best suited for the operation is that figured (Fig. 251), which we constructed out of a

round file sharpened to a four-sided point: a vulcanite button about $\frac{3}{4}$ an inch from the point prevents the instrument from entering further into the antrum, and endangering the orbit, and with it the operation can be performed in a few seconds. The next, and a most important point will be, keeping the opening patent, as it will have a strong tendency to close up, and this will best be effected in the following manner. A piece of gold or platina tube, about $\frac{1}{10}$ inch in diameter, is constructed, and also a metallic plate to fit over that portion of the jaw in which the opening exists, and this may be made available for artificial teeth if required. The tube is soldered to the plate in such a position that when the plate is fitted to the mouth the tube passes through the opening into the antrum, projecting into it about $\frac{1}{3}$ inch from its floor. As it is important to preserve correctly the relative positions of the tube and the plate to the jaw and the orifice, we may describe how this can readily be effected. The plate and tube being constructed, the former has a hole made in it corresponding to that leading into the antrum: through this, when the plate is in the mouth, the tube is passed into the antrum to the required depth, and then its inferior portion, which projects below the plate, is attached to the latter by some plaster of Paris. When the plaster has set, the plate and tube are removed from the mouth and soldered in the correct positions, and the superfluous portion of tube is filed off level with the plate. The height of the tube in the antrum prevents the purulent fluid from running into the mouth, whilst the open

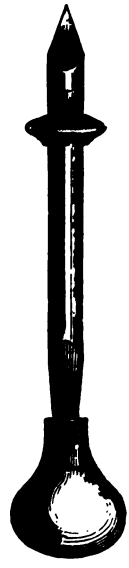


Fig. 251 represents an instrument suitable for making an opening into the antrum.

tube enables the patient to wash out the antrum in the simplest manner possible: he has only to take fluid into his mouth, close the nostril of the opposite side with his finger, and then, by compressing his cheeks, force it through the tube into the antrum and out at the open nostril. As constant washing out of the antrum constitutes a most important element in the treatment, and as the process effected by the syringe is awkward and painful to conduct, we feel sure that no practitioner who adops our plan will ever again resort to the latter.

With regard to the lotions recommended for washing out the antrum, Condy's fluid, weak carbolic acid, chlorinated soda, are amongst those most employed; but the agent which in our hands has proved the most efficient in controlling the discharge and promoting a healthy condition of the cavity, is a dilute solution of phosphoric acid: the patient should commence with a very weak one, say, one part of the dilute acid to twenty of water, and increase the strength until it cannot be borne without discomfort. The washing-out process may have to be continued, and generally, in true cases of antral disease, for several years; yet by the plan recommended the discomfort and annoyance are reduced to a minimum. The cases reported, which recover soon after the removal of a carious tooth and with a few injections of the antrum, are, we believe, in most instances, those in which an abscess connected with a tooth has burst into the antrum, and which are thus readily treated. When the discharge has quite disappeared, the plate and tube may be discontinued; or, if the former carry teeth, the latter may be cut off, and the hole into the antrum will then close up. We have never met with an instance where it has not speedily done so, but, should there be any such difficulty, we apprehend that a little strong nitric acid applied to its edges, as proposed by F. Mason for small openings in the palate, would no doubt lead to their granulating together. Much larger openings, the result of necrosis, we have closed by paring the edges and drawing them together by silver wire sutures. The subject of closure of large openings in the palate, either congenital or arising from

disease, by operation,—staphyloraphy,—belongs to the domain of general surgery, that of closure of the same by mechanical appliances to dental mechanics; and here the reader desirous of information cannot do better than consult the excellent work of Norman Kingsley.[1]

Cases of irritation set up in the antrum by the lodgment of a root of a tooth, pressed into it in attempting to extract the latter, are on record. One so described by Cattlin led him to furnish us with the best account extant of the form and variations in form of that cavity. Another case occurred recently at the Dental Hospital of London. In both the above-mentioned cases the portion of root was removed through an opening made into that cavity, but we do not recommend this being done unless irritation has been set up: we know a gentleman who has had the root of a second bicuspid in his antrum for at least twenty years, and without the least discomfort therefrom.

The antrum may be the seat of morbid growths which are common to other parts. Of these cystic tumours appear amongst the most frequent: they may occur as a single growth,—unilocular,—or exist as a large collection of smaller cysts,—multilocular. Mucous, fibrous, fibroid, and osseous tumours are also met with: we remember diagnosing an interesting case of the latter whilst acting as dresser for the late Sir W. Lawrence. Of the above-mentioned the cystic and mucous may be generally extirpated by moderate-sized openings made into the antrum, but the last-mentioned three usually necessitate removal of the whole of that maxilla.

[1] *Op. cit.*

CHAPTER XXI.

NERVOUS AND MUSCULAR AFFECTIONS DEPENDENT UPON DENTAL IRRITATION.

PAIN, the result of diseased teeth, may be felt in, and referred to, parts remote from the source of mischief; the most common is, perhaps, otalgia, having its origin in a defective molar, especially a third, of the lower jaw. When a patient presents himself complaining of pain about the region of the ear, side of the face and head, and running down the neck to the clavicle, an inspection of the teeth should never be omitted, as it will be frequently found to have its origin in the tooth specified. On the other hand, it must be borne in mind that any irritation to a portion of a sensory nerve, in its passage to the brain, will cause pain, which is referred to the peripheral extremities of the fibres irritated; hence there may apparently be pain in teeth which are in no way the cause of it. The most common instance of the transference of impressions with regard to dental irritation is where pain in a carious tooth is referred to a sound one, often in the opposite jaw. In rare cases, the dental irritation may excite pain in the nervous centres of parts most remote from them; thus we have recently had a case under observation where pain in a tooth was invariably accompanied with that in one of the testes. Brunton has pointed out, that in many such cases it may be accounted for by the irritation, conveyed to the centres of sensory branches of the fifth pair, being transmitted to those of the vaso-motor centres, from which they are not far distant, and thus the blood-vessels in distant parts become affected.

But, besides sensory impressions, the result of dental irritation, being thus transferred, the same irritation may produce motor-movements. The most common illustration of this reflex action is that of which we have already treated, viz., where a diseased tooth is accompanied by contraction of the muscles which close the mouth, and which speedily relax after

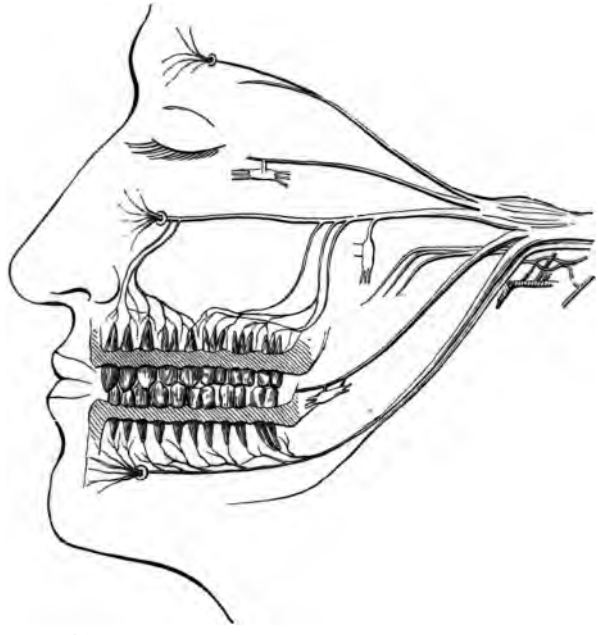


Fig. 252 shows a diagram of the fifth pair of cerebral nerves.

the tooth has been removed. Another familiar instance is the occurrence of strabismus due to teething. In rarer cases distant parts are also affected, as in the instances where the irritation of teething causes a permanent contraction of the muscles of the calf of the leg,—talipes equinus.[1] Sercombe has related a case, where, through irritation of the exposed pulp of

[1] It must be borne in mind that the conditions referred to in this and the preceding paragraph may arise from paralysis of opposing muscles.

a tooth, contractions of the uterus were immediately brought on: if such cases were common, it would certainly be dangerous to remove teeth from those who are pregnant. Intermittent, or clonic, spasm is likewise occasionally a consequence of the like irritation; and we now and then witness cases where an attack of odontalgia, or the removal of a tooth, causes spasmodic twitchings for some time. The convulsions of children are a very common instance, and those of epilepsy a more rare one, of these effects of dental irritation; the former being most common to the first, the latter to the second, dentition.[1]

An opposite condition to muscular contraction may be likewise set up, viz., where the nerve, or its centre, loses the power of conveying or exciting stimuli, hence paralysis. Gain, of Bath, has recorded a case in which a carious tooth, the origin of suppuration in the antrum, was undoubtedly the cause of paralysis of the upper eye-lid; for, on removal of the tooth and puncture of the antrum, the paralysis disappeared, but sight, which had been lost, did not again return. Paralysis of a much more extensive character occurs in consequence of dental irritation, especially in teething, as pointed out by Romberg and Henock, and, according to Fliess, is more common during the second than during the first dentition. The symptoms, according to the latter writer,[2] are as follows:—'Its onset is sudden. The child is apparently in good health, but at night it sleeps restlessly, and is a little feverish. Next morning the arm, or more rarely the leg, is paralysed. The arm drops; it is warm but swollen, and of a reddish-blue colour. It is quite immovable, but the child suffers little or no pain. Not unfrequently paralysis is preceded by choreic movements. Sometimes recovery is rapid, but at

[1] True cases of epilepsy do, however, occur, the result of irritation set up by diseased temporary teeth. Some of these have come under the notice of the writer, in which there could be no doubt as to cause and effect. Odontalgia from carious teeth was followed by true epileptic seizures, which latter ceased on the removal of the painful teeth.

[2] Quoted by Brunton in *Trans. Odont. Soc.*, vol. xii. p. 163.

other times the limb atrophies, and the paralysis may become associated with symptoms indicating more extensive disturbance of the spinal cord and brain, such as difficulty of breathing, asthma, palpitation, distortion of the face, and squint, ending in coma and death.' The pathological anatomy in these cases is difficult of explanation; the most probable hypothesis is, that they have their origin in disturbance of the vaso-motor system.

The organs of special sense are likewise not exempt from the influences of dental irritation; the eye appears unfortunately to be the most liable. Hutchinson regards the blindness as reflex, and analogous in its causation to essential paralysis of children. The blindness is generally preceded for a long time by facial neuralgia, associated with toothache. In other cases, as we have met with them, the loss of vision has occurred without any attendant pain: such was the condition in a patient at the Dental Hospital, who became affected with total blindness in one eye, following upon the pivoting of an upper incisor tooth, but who quite recovered the sight upon the removal of the tooth. Cases of deafness from the like cause have been recorded; and we know a gentleman, the subject of facial neuralgia, whose last attack was followed by a total loss of the sense of smell. Finally, the cerebral faculties may suffer from a similar cause, and cases are on record where insanity followed severe tooth-ache and disappeared upon the tooth being removed. In contrast to this may be related the case of an insane lady, who continually troubled us and other practitioners to remove her sound teeth on account of the uncomfortable sensations which she referred to them.

The diagnosis of the cause of neuralgia of the fifth pair is extremely difficult. Should a patient so suffering apply to us, our first care should be a thorough inspection of the teeth. We must not simply content ourselves with a visual examination, but must percuss all, especially those connected with the divisions of the nerve most affected. The application of heat and cold, by a jet of water, may also aid in detecting the origin of the pain. In

neuralgia of the fifth pair, pressure on the terminal branches, at or about their emergence from the bony channels that they occupy, will usually give pain, more severe in the case of the division most affected: it has also been pointed out by Trousseau, that in the same condition great tenderness is felt when pressure is made upon the spinous processes of the first two cervical vertebræ. These two symptoms would be admirable for diagnosis between odontalgia and true neuralgia but for the fact that the same conditions are set up by carious teeth, at least in the more advanced stages. Our position will not be an easy one when a patient complains of severe pain referred to a sound tooth, and one in which neither percussion nor changes of temperature reveal abnormal tenderness. We must not, however, conclude that the tooth is in no way the cause of the pain; whilst, on the other hand, it may occur in true neuralgia that a tooth becomes tender after every attack and yet is not the cause of the mischief. In the first case, a formation of secondary dentine, involving in some way the nerves of the pulp by pressure, may be the cause: we and others have removed apparently sound teeth at the urgent request of our patients, and have found such condition to exist. We should, however, now, in these days of anæsthetics, prefer opening up the pulp cavity, and destroying its contents, to extracting the tooth.

Periodicity in the attacks may be some guide to the true nature of the pain, but it is almost as common to neuralgia arising from dental irritation, as it is when due to chlorosis, anæmia, rheumatism, &c.

From the foregoing remarks it will appear that we can offer but little that will assist the student to distinguish odontalgia from neuralgia, having another origin; and, indeed, our laying down any clear line for the diagnosis would only lead to his disappointment. The treatment must consequently be somewhat empirical. After a thorough inspection of the mouth, and setting of the same in order by the removal or rectification of all likely sources of irritation, attention must be directed to the system in general. Thus, should it be inferred that the

patient is chlorotic, iron will be indicated, and the best form for it is probably the ammonio-citrate: if anæmic, we should prefer the ferro-citrate of quinine, especially if the conditions be marked by much periodicity in the attacks: in the cases where we may expect a rheumatic origin, we may commence with alkalies, and, if necessary, follow up with iodide of potassium. A fair trial may be given to the medicines regarded as directly specific for neuralgia, viz.—quinine, arsenic, bromide of potassium, chloride of ammonium in large and frequently repeated doses, and gelsemium administered in like manner; but the last two should be discontinued after twelve hours if no effect be produced, or if continued, be applied only in much smaller doses. That form, and a not uncommon one, in which the attacks come on after the patient has been asleep for an hour or two, and which has usually a dental origin, may be accounted for by local congestion, either at the painful spots or at the nervous centres. It is relieved by sitting up in bed, or by walking about, and a glass of port wine acts almost like magic in affording relief: all of these, and notably the last, stimulate the heart's action, which overcomes the congestion induced by the weaker action of the organ during sleep. When all remedies appear to fail, the question of an operation is open for consideration; which will consist in exposing the nerve in a portion of its course, and either stretching or dividing it. In the former, we should, when able to do so, expose the nerve between the brain and the spot to which the pain is especially referred, and, having done so, draw it chiefly towards the brain. In the case of the fifth nerve, it is clear that we could only so treat the inferior dental branch: in other cases, we must expose it where it emerges from its bony surroundings, and draw it forwards. In thus treating the nerve we probably alter the condition of its vascular supply. To a somewhat similar action, *e.g.* that of nerve-stretching, we are inclined to attribute the temporary relief often afforded by the removal of sound teeth in cases of true facial neuralgia, the branches

which give off the dental filaments being stretched or influenced thereby.

When nerve-stretching has failed, division of a branch may be performed: this, in the case of the fifth pair, is again only, to any extent, practicable in the inferior dental, in its course through the substance of the lower jaw. The nerve should be not merely divided, but a section actually removed from it. In other cases, the nerve may be divided at its emergence from any of the three foramina which give exit to the terminal branches of its three principal divisions. The objections to nerve-division are the subsequent existence of anæsthesia in the parts supplied by the distal portion of the divided nerve, and the chance of the divided proximal extremity becoming bulbous. Severe neuralgic pain may be referred to a spot where a tooth has been previously removed: we long ago formed the opinion that its occurrence was most probably due either to compression of a nerve-filament by bone in the alveolus or in a cicatrix, or to bulbous enlargement of the extremity of a severed dental nerve-branch. Our treatment consisted in cutting down upon the sensitive spot, freeing the mucous membrane from the surface of the bone, and removing a portion of the latter, which operation we performed many years before it was advocated by Gross in his excellent work.

INDEX.

ABB

ABBOTT, Dr. F., on dental caries (*note*), 86
Absorption of alveoli, 289
— — temporary teeth, 22
— — permanent teeth, 193
Acids, their effects upon teeth, 105
Alveolar abscess, 179
Alveolar process, fractures of, 244
Alveolo-dental membrane, inflammation of, 178
Amalgam, palladium, 129
— silver, 131
— copper, 131
— mixed metals, 133
Amalgams for filling teeth, 128
— — — — two classes, 129
Anæmia, convulsions due to, 15
Anæsthesia, history of discovery of, 252
— by cold, 254
— — electricity, 255
— — nitrous oxide, 255
— — — how produced, 257
— — — and ether, 273
— — chloroform, 274
Antrum, diseases of, 324
— suppuration in, 324
Arabs, Bedouin, good teeth of, 105
Arsenic, as an antiseptic, 172
— destruction of dental-pulp by, 169
Atheroma with regard to nitrous oxide, 272

BATE Spence, on dental caries, 97

CAR

Baume, on eruption of teeth, 23
Bell, T., on dental caries, 94
Blache, on teething, 16
Bleeding in teething, 15
Blindness due to dental irritation, 332
Bone, exfoliation of, 25, 299, 303
Breeding in, influence upon the jaws, 59
Bridgman on dental caries, 97
Broca, on odontomes, 37
Burnishers, agate, 127
— steel, 130
Burr-drills, 113

CANCRUM oris, or gangrenous stomatitis, 300
Caries in temporary teeth, 20
— — — — treatment of, 22
— on the increase, 85
— general course of, 86
— acid re-action in, 90
— theory of, Hunter, 92
— — — Fox, 93
— — — Bell, T., 94
— — — Robertson, 94
— — — Tomes, J., 95, 98
— — — Bridgman, 97
— — — Bate Spence, 97
— — — Leber and Rottenstein, 98
— soft and hard, 101
— chalky, 102
— conditions favouring, 104, 175
— prevention of, 106
— treatment of, by excision, 107
— — — — filling or stopping, 11

CAR

Cartwright, S., on irregularities in teeth (*note*), 59
Cattlin, on the antrum of Highmore, 328
Cautery, galvanic uses of, 168
— thermal uses of, 301
Cavity in tooth, preparation of, 112
Chair, operating, 137
Chin retractor, 20, 73
Chinese, teeth of, 107
Chloroform, cause of death from, (*note*) 270
— anæsthesia by, 274
— apparatus for, 276
— — Clover's, 275
Cicatrices closing the jaws, 305
Clamps for rubber-dam, 122
— — amalgam fillings, 134
Clendon, on treatment of cicatrices, 306
Clover's apparatus for nitrous oxide and ether, 273
— — — chloroform, 275
Coffin, expansion plates of, 63
Cold, for producing anæsthesia, 254
Coles, Oakley, on abnormal maxillæ (*note*), 61
Concussion of teeth, 79
Congestion of the gums, 288
Contracted dental arch, C. S. Tomes on, 62
Convulsions in teething, 8
— bleeding in, &c., 10, 15
— lancing the gums for, 9, 14
— due to anæmia, 15
Cutaneous eruptions in teething, 8, 15
Cyanosis with regard to nitrous oxide, 270
Cysts, dentigerous, 33, 316

DARWIN on ill-developed maxillæ, 58
Deafness due to dental irritation, 332
Decay by denudation, 102
Deficiency in temporary teeth, 18
— — permanent teeth, 39

ETH

Dental arch, expansion of, 61
Dental engine, 111
Dental-pulp, abnormal conditions of, 176
Dentifrice, 295
Dentigerous cysts, 33, 316
Dentine, secondary, 91
Dentition. *See* Teething,
Development of teeth, 1, 26
Diarrhœa in teething, 8
— — — treatment of, 11
Dickinson on teething, 16
Difficulties in filling teeth, 161
— — extraction, 236
— — — due to forms of teeth, 237
— — — from closure of jaws, 241
— — — — impaction of teeth, 241
Dilaceration, 83
Dislocation of teeth, 79
— — jaw, 246

ELECTRICITY as an anæsthetic, 255
Elevator, principles of, 227
— application of, 229
— forms of, 228, 231
Enamel cutters or chisels, 108
Enamel nodules, 38
Engine, dental, 111, 117
Epilepsy during second dentition, 30
— due to dental irritation, 331
Epulis, fibrous, 311
— myeloid, 313
Erosion of teeth, 102
Eruption of temporary teeth, order and periods of, 4
— — — — prior to birth, 4
— — — — earlier in females, 6
— — teeth how effected, 23
— — permanent teeth, 27
Eruptions, cutaneous, in teething, 8
— — treatment of, 15
Esmarch, operation of, 306
Esquimaux, teeth of, 106
Ether as an anæsthetic, 273
Ether spray, 254
Ethidene-dichloride, 278

EXC

Excavators, forms of, &c., 113
Excision in caries, 107
Exfoliation of bone, 25, 299
Exostosis of teeth, 194
— — — causes of, 195
— — — consequences of, 196
— — the jaws, 314
Expansion of dental arch, 61
Experiments with regard to caries, 100
Extraction of teeth for irregularity, 65
— — — rules for, 197
— — — by the key, 198
— — — — — — forceps, 199
— — roots, rules for, 219
— — — by the forceps, 219
— — — — — — elevator, 227
— — — — — — screw, 232
— — temporary teeth, 233
— — teeth, tables to guide in, 217
— — — difficulties in, 236

FANG-filling, operations for, 171
Fangs, excess of, in number, 18, 36
Fangs, exposure of, through the gums, 21, 302
Fangs, forceps for extracting, 219
Filling teeth, operations for, 111
— — materials for, 111
— — with amalgams, 128
— — — gold, 136
— — difficulties in, 161
— fangs of teeth, 171
Fillings, watertight, 175
Flower, on absence of teeth (*note*), 40
Forceps, compressing or plugging, 142
— extracting, general, 199
— — for roots of teeth, 219
— dividing, 223
— for temporary teeth, 233
— excising, 245
Formula of temporary teeth, 3
— — permanent teeth, 28
Fracture of teeth, 81
— — jaws, treatment of, 52

HYP

Fracture of jaws, treatment of, by Gunning's splint, 54
— — — — — — Hammond's splint, 55
— — — in extraction, 245
Fractured teeth, union of, 82
— tooth, impacted, 83
Frankland, on artificial milk (*note*), 12
— — action of nitrous oxide, 257

GANGRENE of dental pulp, 92
— — — — — dry, 171
Gangrenous stomatitis, 300
Geminated teeth, temporary, 18
— — permanent, 36
Gold for filling teeth, 136
— — — — non-cohesive, 138
— — — — cohesive, 148
— — — — precipitated, 153
Goodsir, primitive dental groove of, 2
Groups, teeth erupted in, 5
Gumboil, consequences of, 21
Gums, lancing of, in teething, 9, 14
— congestion of, 288
— hypertrophy of, 310
Gunning, interdental splint of, 54
Gutta percha, for filling teeth, 124

HÆMORRHAGE, alveolar, 247
— — primary, 247
— — secondary, 248
Hæmorrhagic diathesis, 248
Hammond's splint, 55
Heath, C., on hypertrophy of gums, 311
— — — myeloid epulis, 313
Hermann, on nitrous oxide, 257
Honeycombed teeth, 33
Hullihen, operation of, 173
Hunter, on decay of teeth, 92
Hutchinson, J., on honeycombed teeth, 34
— — — syphilitic teeth, 34
— — — blindness due to dental irritation, 332
Hyperostosis of fangs, 194
— — — causes of, 195

HYP

Hyperostosis of fangs, consequences of, 196
Hypertrophy of gums, 310
Hysteria with regard to nitrous oxide, 272

ILLUMINATOR, mouth, Hart's, 196, 244
Impacted teeth, 241
— — consequences of, 321
Impressions, method of taking, 46
Indians', mode of cleansing the teeth, 109
Inflammation of dental-pulp, 91
— — dental periosteum, 178
— — the gums, 295
Injuries to teeth, 79
Irregularities, in temporary teeth, 17
— — permanent teeth, in size, 32
— — — — — — form, 33
— — — — — — number, 38
— — — — — — position, 41, 57
Irritation in dentition, object of, (*note*) 7

JACK-screw, for expanding dental arch, 64

KEY instrument for extraction, 198
Kingsley, Norman, on oral deformities, 78, 328
Knife and fork, influence of, on the teeth, 104

LANCING gums in teething, 9, 14
Leber and Rottenstein, on caries, 96, 98
Leptothrix in caries, 90, 98
Loss of teeth, premature, 290
Lyons, I., on fracture of jaws, 55
— — — necrosis of jaws, 303

MAGITOT, on caries, 96
— — replantation, 281
Mallet for filling teeth, 141

ODO

Mallet for filling teeth, automatic, 141
— — — — pneumatic, 151
— — — — dental engine, 153
— — — — electro-magnetic, 153
Mason, F. on small openings in palate, 327
Maxillæ, ill-development of, 57
— — — Darwin on, 58
Micrococci, in caries, 90
Milk of cows, casein of, as compared with human milk, 12
— — woman, ass, cow, &c., analyses of, (*note*) 13
— imitation of human, Frankland, (*note*) 13
Mitscherlich, on replantation, 279
— — transplantation, 287
Morrison's dental engine, 111
Mouth mirror, 119
Muscular contraction dependent upon dental irritation, 241, 330

NECROSIS of temporary teeth, 21
— — permanent teeth, 79, 192
— — cementum, 189, 193
— — maxillæ, 302
— — — following fevers, 299
Nerve, rupture of in extraction, 246
Nerve-stretching for neuralgia, 334
Nervous affections dependent upon dental irritation, 329
Neuralgia of the fifth pair, 332
Nitrogen as an anæsthetic, 257
Nitrous oxide as an anæsthetic, 256
— safety of, 256
— deaths from, 256
— physiology of effects of, 257
— mode of preparing, 259
— — — storing, 259
— — — administering, 263
— apparatus for administering, 261
— symptoms of danger with, 267

ODONTITIS infantum, 15
Odontoblasts, function of, 163, 194

ODO

Odontomes, 37
Order of eruption of temporary teeth, 4
— — — — permanent teeth, 28
Osseous union of the jaws, 305
Oxychloride of zinc for filling teeth, 126
Owen, R, on dentition of elephant, (*note*) 26

PAGET, Sir J., diagnosis of impacted teeth, 243
Pain after extraction, 247
Pain in stopped teeth, 174
Papillary tumour of the gum, 309
Paralysis due to teething, 331
— following extraction, 246
Periodontitis, symptoms of, 178
— pathology of, 181
— treatment of, 184
— chronic, 187
— — treatment of, 189
Phthisis in regard to nitrous oxide, 270
Plates, regulation, 48, 50
— treatment of fractures of jaw by, 53
Pluggers or stoppers, 140, 144
Polypus of dental-pulp, 168
— — gum, 308
Pregnancy, effects of, on the teeth, 175
— with regard to nitrous oxide, 270
Primitive dental groove, Goodsir, 2
Pulp, dental, inflammation of, 91
— ulceration of, 91
— exposure of, traumatic, 81, 165
— — — by disease, 91, 165
— treatment of when exposed, 165
— destruction of, 168
— removal of, 171
— general abnormal conditions of, 176
Pyro-phosphate of zinc, for filling teeth, 128

RELATIVE liability of teeth to caries, 68

STO

Removal of temporary teeth for crowding, 45, 73, 76
Replantation of teeth, 279
Respiratory organs, affected by teething, 8
Rickets, with respect to delayed dentition, 6
Rigg's disease, 290
Robertson, W., on dental caries, 94
Rogers, Claude, saliva ejector, 118
— — case of division of jaw by a plate, 307
Roots of teeth, extraction of, 219
Rotation or torsion of teeth, 50
Rottenstein and Leber, on caries, 96, 98
Rubber-dam, Barnum's, 119
— — appliances for, &c., 120

SALIVA, offices of, 2
— abnormal increase of in teething, 2
— ejectors, 118
Salivary calculus or tartar, 291
Salivation, results of, 301, 304
Salter, on 'warty teeth,' 37
— — necrosis after fever, 298
— — papillary tumour, 309
Scalers for removing tartar, 293
Screw-forceps for extraction, 220
Screws for extraction, 232
Scurvy of the gums, 288
Secondary dentine, 91
Sensation in teeth, object of, 163
Sensitiveness of dentine, 162
Separation of teeth, processes for, 161
Sexual selection, influence of, on the jaws, 59
Shelley, Hubert, on exostosis, 195
Skulls, collection of, at Hythe, 57
Sloughing of gum over an erupting tooth, 16
Smell, case of loss of, with neuralgia, 332
Spatulas, 126
Spheroidal form with regard to amalgams, 134
Stopped teeth, pain in, 174

STO

Stopping teeth, see filling teeth
Stuffing teeth, see do. do.
Supernumerary teeth, 18, 35, 38
Syphilitic teeth, 4, 34

TABLE of eruption of temporary teeth, 6
— — — — permanent teeth, 29
— — relative liability to caries, 68
— — operations in extraction, 217
Talipes equinus, due to teething, 8, 330
Tartar, or salivary calculus, 291
Teeth, commencement of development of, 1
— two sets of, object of, 1
— temporary, number, arrangement, &c., of, 3
— — classification of, 4
— — order, periods of eruption, &c., of, 4
— — erupted prior to birth, 4
— — retarded eruption of, 4
— — erupted earlier in girls, 6
— — geminated, 18
— — absence of, 18
— — excess of, 19
— — diseases of, 21
— — absorption of, 22
— — necrosed, not absorbed, 27
— permanent eruption of, 27
— — number, formula, &c., of, 27
— — irregularities in, 32
— — honeycombed, 33
— — syphilitic, 34
— third sets of, 40
— extraction of, 197
— temporary extraction of, 233
Teething, conditions in, normal, 6
— — — abnormal, 7
— management of children during, 9
— deaths directly from, 9
— convulsions in, 14
— cutaneous eruptions in, 15
— sloughing of gum in, 16
Theories of dental caries, 92

ZON

Thrush in infants, 296
Thumb-sucking, a cause of irregularity, 19, 52
Tomes, J., on absorption of teeth, 26
— — on relative liability of the teeth to caries, 68
— — on dental caries, 95
— — 'zone of,' 88, 101
— C. S., on contracted dental arch, 62
— — — dental caries, 96
Tooth-brush, value of, 22, 107
— as employed by Chinese, 107
Torsion of teeth, 50
Transplantation of teeth, 281
Treatment of caries by excision, 107
— — — — filling, 111
Trousseau, works of, recommended, 16
— on neuralgia, 333
Tumours, a cause of irregularity, 19, 52
— of the gum, 308
— upon the jaws, 311

ULCERATION of dental pulp, 91
— — the gum, 296
— aphthous, 296
— strumous, mercurial, syphilitic, 301
Ulcerative stomatitis, 297

VASCULAR tumours of the gum, 309
V-shaped dental arch, 69

WEST, on convulsions, 8
— works of, recommended, 16
Wedl, C., on dilaceration, 83
— — on dental caries, 96

ZINC, oxychlorides for filling teeth, 126
Zinc, pyro-phosphate, 128
Zone of Tomes, 88, 101

Spottiswoode & Co. Printers, New-street Square, London.

SMITH, ELDER, & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS.

QUAIN and WILSON'S ANATOMICAL PLATES. 201 Plates. 2 vols. Royal folio, half-bound in morocco, or Five Parts bound in cloth. Price coloured, £10. 10*s.*; plain, £6. 6*s.*

ILLUSTRATIONS of DISSECTIONS. In a Series of Original Coloured Plates, the Size of Life, representing the Dissection of the Human Body. By G. V. ELLIS and G. H. FORD. Imperial folio, 2 vols. half-bound in morocco, £6. 6*s.* May also be had in parts, separately. Parts 1 to 28, 3*s.* 6*d.* each; Part 29, 5*s.*

DEMONSTRATIONS of ANATOMY; being a Guide to the Knowledge of the Human Body by Dissection. By GEORGE VINER ELLIS, Emeritus Professor of University College, London. Eighth Edition, Revised. With 248 Engravings on Wood. Small 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.* The number of illustrations has been largely added to in this edition, and many of the new woodcuts are reduced copies of the Plates in the Author's work, 'Illustrations of Dissections.'

The DESCRIPTIVE ATLAS of ANATOMY. A Representation of the Anatomy of the Human Body. In 92 Royal Quarto Plates, containing 550 Illustrations. Introducing Heitzmann's Figures considerably modified, and with many Original Drawings from Nature. By E. NOBLE SMITH, F.R.C.S. Edin. Bound in half-leather, 25*s.*

A DIRECTORY for the DISSECTION of the HUMAN BODY. By JOHN CLELAND, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Anatomy in the University of Glasgow. Second Edition. Fcp. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

MANUAL of PRACTICAL ANATOMY. THE UPPER LIMB. With Outline Plates. By J. COSSAR EWART, M.D. Edin., F.R.C.S.E., F.R.S.E., Lecturer on Anatomy, School of Medicine, Edinburgh. Demy 8vo. price 4*s.* 6*d.*

A MANUAL of NECROSCOPY; or, a Guide to Post-Mortem Examinations. With Notes on the Morbid Appearances, and Suggestions for Medico-Legal Examinations. By A. H. NEWTH, M.D. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

SURGERY: its PRINCIPLES and PRACTICE. By TIMOTHY HOLMES, M.A. Cantab., F.R.C.S., Surgeon to St. George's Hospital. Second Edition. With upwards of 400 Illustrations. Royal 8vo. 30*s.*

A SYSTEM of SURGERY: PATHOLOGICAL, DIAGNOSTIC, THERAPEUTIC, and OPERATIVE. By SAMUEL D. GROSS, M.D., LL.D., D.C.L. Oxon. Fifth Edition, greatly Enlarged and thoroughly Revised, with upwards of 1,400 Illustrations. 2 vols. 8vo. £3. 10*s.*

SURGICAL LECTURES. Delivered in the Theatre of the Westminster Hospital. By RICHARD DAVY, M.B., F.R.C.S., Surgeon to the Hospital. Demy 8vo. with Illustrations, 7*s.* 6*d.*

ANTISEPTIC SURGERY: an Address delivered at St. Thomas's Hospital, with the subsequent Debate. To which are added a short Statement of the Theory of the Antiseptic Method, a Description of the Materials employed in carrying it out, and some Applications of the Method to Operations and Injuries in Different Regions of the Body, and to Wounds received in War. By WILLIAM MAC CORMAC, M.A., F.R.C.S. E. & I. M.Ch. (Hon. Caus.), Surgeon and Lecturer on Surgery at St. Thomas's Hospital. With Illustrations. 8vo. price 15*s.*

The ESSENTIALS of BANDAGING: for Managing Fractures and Dislocations; for administering Ether and Chloroform; and for using other Surgical Apparatus. With 134 Illustrations. By BERKELEY HILL, M.B. Lond., F.R.C.S., Professor of Clinical Surgery in University College, Surgeon to University College Hospital, and Surgeon to the Lock Hospital. Fourth Edition, revised and much enlarged. Fcp. 8vo. 5*s.*

The STUDENT'S MANUAL of VENEREAL DISEASES. Being a concise Description of those Affections and their Treatment. By BERKELEY HILL, M.B., Professor of Clinical Surgery in University College, London; Surgeon to University College and to the Lock Hospitals; and by ARTHUR COOPER, late House Surgeon to the Lock Hospital. Second Edition. Post 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

London: SMITH, ELDER, & CO., 15 Waterloo Place.

SMITH, ELDER, & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS.

ATLAS of HISTOLOGY. By E. KLEIN, M.D., F.R.S., Lecturer on Histology at St. Bartholomew's Hospital Medical School, and R. NOBLE SMITH, F.R.C.S. Edin. &c., formerly Senior House-Surgeon to St. Mary's Hospital, and Resident Medical Officer to the Children's Hospital at Bristol and the Lock Hospital, London. A complete representation of the Microscopic Structure of Simple and Compound Tissues of Man and the Higher Animals, in carefully executed Coloured Engravings, with Explanatory Text of the Figures, and a Concise Account of the hitherto ascertained Facts in Histology. Royal 4to. with 48 Coloured Plates, bound in half-leather, price £4. 4*s.*; or in 13 parts, price 6*s.* each.

A TEXT-BOOK of PRACTICAL HISTOLOGY. With 30 Outline Plates, 1 Coloured Plate, and 27 Wood Engravings. By WILLIAM STIRLING, M.D., Sc.D., F.R.S.E., Regius Professor of the Institutes of Medicine in the University of Aberdeen. Demy 4to. price 14*s.*

A COURSE of PRACTICAL HISTOLOGY. By EDWARD ALBERT SCHÄFER, Assistant Professor of Physiology, University College. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

ELEMENTS of HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY. By Dr. L. HERMANN, Professor of Physiology in the University of Zurich. Second Edition. Entirely recast from the Sixth German Edition, with very copious additions, and many additional Woodcuts, by ARTHUR GAMGEE, M.D., F.R.S., Brackenbury Professor of Physiology in Owen's College, Manchester, and Examiner in Physiology in the University of Edinburgh. Demy 8vo. 16*s.*

A TREATISE on the SCIENCE and PRACTICE of MIDWIFERY, By W. S. PLAYFAIR, M.D., F.R.C.P., Physician-Accoucheur to H.I. and R.H. the Duchess of Edinburgh; Professor of Obstetric Medicine in King's College; Physician for the Diseases of Women and Children to King's College Hospital; Consulting Physician to the General Lying-in Hospital, and to the Evelina Hospital for Children; President of the Obstetrical Society of London; late Examiner in Midwifery to the University of London, and to the Royal College of Physicians. Third Edition. 2 vols. demy 8vo. With 166 Illustrations, 28*s.*

A MANUAL of MIDWIFERY for MIDWIVES. By FANCOURT BARNES, M.D. Aber., M.R.C.P. Lond., Physician to the British Lying-in Hospital; Assistant-Physician to the Royal Maternity Charity of London; Physician for the Diseases of Women to the St. George's and St. James's Dispensary. Crown 8vo. with numerous Illustrations, 6*s.*

A TREATISE on the THEORY and PRACTICE of MEDICINE. By JOHN SYER BRISTOWE, M.D. Lond., Fellow and formerly Censor of the Royal College of Physicians; Senior Physician to, and Joint Lecturer on Medicine at, St. Thomas's Hospital; President of the Society of Medical Officers of Health; Examiner in Medicine to the Royal College of Surgeons, formerly Examiner in Medicine to the University of London, and Lecturer on General Pathology and on Physiology at St. Thomas's Hospital. Third Edition, 8vo. 21*s.*

CLINICAL MANUAL for the STUDY of MEDICAL CASES. Edited by JAMES FINLAYSON, M.D., Physician and Lecturer on Clinical Medicine in the Glasgow Western Infirmary, &c. With Special Chapters by Prof. GAIRDNER on the Physiognomy of Disease; Prof. STEPHENSON on Disorders of the Female Organs; Dr. ALEXANDER ROBERTSON on Insanity; Dr. SAMSON GEMMELL on Physical Diagnosis; Dr. JOSEPH COATS on Laryngoscopy, and also on the Method of Performing Post-Mortem Examinations. The rest of the book, on the Examination of Medical Cases and on the Symptoms of Disorder in the Various Systems, is by Dr. FINLAYSON. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

A GUIDE to THERAPEUTICS. By ROBERT FARQUHARSON, M.P., M.D. Edin., F.R.C.P. Lond., late Lecturer on Materia Medica at St. Mary's Hospital Medical School, &c. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

An EPITOME of THERAPEUTICS. Being a Comprehensive Summary of the Treatment of Disease as recommended by the leading British, American, and Continental Physicians. By W. DOMETT STONE, M.D., F.R.C.S., Honorary Member of the College of Physicians of Sweden, Physician to the Westminster General Dispensary; Editor of the 'Half-yearly Abstract of the Medical Sciences.' Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

London: SMITH, ELDER, & CO., 15 Waterloo Place.